

# Hypothesis-free detection of genome-changing events in pedigree sequencing



Kiran V Garimella  
Green Templeton College  
University of Oxford

A thesis submitted for the degree of  
*Doctor of Philosophy*

Michaelmas 2015



## Dedication



## **Acknowledgements**

Acknowledgements



## Abstract

In high-diversity populations, a complete accounting of *de novo* mutations can be difficult to obtain. Most analyses involve alignment of genomic reads to a reference genome, but if the haplotypic background upon which a mutation occurs is absent, events can be easily missed (as reads have nowhere to align) and false-positives may abound (as the aligner forces the reads to align elsewhere). In this thesis, I describe methods for *de novo* mutation discovery and genotyping based on a so-called "pedigree graph" - a de Bruijn graph where all available sequencing data (trusted and untrusted data alike) is represented. I constrain genotyping efforts to locations containing "novel kmers" - sequence present in the child but absent from the parents. I then apply Dijkstra's shortest path algorithm to perform the genotyping, even in the presence of sequencing error. In simulation, this approach provides a vastly more sensitive and specific set of *de novo* variants than traditional methods.

# *Contents*

<b>1</b>	<b>Motivation</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	Introduction . . . . .	1
1.2	<i>De novo</i> mutations (DNMs) in <i>Plasmodium falciparum</i> . . . . .	2
1.2.1	A reference-based approach for DNM discovery and genotyping . .	3
1.2.2	A reference-free approach for assessing DNM sensitivity . . . . .	3
1.3	DNM sensitivity of the reference-based approach . . . . .	4
1.3.1	Data processing . . . . .	4
1.3.2	Results . . . . .	8
1.4	Discussion . . . . .	8
1.4.1	Failure of the mapping approach . . . . .	8
1.4.2	<i>De novo</i> assembly as an alternative approach . . . . .	12
1.5	Overview of this work . . . . .	13
<b>2</b>	<b>Background</b>	<b>17</b>
2.1	Lifecycle of the <i>P. falciparum</i> parasite . . . . .	17
2.1.1	Liver stage . . . . .	17
2.1.2	Blood stage . . . . .	18
2.1.3	Reproduction . . . . .	19
2.1.4	The <i>P. falciparum</i> crosses . . . . .	19
2.2	Mutational types . . . . .	21
2.2.1	Point mutations . . . . .	21
2.2.2	Insertions, deletions, inversions . . . . .	21
2.2.3	Cross-overs . . . . .	23
2.2.4	Gene conversion . . . . .	23
2.2.5	Non-allelic homologous recombination (NAHR) . . . . .	24
2.3	Known rates . . . . .	25
2.4	Biases . . . . .	25

<b>3</b>	<b>Simulation</b>	<b>27</b>
3.1	Simulating genomes . . . . .	27
3.1.1	Parents . . . . .	29
3.2	Children . . . . .	31
3.2.1	Homologous recombination . . . . .	33
3.2.1.1	Allelic homologous recombination . . . . .	33
3.2.1.2	Gene conversion . . . . .	33
3.2.1.3	Non-allelic homologous recombination . . . . .	34
3.2.2	SNPs, insertions, and deletions . . . . .	35
3.2.2.1	Expansion and contraction of short tandem repeats (STRs)	37
3.2.2.2	Tandem duplications . . . . .	37
3.3	Simulating reads . . . . .	37
3.3.1	Constructing the coverage profile . . . . .	38
3.3.1.1	Computing read and fragment starts, and error rates . . .	39
3.3.1.2	Lifting read profile over from reference to simulated genome	39
3.3.2	Constructing the read profile . . . . .	41
3.3.2.1	Scalar properties . . . . .	41
3.3.2.2	Empirical distributions . . . . .	42
3.3.2.3	Covariate table . . . . .	43
3.3.3	The read simulator . . . . .	44
3.4	The simulated dataset . . . . .	44
<b>4</b>	<b>Detection and classification</b>	<b>47</b>
4.1	<i>De novo</i> assembly . . . . .	47
4.1.1	Definitions . . . . .	49
4.2	Variant motifs . . . . .	53
4.2.1	Simple variant motifs . . . . .	53
4.2.2	Complex variant motifs . . . . .	56
4.2.3	Handling errors in sequencing . . . . .	58
4.3	Calling and classifying <i>de novo</i> variants . . . . .	60
4.3.1	Identify confident and trusted novel kmers . . . . .	61
4.3.1.1	Remove low coverage kmers . . . . .	61
4.3.1.2	Remove possible contaminants . . . . .	61
4.3.2	Construct multi-color de Bruijn "trio" graphs . . . . .	62
4.3.3	Load subgraph local to a novel kmer . . . . .	63
4.3.3.1	Depth-first search . . . . .	63

4.3.3.2	Stopping conditions for child . . . . .	66
4.3.3.3	Stopping conditions for parents . . . . .	66
4.3.4	Identify and classify variants in the subgraph . . . . .	67
4.3.4.1	Dijkstra's shortest path algorithm . . . . .	69
4.3.4.2	Classify event . . . . .	69
4.3.4.3	Choosing haplotypic background . . . . .	71
4.3.4.4	Mark traversed novel kmers as used . . . . .	71
4.3.5	Evaluate performance . . . . .	71
4.3.5.1	Pre-compute novel kmer to variant map . . . . .	71
4.3.5.2	Load variant containing a novel kmer and comparing . . . . .	73
4.4	Results on simulated data . . . . .	73
<b>5</b>	<b>Real data</b>	<b>83</b>
5.1	Data processing . . . . .	84
5.1.1	Initial data . . . . .	84
5.1.2	Data processing for progeny . . . . .	85
5.1.2.1	Graph construction . . . . .	85
5.1.3	Data processing for parents . . . . .	85
5.1.3.1	Graph construction . . . . .	85
5.1.3.2	Transfer of gene models . . . . .	86
5.1.3.3	Generation of visualization resources . . . . .	87
5.1.4	Quality control . . . . .	88
5.1.5	Data processing for validation isolates . . . . .	89
5.1.5.1	Establishing assembly quality . . . . .	90
5.1.5.2	Preparing the validation isolate reference . . . . .	93
5.2	Comparison to validation isolate . . . . .	96
5.2.1	Verification of novel kmers . . . . .	96
5.2.2	Comparison to reference-based analysis . . . . .	99
5.3	<i>De novo</i> mutations in a single 3D7xHB3 sample . . . . .	103
5.3.1	List of mutations . . . . .	103
5.3.2	Manual examination of all <i>de novo</i> mutations . . . . .	112
5.3.2.1	Event 1 (a-h): NAHR . . . . .	112
5.3.2.2	Event 2: unknown . . . . .	113
5.3.2.3	Events 3 and 4: two SNPs . . . . .	114
5.3.3	Rejected events . . . . .	114
5.3.4	Novel kmer accounting . . . . .	115

5.4	<i>De novo</i> mutations in all crosses and samples . . . . .	115
5.4.1	Novel kmer use . . . . .	115
5.4.2	Variants per sample and cross . . . . .	115
5.4.3	Manual examination of every event in the 3D7xHB3 cross . . . . .	117
5.4.4	Recovery of published <i>var</i> gene recombinations . . . . .	118
6	<i>Plasmodium falciparum</i>	133
6.1	Data processing . . . . .	134
6.1.1	Initial data . . . . .	134
6.1.2	Data processing for progeny . . . . .	135
6.1.2.1	Graph construction . . . . .	135
6.1.3	Data processing for parents . . . . .	135
6.1.3.1	Graph construction . . . . .	135
6.1.3.2	Transfer of gene models . . . . .	136
6.1.3.3	Generation of visualization resources . . . . .	137
6.1.4	Quality control . . . . .	138
6.1.5	Data processing for validation isolates . . . . .	139
6.1.5.1	Establishing assembly quality . . . . .	140
6.1.5.2	Preparing the validation isolate reference . . . . .	143
6.2	Comparison to validation isolate . . . . .	146
6.2.1	Verification of novel kmers . . . . .	146
6.2.2	Comparison to reference-based analysis . . . . .	149
6.3	<i>De novo</i> mutations in a single 3D7xHB3 sample . . . . .	153
6.3.1	List of mutations . . . . .	153
6.3.2	Manual examination of all <i>de novo</i> mutations . . . . .	162
6.3.2.1	Event 1 (a-h): NAHR . . . . .	162
6.3.2.2	Event 2: unknown . . . . .	163
6.3.2.3	Events 3 and 4: two SNPs . . . . .	164
6.3.3	Rejected events . . . . .	164
6.3.4	Novel kmer accounting . . . . .	165
6.4	<i>De novo</i> mutations in all crosses and samples . . . . .	165
6.4.1	Novel kmer use . . . . .	165
6.4.2	Variants per sample and cross . . . . .	165
6.4.3	Manual examination of every event in the 3D7xHB3 cross . . . . .	167
6.4.4	Recovery of published <i>var</i> gene recombinations . . . . .	168
7	Discussion	183





## List of Figures

1.1	a. Parental and child sequences at the site of a <i>de novo</i> mutation, and the kmers generated at $k = 3$ . b. The resulting Venn diagram of kmers found exclusively in the parents, the child, or common to both. c. Novel kmers found around the genome indicate the presence of a <i>de novo</i> mutation. . . . .	6
1.2	Kmer coverage distribution for a single 3D7xHB3 progeny, PGoo63-C. Red line indicates non-parametric LOESS fit upon which the local minimum is detected. . . . .	7
1.3	Novel kmers observed in the reference-based analysis vs trusted novel kmers expected from the reference-free analysis. . . . .	9
1.4	Reads that map once to the reference genome versus mapping multiple times, conditioned on the read containing a trusted novel kmer. . . . .	10
1.5	Venn diagram of kmers present in the 3D7 and HB3 genomes at $k = 47$ . Both forward and reverse-compliment kmers are considered the same. . . . .	11
1.6	Presence and absence of unique kmers in three 3D7 <i>var</i> genes. Each vertical line represents a kmer. Colored kmers represent those unique 3D7 kmers that are recovered in the sample. Grey indicates no recovery. White indicates the kmer at that position was not unique in the 3D7 genome. Only the coding regions of the respective genes are shown, with domain annotations obtained from the VarDom server. <sup>1</sup> . . . . .	15
1.7	The process of generating a de Bruijn graph representation of sequence data. a. The underlying genome. b. Reads sequenced from the genome (including one read with a sequencing error). Reverse-complement reads are not shown for clarity. c. The $k = 3$ de Bruijn graph reconstruction, including kmer coverage annotations. . . . .	16

3.1	Workflow for generating the HB <sub>3</sub> parental genome. a. Reads from HB <sub>3</sub> sample, PGoo52-C, are mapped to the 3D7 reference genome, and variants (SNPs and indels) are called and stored as a VCF file. b. We remove the 3D7 <i>var</i> gene repertoire, replacing each with a reasonable HB <sub>3</sub> <i>var</i> counterpart, and encode the changes to the 3D7 reference genome as a VCF file. c. We alter the reference genome using Algorithm 2, thus producing the simulated HB <sub>3</sub> genome. . . . .	30
3.2	Workflow for generating children's genomes. a. Generate chromosomes from the parental genomes (compatible <i>var</i> genes shown in green and orange). b. Recombine homologous chromosomes. c. Add gene conversion events (by incorporating variants from the alternative haplotypic background over a limited genomic window). d. Replace one of the <i>var</i> genes with a chimera of compatible genes. e. Add <i>de novo</i> mutations. . . . .	33
3.3	Empirical recombination frequencies per chromosome . . . . .	34
3.4	Simulated haplotype mosaics for chromosome 12. Genomic position is shown at the top of the figure, while variant number is shown at the bottom. Each variant is depicted as a vertical grey line attached to the mosaic plot at the appropriate location. In the mosaic, every variant is color-coded by parent of origin. . . . .	35
3.5	Non-allelic recombinations for two compatible <i>var</i> genes. . . . .	36
3.6	Simulated variant types. a. Original, parental haplotypic background upon which variants will be placed. b. A single nucleotide polymorphism. c. An insertion of two nucleotides. d. A deletion of three nucleotides. e. An inversion of four nucleotides. f. Expansion of a 3 bp short tandem repeat (STR) by one unit. g. A contraction of an STR by one unit. h. A tandem duplication of 11 nucleotides. . . . .	36
3.7	Construction of the coverage profile for the reference genome and liftover to the altered genome. Each read start (and fragment start, not shown) is stored along with a count of the number of reads at that location that contain errors. This information is then lifted over to the simulated sequence, and gaps in the table are filled in with neighboring values. . . . .	38
3.8	Top: empirical fragment size distribution for PGoo51-C. Bottom: empirical deletion (negative values) and insertion (positive values) length distribution for the same sample. . . . .	43
3.9	Read datasets for real (top panel), simulated perfect (middle panel), and simulated realistic (bottom panel) data. . . . .	46

4.1	Graph with novel kmer annotations in red. . . . .	49
4.2	An example directed graph with six vertices. . . . .	49
4.3	Example CortexRecord entries. . . . .	51
4.4	Relationships between the CortexGraph, CortexRecord, CortexKmer, CortexUtils, AnnotatedVertex, and AnnotatedEdge objects. . . . .	53
4.5	A simple variant motif for a C to G SNP. a. Haploid sequences from a mother (green), father (blue), and child (red), the last differing from the first two by a single base substitution. b. The resulting multi-color de Bruijn graph for $k = 3$ . Red vertices denote kmers that are deemed "novel", i.e. present in the child and absent in the parents. Edge colors reflect the samples in which the connected pairs of kmers are found. Edges that are part of the bubble (variant call) are displayed with thicker lines. . . . .	54
4.6	A multi-color de Bruijn graph at $k = 47$ for a haploid pedigree spanning a simulated <i>de novo</i> SNP, produced by our VisualCortex software. Vertex labels have been suppressed for clarity. Spatial layout is arbitrary and for display purposes only. . . . .	55
4.7	A 5 bp insertion in the child . . . . .	55
4.8	A 5 bp deletion in the child . . . . .	56
4.9	A tandem duplication on the haplotypic background of the mother. . . . .	57
4.10	A variant wherein the child's path does not simply diverge from that of the parents, but rather navigates both. . . . .	58
4.11	A gene conversion event . . . . .	59
4.12	Indel with sequencing errors in graph. a. Selected extraneous branches expanded for illustrative purposes b. All extraneous branches collapsed. .	60
4.13	Kmer coverage histogram for a real sample, with LOESS fit . . . . .	62
4.14	Removal of contaminating kmers; <i>P. falciparum</i> kmers are shown in green; the putative contaminants are shown in orange. . . . .	78
4.15	. . . . .	79
4.16	Confusion matrix for observed events (below) versus expected events (right), in simulated perfect data. . . . .	80
4.17	Confusion matrix for observed events (below) versus expected events (right), in simulated realistic data. . . . .	81

5.1	Relationships for samples in four <i>P. falciparum</i> crosses, with the number of QC-passing Illumina datasets for progeny shown. Green and orange shading indicates the availability of finished and draft quality reference genomes, respectively. Orange stripes denote the availability of a draft reference genome for a single progeny, used as validation for <i>de novo</i> events. Gender assignments for the parents are arbitrary, intended only to simplify discussion. . . . .	83
5.2	Number of kmers and assembly length in the 803xGB4 samples. Vertical dashed lines indicate the mean value of the metric in other crosses. . . . .	89
5.3	Coverage for Illumina data (orange) and PacBio data (red) of the same sample: PG0051-C (the reference isolate, 3D7). a. Coverage over the chromosome 4 centromere. b. Coverage over the 5' telomere of chromosome 1. Genes from the <i>var</i> , <i>rifin</i> , and <i>stevor</i> antigenic gene families are highlighted and identified with a "v", "r", or "s", respectively. . . . .	91
5.4	Alignment of contigs from PG0051-C to 3D7 reference assembly . . . . .	92
5.5	Alignment of contigs from PG0443-C to 3D7 reference assembly . . . . .	94
5.6	Placement and orientation of exons from the reference assembly mapped to the PG0446-C assembly. Chromosomes 1, 5, and 9 shown. . . . .	95
5.7	Haplotype mosaic for chromosome 14 in the 803xGB4 cross dataset. Parental samples are identified with asterisks. For remaining samples, alleles are color-coded according to the parent from which they are apparently inherited - orange for mother (PG0443-C, the 803 isolate), blue for father (PG0050-CX2, the GB4 isolate). Missing data (sites where no genotype could be ascertained) are shown in white. Bottom axis represents variant number. Top axis represents variant position along the length of the chromosome. . . . .	96
5.8	a. Kmer coverage in a 3D7xHB3 sample, with calculated lower threshold shown in red. b. Kmer coverage in the 803xGB4 sample, PG0446-C, with calculated lower threshold shown in red. c. Kmer coverage distributions for all novel kmers in PG0446-C, conditional on the kmer being present or absent in the PacBio assembly. Calculated lower threshold from panel b shown in red. . . . .	97

5.9	Local subgraphs in the Illumina data for PG0446-C near novel kmers that are absent in the corresponding PacBio assembly. Red circles denote "trusted" novel kmers (those that passed our initial coverage and contamination checks). Red crosses indicate "untrusted" novel kmers (those that passed our initial coverage check but failed the contamination check). a. An "orphan" branch: a series of novel kmers not connected to the parental graphs. b. A "bushy-tailed" branch: a series of novel kmers that appear to connect to everything, including the parental graphs, by chance. . . . .	98
5.10	The results of filtering kmers private to the PG0446-C child . . . . .	100
5.11	IGV screenshot of an A to G SNP, showing reads and assembly information for the trio, aligned to the PacBio PG0446-C assembly. Top panel: 803. Middle two: GB4 reads and PacBio assembly (sliced to facilitate alignment). Lower two: PG0446-C reads and contig containing the variant in question from the a. panel. . . . .	105
5.12	A C to T SNP that has likely not reached fixation in the sequenced population of ostensibly clonal parasites. a. Local subgraph at the site, wherein the child's graph contains paths that traverse the series of novel kmers as well as the parental kmers, indicating polymorphic status. b. IGV screenshot of the site showing reads and assembly information for the trio, aligned to the 3D7 reference genome. Top panel: positions of the called variants in the reference-based analysis. Second panel: PG0443-C (803). Third: PG0050-CX2 (GB4). Fourth: PG0446-C (child). Fifth: Uncorrected PacBio reads from PG0446-C. Bottom: gene model track from PlasmoDB 9.0. Stacked barplots above tracks indicate the proportion of reads supporting each allele.	106
5.13	A strange event involving a single novel kmer. a. Local subgraph at the site; the novel kmer in question is depicted as a filled red vertex in the right side of the image. b. IGV screenshot of the site showing reads and assembly information for the trio, aligned to the PacBio PG0446-C assembly.	107
5.14	A validated <i>de novo</i> SNP, recovered in the child amidst a great deal of sequencing error. Top panel: PG0443-C (803). Middle panel: PG0050-CX2 (GB4). Lower panel: PG0446-C (child).	108

- 5.15 False-positive *de novo* variants in the 3' subtelomeric region of chromosome 2. Top panel: positions of the called variants in the reference-based analysis. Second panel: PGo443-C (803). Third: PGoo50-CX2 (GB4). Fourth: PGo446-C (child). Fifth: Uncorrected PacBio reads from PGo446-C. Bottom: gene model track from PlasmoDB 9.0. Stacked barplots above tracks indicate the proportion of reads supporting each allele. Reads with ambiguous alignments are displayed in a lighter shade. . . . . 109

5.16 Circos visualization of all *de novo* mutations in PGoo63-C, positioned on the reference sequence (outer ring), aligned maternal assembly (middle), and aligned paternal assembly (inner). Unplaced parental contigs are concatenated and placed in the "U" pseudochromosome. Each parental ring is annotated with a sequence compressibility score for every 2,500 bp shown above their ideograms, while the reference ring is annotated with mean read coverage per 2,500 bp. Within the reference ideogram, all reference-based variant calls made in this sample from the MalariaGen project are shown, color-coded to reflect their parentage. Regions that were masked out of MalariaGen's variant calling process are shown as grey bars. Variants are shown as glyphs below the parental ideograms, shape-coded for type (small circle: unknown, large circle: SNP, triangle: indel, square: MNP, diamond: NAHR event). The color and positioning of the glyph reflects the haplotypic background upon which the event occurred. Interchromosomal structural variation and gene-conversion events are additionally denoted as arcs linking the relevant parts of the genome. The closest gene to the event is reported in black if the mutation falls within the gene and as grey if it falls outside the gene. . . . . 120

5.17 IGV screenshot of SNP and two MNPs: three apparent *de novo* mutations within a much larger NAHR event. Top panel: 3D7 parent. Middle panel: HB3 parent. Lower panel: PGoo63-C child. Variant positions are shown as red blocks at the top of the three panels below the genome position track. Stacked barplots above variant positions indicate the proportion of bases supporting an alternate allele to the reference. . . . . 121

5.18 IGV screenshot of SNP and two MNPs: three apparent <i>de novo</i> mutations within a much larger NAHR event. Top panel: 3D7 parent. Middle panel: HB3 parent. Lower panel: PGoo63-C child. Variant positions are shown as red blocks at the top of the three panels below the genome position track. Stacked barplots above variant positions indicate the proportion of bases supporting an alternate allele to the reference. . . . .	122
5.19 A NAHR event. a. Graphical view of the exchange; chromosome of origin specified for various regions. b. IGV screenshot for 3D7 (top), HB3 (middle), and PGoo63-C (child) on the chromosome 1 region of the event. c. IGV screenshot of the chromosome 2 region of the event. . . . .	123
5.20 A <i>de novo</i> SNP in a <i>var</i> on the 3D7 haplotypic background. Top panel: 3D7. Middle: HB3. Lower: PGoo63-C child. . . . .	124
5.21 A graph "tangle": a region of the graph where the in/out degree of vertices within a small radius sharply increases, resulting from attempting to traverse a low-complexity region of the genome. . . . .	125
5.22 A low-complexity region of the genome containing many reads with many apparent errors. . . . .	126
5.23 Two SNPs, non-obvious from the alignments, but apparent in graph. a. IGV screenshot of two <i>de novo</i> SNPs in a <i>var</i> gene. b. Graphical view of the two SNPs. . . . .	127
5.24 The true home of the aforementioned two SNPs. . . . .	128
5.25 Graph motifs for discarded events. a. Disconnected events: novel kmers that fail to link back to the genome. b. "Dirty" events: the dirty kmers (shown in grey with red edges) make up more than 10% of the novel kmers in the region. . . . .	129
5.26 Cumulative accounting of novel kmers and the mutation types to which they correspond. Events passing filters are depicted in green. Those failing filters are in red. . . . .	129
5.27 Novel kmers per sample and cross. Left: number of novel kmers in each sample, after filtering. Right: distribution of novel kmers per sample in each cross. . . . .	130
5.28 Novel kmer usage by variants per sample and cross. Left: novel kmers used in variants (green), in unknown events (orange), and events failing filters (red). Right: fraction of novel kmers used by variants (green), unknown events (orange), and events failing filters (red). . . . .	131

5.29 Recovery of diagnostic kmers in 3D7 and HB3 <i>var</i> genes. White regions indicate kmers that were not diagnostic. Vertical grey indicates a diagnostic kmer that absent in the progeny, while vertical colored lines indicate the kmer's presence. a. Two genes in PGoo20-C purported to have an NAHR event in Claessens <i>et al.</i> , but exhibiting no kmer loss indicative of an NAHR event. b. Two genes in PGoo34-C with missing diagnostic kmers, possibly indicative of an NAHR event. c. Two genes (DD2var13 and DD2var18) which exhibit very slight recovery or loss of diagnostic kmers towards their terminal ends. . . . .	131
6.1 Relationships for samples in four <i>P. falciparum</i> crosses, with the number of QC-passing Illumina datasets for progeny shown. Green and orange shading indicates the availability of finished and draft quality reference genomes, respectively. Orange stripes denote the availability of a draft reference genome for a single progeny, used as validation for <i>de novo</i> events. Gender assignments for the parents are arbitrary, intended only to simplify discussion. . . . .	133
6.2 Number of kmers and assembly length in the 803xGB4 samples. Vertical dashed lines indicate the mean value of the metric in other crosses. . . . .	139
6.3 Coverage for Illumina data (orange) and PacBio data (red) of the same sample: PGoo51-C (the reference isolate, 3D7). a. Coverage over the chromosome 4 centromere. b. Coverage over the 5' telomere of chromosome 1. Genes from the <i>var</i> , <i>rifin</i> , and <i>stevor</i> antigenic gene families are highlighted and identified with a "v", "r", or "s", respectively. . . . .	141
6.4 Alignment of contigs from PGoo51-C to 3D7 reference assembly . . . . .	142
6.5 Alignment of contigs from PGoo443-C to 3D7 reference assembly . . . . .	144
6.6 Placement and orientation of exons from the reference assembly mapped to the PGoo446-C assembly. Chromosomes 1, 5, and 9 shown. . . . .	145
6.7 Haplotype mosaic for chromosome 14 in the 803xGB4 cross dataset. Parental samples are identified with asterisks. For remaining samples, alleles are color-coded according to the parent from which they are apparently inherited - orange for mother (PGoo443-C, the 803 isolate), blue for father (PGoo50-CX2, the GB4 isolate). Missing data (sites where no genotype could be ascertained) are shown in white. Bottom axis represents variant number. Top axis represents variant position along the length of the chromosome. . . . .	146

6.8	a. Kmer coverage in a 3D7xHB3 sample, with calculated lower threshold shown in red. b. Kmer coverage in the 803xGB4 sample, PG0446-C, with calculated lower threshold shown in red. c. Kmer coverage distributions for all novel kmers in PG0446-C, conditional on the kmer being present or absent in the PacBio assembly. Calculated lower threshold from panel b shown in red. . . . .	147
6.9	Local subgraphs in the Illumina data for PG0446-C near novel kmers that are absent in the corresponding PacBio assembly. Red circles denote "trusted" novel kmers (those that passed our initial coverage and contamination checks). Red crosses indicate "untrusted" novel kmers (those that passed our initial coverage check but failed the contamination check). a. An "orphan" branch: a series of novel kmers not connected to the parental graphs. b. A "bushy-tailed" branch: a series of novel kmers that appear to connect to everything, including the parental graphs, by chance. . . . .	148
6.10	The results of filtering kmers private to the PG0446-C child . . . . .	150
6.11	IGV screenshot of an A to G SNP, showing reads and assembly information for the trio, aligned to the PacBio PG0446-C assembly. Top panel: 803. Middle two: GB4 reads and PacBio assembly (sliced to facilitate alignment). Lower two: PG0446-C reads and contig containing the variant in question from the a. panel. . . . .	155
6.12	A C to T SNP that has likely not reached fixation in the sequenced population of ostensibly clonal parasites. a. Local subgraph at the site, wherein the child's graph contains paths that traverse the series of novel kmers as well as the parental kmers, indicating polymorphic status. b. IGV screenshot of the site showing reads and assembly information for the trio, aligned to the 3D7 reference genome. Top panel: positions of the called variants in the reference-based analysis. Second panel: PG0443-C (803). Third: PG0050-CX2 (GB4). Fourth: PG0446-C (child). Fifth: Uncorrected PacBio reads from PG0446-C. Bottom: gene model track from PlasmoDB 9.0. Stacked barplots above tracks indicate the proportion of reads supporting each allele. . . . .	156
6.13	A strange event involving a single novel kmer. a. Local subgraph at the site; the novel kmer in question is depicted as a filled red vertex in the right side of the image. b. IGV screenshot of the site showing reads and assembly information for the trio, aligned to the PacBio PG0446-C assembly. . . . .	157

6.14 A validated <i>de novo</i> SNP, recovered in the child amidst a great deal of sequencing error. Top panel: PG0443-C (803). Middle panel: PG0050-CX2 (GB4). Lower panel: PG0446-C (child) . . . . .	158
6.15 False-positive <i>de novo</i> variants in the 3' subtelomeric region of chromosome 2. Top panel: positions of the called variants in the reference-based analysis. Second panel: PG0443-C (803). Third: PG0050-CX2 (GB4). Fourth: PG0446-C (child). Fifth: Uncorrected PacBio reads from PG0446-C. Bottom: gene model track from PlasmoDB 9.0. Stacked barplots above tracks indicate the proportion of reads supporting each allele. Reads with ambiguous alignments are displayed in a lighter shade. . . . .	159
6.16 Circos visualization of all <i>de novo</i> mutations in PG0063-C, positioned on the reference sequence (outer ring), aligned maternal assembly (middle), and aligned paternal assembly (inner). Unplaced parental contigs are concatenated and placed in the "U" pseudochromosome. Each parental ring is annotated with a sequence compressibility score for every 2,500 bp shown above their ideograms, while the reference ring is annotated with mean read coverage per 2,500 bp. Within the reference ideogram, all reference-based variant calls made in this sample from the MalariaGen project are shown, color-coded to reflect their parentage. Regions that were masked out of MalariaGen's variant calling process are shown as grey bars. Variants are shown as glyphs below the parental ideograms, shape-coded for type (small circle: unknown, large circle: SNP, triangle: indel, square: MNP, diamond: NAHR event). The color and positioning of the glyph reflects the haplotypic background upon which the event occurred. Interchromosomal structural variation and gene-conversion events are additionally denoted as arcs linking the relevant parts of the genome. The closest gene to the event is reported in black if the mutation falls within the gene and as grey if it falls outside the gene. . . . .	170
6.17 IGV screenshot of SNP and two MNPs: three apparent <i>de novo</i> mutations within a much larger NAHR event. Top panel: 3D7 parent. Middle panel: HB3 parent. Lower panel: PG0063-C child. Variant positions are shown as red blocks at the top of the three panels below the genome position track. Stacked barplots above variant positions indicate the proportion of bases supporting an alternate allele to the reference. . . . .	171

6.18 IGV screenshot of SNP and two MNPs: three apparent <i>de novo</i> mutations within a much larger NAHR event. Top panel: 3D7 parent. Middle panel: HB3 parent. Lower panel: PGoo63-C child. Variant positions are shown as red blocks at the top of the three panels below the genome position track. Stacked barplots above variant positions indicate the proportion of bases supporting an alternate allele to the reference. . . . .	172
6.19 A NAHR event. a. Graphical view of the exchange; chromosome of origin specified for various regions. b. IGV screenshot for 3D7 (top), HB3 (middle), and PGoo63-C (child) on the chromosome 1 region of the event. c. IGV screenshot of the chromosome 2 region of the event. . . . .	173
6.20 A <i>de novo</i> SNP in a <i>var</i> on the 3D7 haplotypic background. Top panel: 3D7. Middle: HB3. Lower: PGoo63-C child. . . . .	174
6.21 A graph "tangle": a region of the graph where the in/out degree of vertices within a small radius sharply increases, resulting from attempting to traverse a low-complexity region of the genome. . . . .	175
6.22 A low-complexity region of the genome containing many reads with many apparent errors. . . . .	176
6.23 Two SNPs, non-obvious from the alignments, but apparent in graph. a. IGV screenshot of two <i>de novo</i> SNPs in a <i>var</i> gene. b. Graphical view of the two SNPs. . . . .	177
6.24 The true home of the aforementioned two SNPs. . . . .	178
6.25 Graph motifs for discarded events. a. Disconnected events: novel kmers that fail to link back to the genome. b. "Dirty" events: the dirty kmers (shown in grey with red edges) make up more than 10% of the novel kmers in the region. . . . .	179
6.26 Cumulative accounting of novel kmers and the mutation types to which they correspond. Events passing filters are depicted in green. Those failing filters are in red. . . . .	179
6.27 Novel kmers per sample and cross. Left: number of novel kmers in each sample, after filtering. Right: distribution of novel kmers per sample in each cross. . . . .	180
6.28 Novel kmer usage by variants per sample and cross. Left: novel kmers used in variants (green), in unknown events (orange), and events failing filters (red). Right: fraction of novel kmers used by variants (green), unknown events (orange), and events failing filters (red). . . . .	181



## List of Tables

1.1	Phenotypes of <i>P. falciparum</i> isolates used for genetic crosses. . . . .	2
1.2	Theoretical percentage of the genome recovered at a target depth of coverage. . . . .	5
1.3	The <i>P. falciparum</i> datasets that will be referred to throughout this work. . . . .	5
3.1	Assembly statistics on publicly available finished and draft <i>P. falciparum</i> references, ordered by scaffold N <sub>50</sub> length. Parental samples are shown in boldface. . . . .	29
3.2	Variants found the HB3 (PG0052-C) sample from the MalariaGen 3D7xHB3 dataset. . . . .	31
3.3	<i>Var</i> gene replacements from 3D7 to HB3 repertoire. . . . .	32
3.4	Example read and fragment scalar properties for sample PG0063-C. . . . .	42
3.5	<i>De novo</i> variant counts for each of the 20 simulated children. . . . .	45
4.1	Comparison of assembly statistics of the finished 3D7 reference genome and a reconstruction of the same sample from 76-bp Illumina data. . . . .	48
4.2	ROC metrics on simulated perfect data . . . . .	76
4.3	ROC metrics on simulated realistic data . . . . .	77
5.1	Summary of sequencing data for four <i>Plasmodium falciparum</i> crosses . . . . .	84
5.2	Additional data availability for all <i>P. falciparum</i> cross parents . . . . .	85
5.3	Statistics on all parental assemblies . . . . .	87
5.4	Assembly statistics for PacBio RS II data on PG0051-C and PG0443-C isolates	90
5.5	Apparent errors per chromosome in the PG0051-C assembly . . . . .	93
5.6	Callset metrics in the PG0446-C sample of the trio . . . . .	101
5.7	<i>De novo</i> variants in 3D7xHB3 progeny, PG0063-C . . . . .	110
5.8	Monomorphic variants and rates of occurrence per cross and per sample . .	116
5.9	Polymorphic variants and rates of occurrence per cross and per sample . .	117
5.10	NAHR events in Claessens <i>et al.</i> and this study . . . . .	119
6.1	Summary of sequencing data for four <i>Plasmodium falciparum</i> crosses . . . . .	134

6.2	Additional data availability for all <i>P. falciparum</i> cross parents . . . . .	135
6.3	Statistics on all parental assemblies . . . . .	137
6.4	Assembly statistics for PacBio RS II data on PG0051-C and PG0443-C isolates	140
6.5	Apparent errors per chromosome in the PG0051-C assembly . . . . .	143
6.6	Callset metrics in the PG0446-C sample of the trio . . . . .	151
6.7	<i>De novo</i> variants in 3D7xHB3 progeny, PG0063-C . . . . .	160
6.8	Monomorphic variants and rates of occurrence per cross and per sample .	166
6.9	Polymorphic variants and rates of occurrence per cross and per sample .	167
6.10	NAHR events in Claessens <i>et al.</i> and this study . . . . .	169

## *List of Algorithms*

1	Given a set of variants, generate all possible subsets of variants . . . . .	8
2	Generate an alternative reference sequence based on a VCF file. . . . .	29
3	Emit all fragment starts, read starts, and error rates per position. . . . .	40
4	Lift a table from reference to child coordinates. . . . .	41
5	Get next kmers from the clean graph, failing back to the dirty graph . . . . .	52
6	Compute the local minimum of a kmer coverage distribution . . . . .	61
7	A basic, iterative depth-first search . . . . .	64
8	The recursive depth-first search with arbitrary stopping conditions . . . . .	65
9	Child's traversal success determination method . . . . .	66
10	Child's traversal failure determination method . . . . .	66
11	Parents' traversal success determination method . . . . .	67
12	Parents' traversal failure determination method . . . . .	67
13	Annotating possible variant starts and ends of the subgraph . . . . .	68
14	Finding the shortest path in a graph . . . . .	70
15	Trim back haplotypes to reveal alleles . . . . .	70
16	Stretch has switches . . . . .	72
17	Stretch has chimeras . . . . .	72
18	Score variant . . . . .	73
19	Evaluate variant . . . . .	74



# 1 Motivation

## 1.1 Introduction

De novo mutation is the means by which evolution moves forward.

INCREASINGLY FREQUENT REPORTS OF ANTIMICROBIAL RESISTANCE AND IMMUNE ESCAPE have lead to worries about a "post-antibiotic era": a time when common pathogens no longer respond to drugs and for which no effective vaccines exist.<sup>2</sup> For influenza A, a single serine to asparagine amino acid substitution (S31N) alters the properties of the M<sub>2</sub> ion channel,<sup>3</sup> interferes with the action of the adamantane class of antiviral drugs, and has reached fixation in the population.<sup>4</sup> In *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, a four-year *in vitro* drug challenge experiment on nine drug-susceptible isolates from a single patient demonstrated the strain could acquire resistance to nearly all first-line and most second-line drugs through just 12 single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs).<sup>5</sup> *Staphylococcus aureus* is the most common cause of post-operative infection worldwide and is increasingly unresponsive to β-lactam treatment and drugs in the penicillin group (methicillin, dicloxacillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, etc.). Sequencing of methicillin-susceptible (MSSA) in the penicillin group and resistant (MRSA)<sup>1</sup> strains reveals the acquisition of resistance genes via mobile genetic elements and horizontally transferred genomic islands (e.g. the SCC<sub>mec</sub> cassette chromosome upon which the methicillin and other β-lactam antibiotic resistance gene, *mecA*, resides).<sup>6</sup>

*De novo* mutations (DNM), genomic variants arising anew in a sample and absent from progenitors, underlie many medically relevant pathogenic phenotypes. The examples above all involve virulence phenotypes arising from spontaneous point mutations, structural variants, or horizontal gene transfer - all mutational methods that occur outside methods of traditional reproduction. They are critical tools for pathogenic evolution and come in myriad forms.

---

<sup>1</sup>The term "methicillin resistant" is used in the literature, though it is taken to mean all drugs - including more stable variants of methicillin used in modern clinical practice

**Table 1.1:** Phenotypes of *P. falciparum* isolates used for genetic crosses.

	3D7	HB3	DD2	7G8	GB4	803
pyrimethamine sensitivity	-	+				
chloroquine sensitivity		+	-			
infests mosquitoes easily		+	-			
infests <i>Aotus nancymaae</i>				-	+	-
artemisinin sensitivity					+	-

## 1.2 *De novo mutations (DNMs) in Plasmodium falciparum*

Experimental crosses of *Plasmodium falciparum* parasites, the causative agent for the most deadly form of malaria, have enabled the discovery of a number of inherited and *de novo* virulence factors. The contrasting phenotypes for various strains of *P. falciparum* are listed in Table 1.1. For inherited factors, crossing of the pyrimethamine-resistant 3D7 and sensitive HB3 strains<sup>7</sup> revealed a nonsynonymous point mutation in the *dhfr-ts*<sup>2</sup> gene, inhibiting binding of (and thus conferring resistance to) the drug.<sup>8</sup> Analysis of the HB3 x DD2 cross,<sup>9</sup> the latter of which is resistant to chloroquine, localized the determinant to a previously undetected gene on chromosome 7, labelled *pfcrt*<sup>3</sup>, a member of a new family of transporters. Additional investigation into differences in mosquito infection efficacy revealed down-regulation of the *pfmdv-1*<sup>4</sup> gene,<sup>10,11</sup> disruption of which results in marked reduction of mature and functional male gametocytes.

For uninherited factors, cytoadherence and antigenic properties of parasites facilitate evasion from host immune attack, and can differ substantially from the properties of their progenitors. In 2000, Freitas-Junior *et al.* showed that some 3D7 x HB3, HB3 x DD2, and HB3 x HB3 progeny harbored non-parental forms of subtelomeric *var* genes, key members of an antigenic gene family.<sup>12</sup> These altered forms were likely generated during mitosis by non-allelic homologous recombination<sup>5</sup> (NAHR) of telomeres from two different chromosomes.<sup>13</sup> The resulting genes are novel, functional, and never before observed by the host immune system.

These DNMs are critical tools for malaria to evade drug and immune pressure. NAHR can further diversify a pathogen's antigenic repertoire, enabling continued evasion of immunological actors. Duplications of a transporter gene may enable faster drug clearance in a parasite, thus conferring resistance. Spontaneous point mutations may alter the binding site of a drug to a receptor, thus conferring immunity.

<sup>2</sup>dihydrofolate reductase-thymidylate synthase

<sup>3</sup>*P. falciparum* chloroquine resistance transporter

<sup>4</sup>*P. falciparum* male gametocyte development gene 1

<sup>5</sup>sometimes referred to as "ectopic" (aberrant) recombination in the literature

### *1.2.1 A reference-based approach for DNM discovery and genotyping*

With the advent of sequencing technologies, it is now straightforward to discover many DNMs. Long reads (~500 bp) from the first-generation sequencing technology, Sanger sequencing, can be stitched together *in silico* by considering the overlaps of sequences generated from many copies of the genome.<sup>14</sup> This has enabled the reconstructions of full-length genomes and subsequent gene annotations for a single representative (or "reference") individual in a population. Second-generation sequencing is leveraging economies of scale to reduce sequencing costs by several orders of magnitude.<sup>15</sup> The reads it produces are shorter (~100 bp) and more error-prone, but billions of them can be produced quickly. Like the long reads, the short read data can also be assembled into a new genome, albeit with more errors and gaps, owing to the difficulty of overcoming large repetitive regions with short genomic fragments.<sup>16</sup> Alternatively, assuming the sequence for the reference genome and a new individual are highly similar, it is far more common (and computationally more efficient) to align the reads to the reference.<sup>17</sup> String matching algorithms that allow mismatches, insertion, and deletions to appear in the alignments allow millions of sequenced reads to be placed on the reference genome quickly. Separate tools can then examine the alignments, looking for the presence of non-reference alleles, and using statistical approaches to call and genotype variants with high accuracy.<sup>18</sup>

Variant calling software has been successfully applied to many sequencing datasets for the discovery of DNMs. These variant callsets have provided insight into the development of drug resistance,<sup>19</sup> the genetic architecture of some common diseases,<sup>20</sup> and mutational rates in humans and chimpanzees with a strong paternal age effect.<sup>21–24</sup> Many groups have released sophisticated software packages to facilitate these analyses and detailed instructions on their use.<sup>25,26</sup>

### *1.2.2 A reference-free approach for assessing DNM sensitivity*

Specificity and sensitivity are crucial metrics to consider for any variant callset. There are many approaches to establishing the specificity of a DNM callset. For select variants (typically on the order of ~100 variants from a callset), Sanger sequencing, Sequenom assays, and even targeted third-generation sequencing (i.e. PacBio sequencing, which can generate reads up to ~50,000 bp as of this writing) have been used successfully to validate mutations. Establishing sensitivity is much more difficult. In theory, one would need complete and error-free reference genomes for both parents and each child in which the mutation calls are made. Except for the smallest genomes, such an approach is prohibitively expensive.

Instead, it may be possible to establish the sensitivity of the reference-based protocol by considering how DNMs alter the genome of a sample with respect to its progenitors. Consider a site where a DNM - say, a single SNP - has occurred, as depicted in Figure 1.1. Although a single base of the genome has been altered, when the genome is divided into fixed-length words of length  $k$ , or "kmers", we find  $k$  kmers that are present in the child but absent in the parents. In this manner, DNMs can be considered generators of "novel" kmers - kmers present in the child but absent in the parents. These kmers can be used as a signal to indicate the presence of a *de novo* variant. By choosing  $k$  to be reasonably large so as to avoid analyzing short sequences that pervade the genome (half to two-thirds the length of a read will suffice), we can simply count continuous stretches of novel kmers as a proxy for the number of DNMs.

This approach gives us a powerful, reference-free mechanism to verify the results of the reference-based analysis. Sequencing of the whole genome is independent of any reference sequence that may already exist for the sample, and given sufficient coverage (Table 1.2 shows the requirements, assuming 76 bp reads and a 23 megabase genome), the raw data from a sequencing experiment should contain the full set of DNM-generated novel kmers, regardless of any mapping issues.<sup>27</sup> Taking the reads that map, calling *de novo* variants, and extracting the novel kmers from the immediate vicinity should theoretically reproduce that set. Comparing the expected (reference-free) set to the observed (reference-based) kmer set should thus provide the sought sensitivity measure.

### 1.3 *DNM sensitivity of the reference-based approach*

We now demonstrate these ideas on real data sets that will be used throughout this dissertation: experimental crosses between malaria parasites (*Plasmodium falciparum*).

The datasets that we'll be referring to in this work are summarized in Table 1.3. For simplicity, we shall focus on the samples from the 3D7xHB3 cross.

#### 1.3.1 *Data processing*

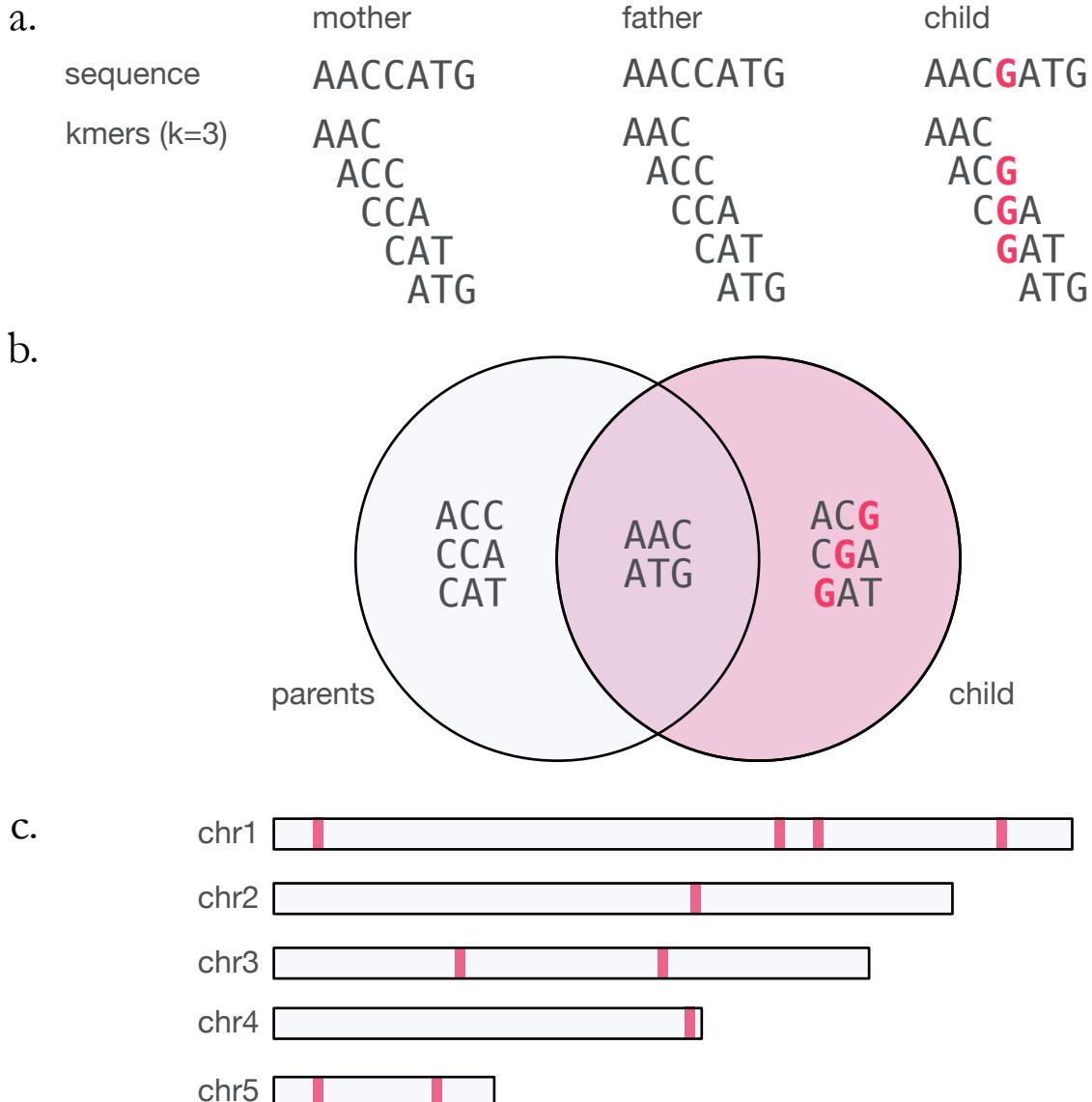
We first generated the list of expected novel kmers by processing the raw sequencing data for each sample with the *de novo* assembly software, Cortex<sup>28</sup> at  $k = 47$ , standard settings for other parameters, and no error cleaning. We produced the initial list of putative novel kmers by selecting kmers present in a child but absent in both parents. We further produced a "confident" list of novel kmers by imposing a kmer coverage threshold, automatically determined by a custom algorithm designed to find a local minimum on the LOESS regression of the coverage distribution, as shown in Figure 1.2. Finally, we produce a "trusted" list of novel kmers by removing kmers originating from possible

**Table 1.2:** Theoretical percentage of the genome recovered at a target depth of coverage.

coverage	numReads	numNucleotides	pctGenome
1	302631	2.3e+07	63.21
2	605263	4.6e+07	86.47
3	907894	6.9e+07	95.02
4	1210526	9.2e+07	98.17
5	1513157	1.15e+08	99.33
6	1815789	1.38e+08	99.75
7	2118421	1.61e+08	99.91
8	2421052	1.84e+08	99.97
9	2723684	2.07e+08	99.99
10	3026315	2.3e+08	100.00
11	3328947	2.53e+08	100.00
12	3631578	2.76e+08	100.00
13	3934210	2.99e+08	100.00
14	4236842	3.22e+08	100.00
15	4539473	3.45e+08	100.00
16	4842105	3.68e+08	100.00
17	5144736	3.91e+08	100.00
18	5447368	4.14e+08	100.00
19	5750000	4.37e+08	100.00
20	6052631	4.6e+08	100.00

**Table 1.3:** The *P. falciparum* datasets that will be referred to throughout this work.

	3D7xHB3	HB3xDD2	7G8xGB4	803xGB4
progeny	17	30	38	29
read length	76	76	76	100
fragment size	300 ± 30	248 ± 46	294 ± 17	224 ± 8
coverage	105 ± 34	102 ± 48	105 ± 30	176 ± 54

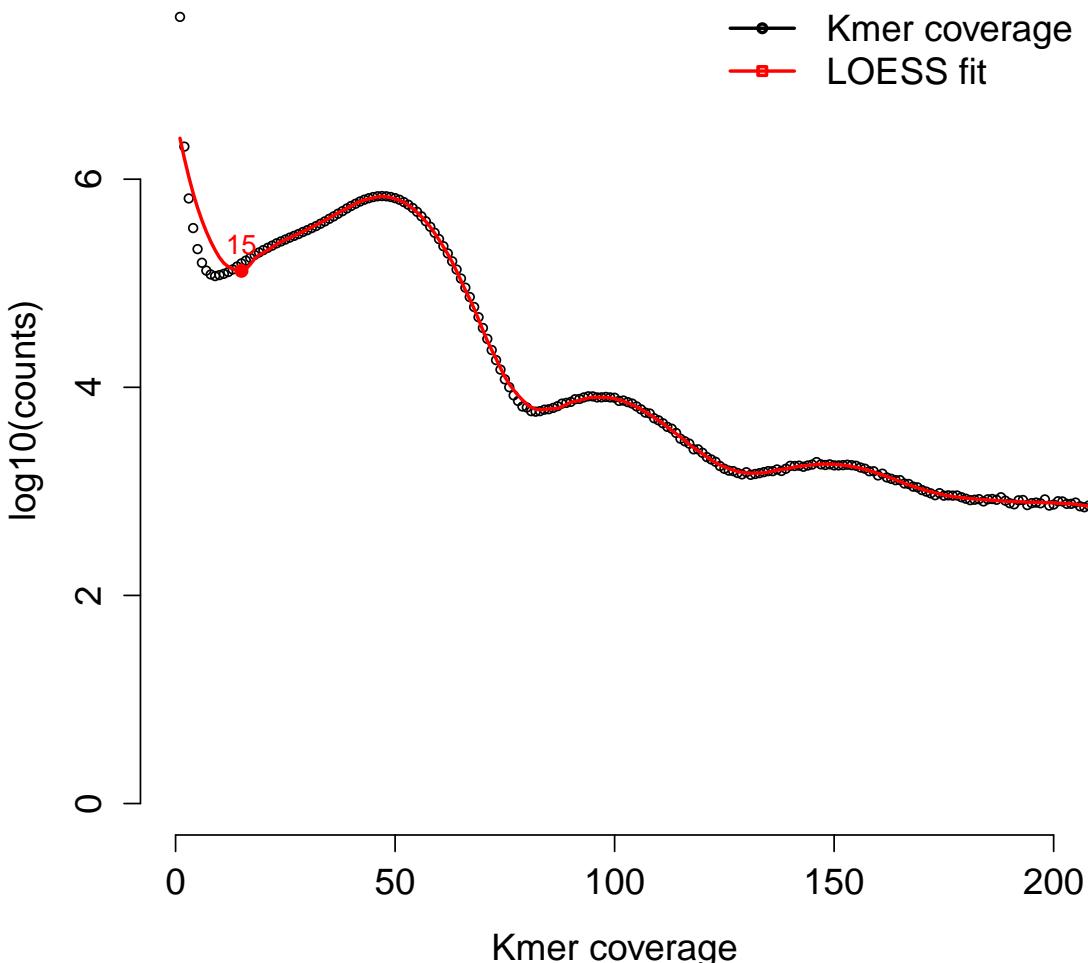


**Figure 1.1:** a. Parental and child sequences at the site of a *de novo* mutation, and the kmers generated at  $k = 3$ . b. The resulting Venn diagram of kmers found exclusively in the parents, the child, or common to both. c. Novel kmers found around the genome indicate the presence of a *de novo* mutation.

contaminants, as determined by performing a BLAST search on the confident list and removing all non-*Plasmodium* hits. These steps ensure that the list of trusted novel kmers is very restrictive.

We aligned each sample's reads to the PlasmoDB 9.0 release of the *Plasmodium falciparum* genome<sup>29,30</sup> using BWA-MEM.<sup>31</sup> We followed data processing guidelines as specified in the Genome Analysis Toolkit (GATK) best-practices documentation,<sup>25,32</sup> flagging

## PG0063-C.ERR019060



**Figure 1.2:** Kmer coverage distribution for a single 3D7xHB3 progeny, PG0063-C. Red line indicates non-parametric LOESS fit upon which the local minimum is detected.

duplicate reads so that they are ignored downstream, and recalibrating base quality scores using the MalariaGen data release on the crosses as a truth set.<sup>7</sup> As recent guidance by the authors indicates the GATK's variant calling software has internalized the local indel realignment functionality, we opted to forego running this step separately. We called variants across all 18 samples (parents and progeny) simultaneously using the GATK's HaplotypeCaller with standard settings and a ploidy of 1.

A complete and perfect variant callset details the alterations that must be performed on the reference sequence in order to generate the genome of the sequenced sample. Unfortunately, it is typically not possible to obtain a perfectly sensitive and specific callset.

False positives and false negatives proximal to true positives may interfere with our ability to generate the true underlying haplotype sequence. To bypass this problem, we did not filter the variant callset. Instead, we combinatorically generate all possible subsets of variants found within 100 bp of each other using a recursive strategy to leave single elements out of a given set of kmers, presented in Algorithm 1. This will certainly generate vastly more kmers than truly exist in the sample’s genome. However, as we are only interested in verifying that the variant-induced kmers are present in our trusted novel kmer set, this approach has the benefit of providing maximum sensitivity.

---

**Algorithm 1** Given a set of variants, generate all possible subsets of variants

---

```

1: function GENERATEALLPOSSIBLESUBSETS(variants)
2:   loos ← []
3:   for i ← 0 to length(variants) do
4:     loo ← []
5:     for j ← 0 to length(variants) do
6:       if i ≠ j then
7:         loo.add(variants[j])
8:       if loo.size() ≥ 0 then
9:         loos.add(loo)
10:      if loo.size() ≥ 1 then
11:        generateAllPossibleSubsets(loo)
12:   return loos

```

---

### 1.3.2 Results

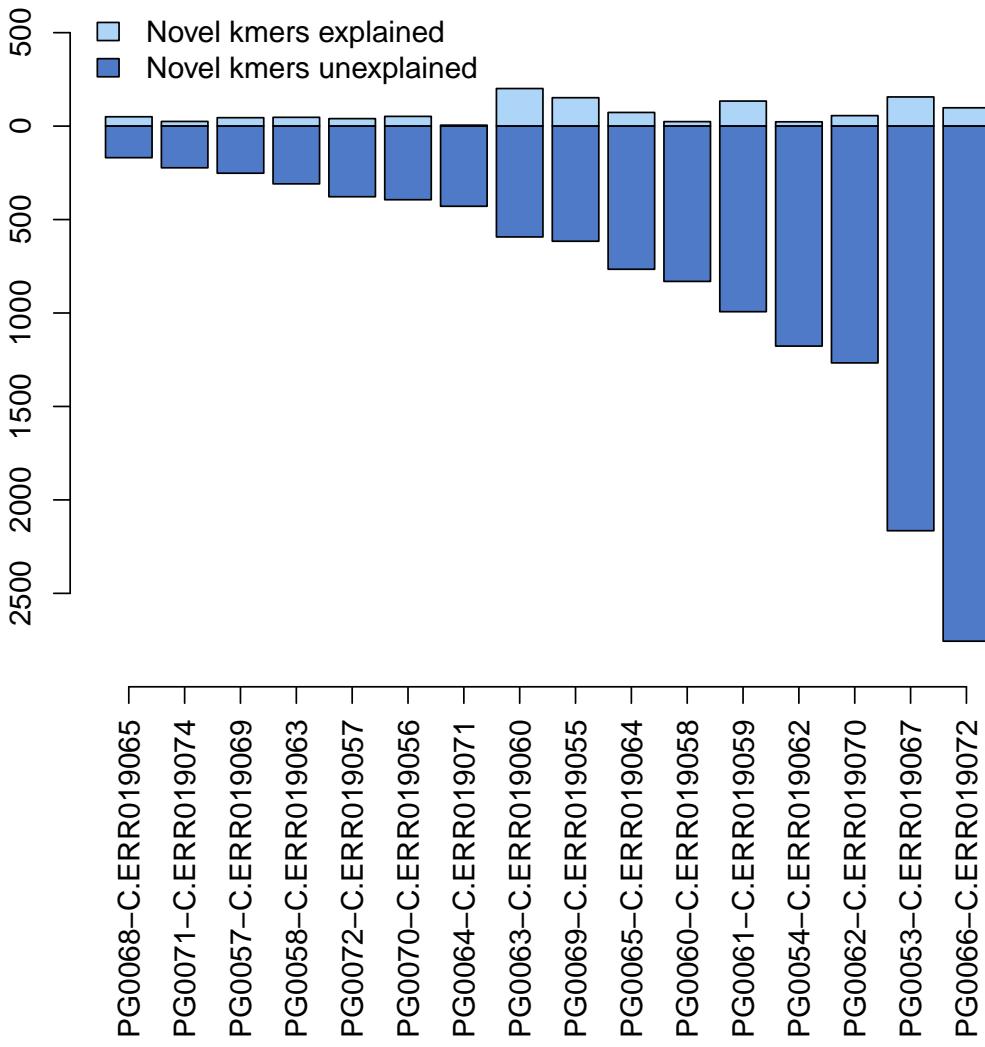
Figure 1.3 shows the results of our reference-based vs reference-free analysis. Per sample, our restrictive reference-free analysis has generated hundreds of trusted novel kmers to explain. However, the reference-based analysis recapitulates only a fraction of these - only about 13% on average.

Attempting to explain where these missing kmers have gone, we searched the reads for every trusted novel kmer. More than 80% of reads containing these kmers were found to map to multiple homes in the genome (summarized per sample in Figure 1.4).

## 1.4 Discussion

### 1.4.1 Failure of the mapping approach

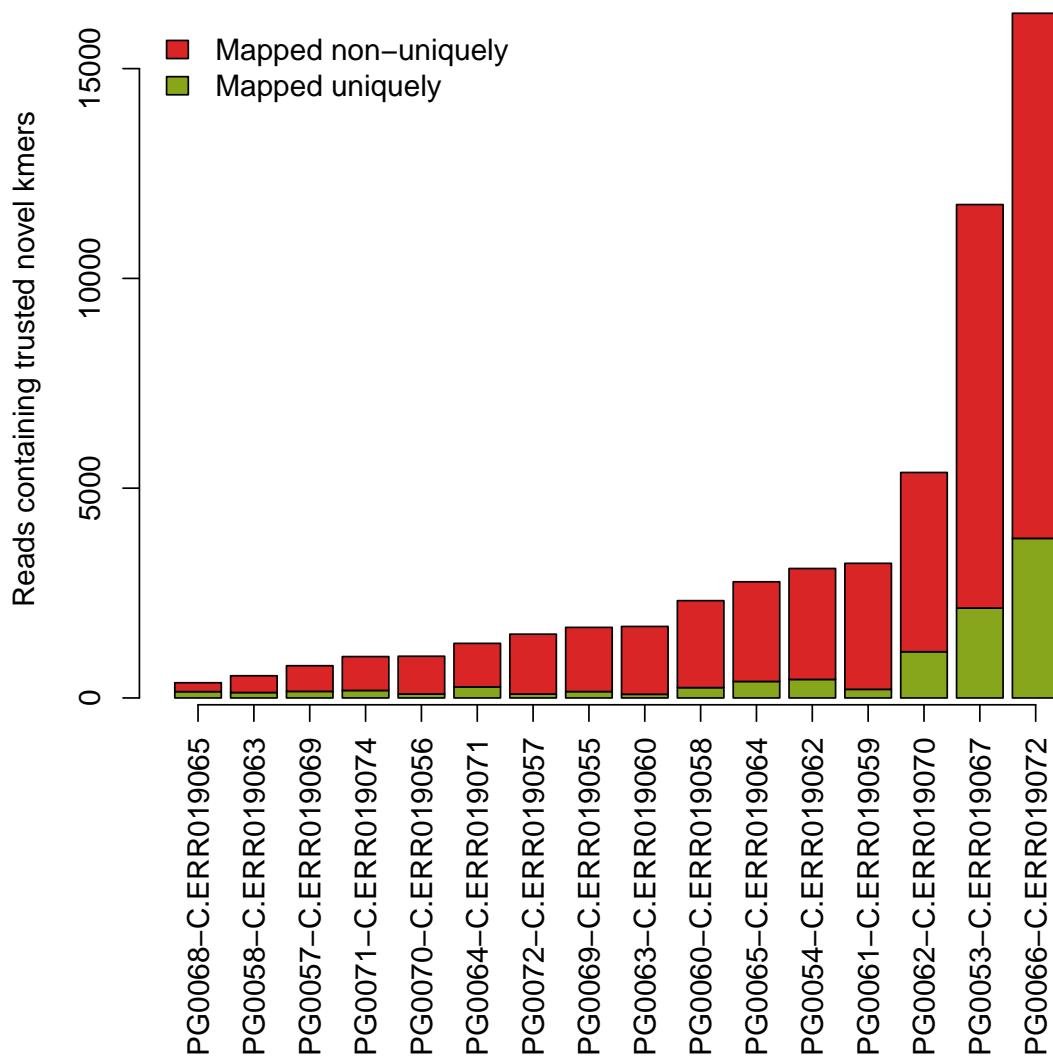
The preponderance of reads containing novel kmers fail to map uniquely to the reference genome, explaining why we should find such a massive discrepancy between the novel kmers we expect versus explain - reference-based calling approaches cannot call variants



**Figure 1.3:** Novel kmers observed in the reference-based analysis vs trusted novel kmers expected from the reference-free analysis.

on unplaced reads. That there should be so many reads that fail to map is perhaps not surprising, given the divergent nature of the reference genome to other samples. Figure 1.5 shows the overlap between kmer sets between the 3D7 and HB3 genomes. More than 20% of the total set of kmers between these two samples is unique to each sample.

These unique kmers are not simply repetitive, intergenic, or otherwise uninteresting kmers. They often reflect interesting biology. Figure 1.6 shows one example: three *var* genes from 3D7's 60-member antigenic repertoire. These genes do not overlap with the HB3 repertoire. One of the 3D7xHB3 progeny, has inherited one of the 3D7 *var* genes in full, but curiously exhibits mosaic recovery of two others. This is known to be an NAHR



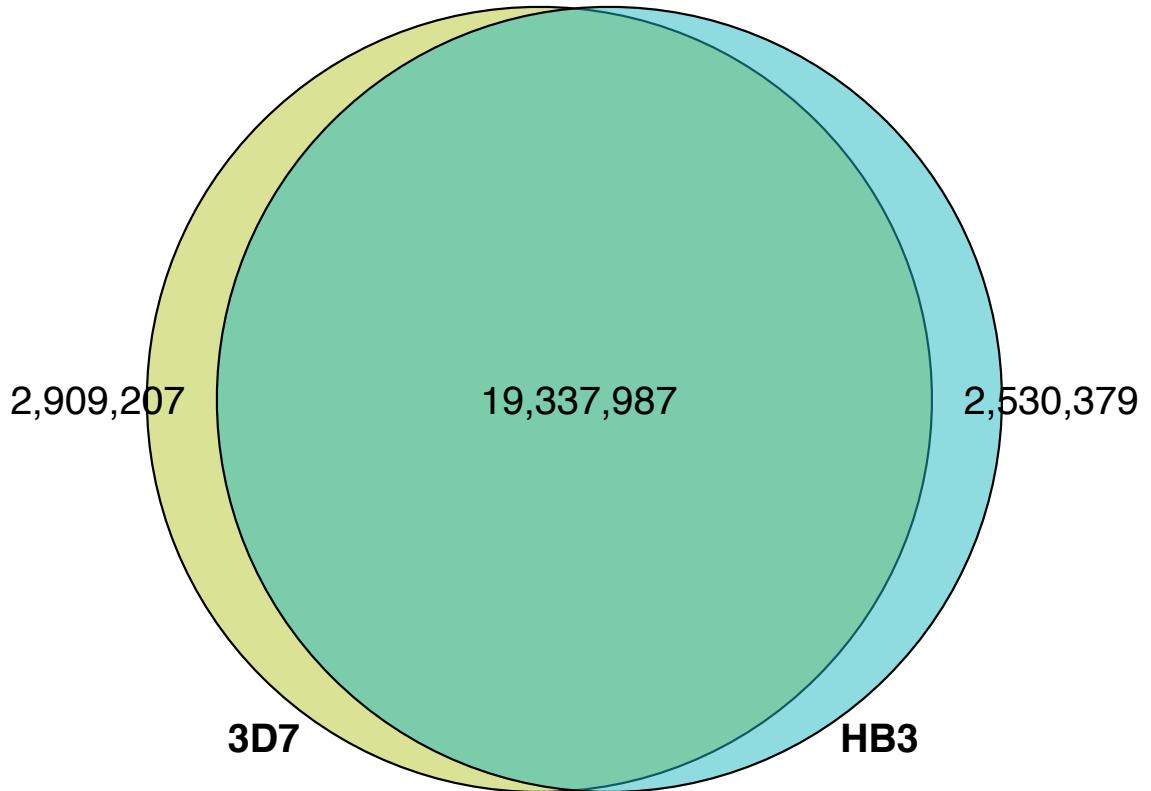
**Figure 1.4:** Reads that map once to the reference genome versus mapping multiple times, conditioned on the read containing a trusted novel kmer.

event between the telomeres of chromosomes 1 and 2, likely to have occurred during mitosis, preserving the domain architecture and yielding a functional product.<sup>33</sup>

Alignment of short reads to a single reference and subsequent application of variant callers is a poor strategy for *de novo* variant discovery in *P. falciparum* (and likely higher-order species as well) for a number of reasons:

#### 1. Absent or divergent loci in genome

The underlying assumption that two genomes from the same species should be very similar is inappropriate for highly diverse populations (e.g. pathogens) or



**Figure 1.5:** Venn diagram of kmers present in the 3D7 and HB3 genomes at  $k = 47$ . Both forward and reverse-compliment kmers are considered the same.

hypervariable regions (e.g. immune loci in mammals). If a haplotype present in the sample is too dissimilar to the reference, or perhaps even completely absent, read aligners may return incorrect results. Reads may align to the wrong location, the resultant mismatches mistaken for real mutations. Alternatively, they may fail to align at all, thus obscuring evidence of real variation.

## 2. Incomplete or errorful reference sequences

Reference sequences are often incomplete and/or contain errors due to technical artifacts. Chaisson *et al.* provide an excellent review on the various errors that may arise.<sup>34</sup> Regions of the genome may fail to amplify during library preparation, leading to coverage dropout and subsequent gaps in the assembly. Insufficiently long reads used in the reference genome construction may lead to the misestimation of lengths of repetitive regions, causing repeats to have a collapsed representation relative to the true genome. Segmental duplications, gene families, or other loci with high sequence identity may generate ambiguous read overlaps that cannot be resolved without very long reads.

### 3. Difficult to include prior information about variation in a species

Read aligners must make a decision as to how many apparent mismatches to permit with respect to the reference sequence. However, these software packages typically operate per-read, without information on prior population variation throughout the genome.

### 4. Inability to include improved or project-specific data

Improvements in sequencing technology, or new platforms altogether, can yield supplementary datasets that adds missing information to a genome or repairs a misrepresented locus. There is no natural framework for incorporating these additional datasets to the alignment framework.

#### 1.4.2 *De novo assembly as an alternative approach*

Consider Table 1.2 again, which demonstrates that we can expect to recover the full genome at as little as 10-fold coverage. For small genomes (*P. falciparum* is approximately 23 megabases in length), modern sequencing experiments can routinely return excess of 100-fold coverage. It is therefore clear that deeply-sequenced samples will have reads representing the entirety of the genome despite our inability to align all of them to the genome. Rather than relying on mapping to an imperfect and incomplete reference, we can attempt to assemble the genome *de novo* - from the sequenced data itself, ignoring the availability of a reference sequence.

The problem of performing *de novo* assembly essentially reduces to computing read-to-read alignments, rather than read-to-reference alignments. As each read represents recovery of some small region of the genome, the supersequence of overlapping reads (the aligned nucleotides flanked by the non-overlapping sequences from each read) represent some larger linear stretch of the genome. Brute-force computation of all possible pairwise alignments is  $\mathcal{O}(N^2)$  in the number of reads, which is impractical for second-generation sequencing datasets with tens or hundreds of millions of reads. Fortunately, there are many ways to compute and represent these overlaps efficiently. We shall focus on one  $\mathcal{O}(N)$  method in this work: assembly via construction of a de Bruijn graph.

Formal definitions can be found in Chapter 4. Informally, a graph is simply a data structure representing a collection of objects (termed "vertices" or "nodes") and connections ("edges" or "links"). In a de Bruijn graph, each vertex is a unique element. Applied to sequencing, a de Bruijn graph encodes linear stretches of sequence, while each edge represents an overlap with the connected vertices. Commonly, each read is decomposed into fixed-length words of an arbitrary length  $k$ , or "kmers". As each kmer is sequentially

extracted from a read and added to the graph as vertices, edges between adjacent kmers in the read are stored as well. Overlapping reads will share kmers, and since each kmer can only appear once in the graph, adding kmers and edges from the overlapping read effectively records the alignment without needing to literally compute all possibilities. Figure 1.7 depicts a simple 16 bp genome, sequenced with 7 bp reads, and the resulting de Bruijn graph constructed at a kmer size of 3.

Construction of this data structure is challenging. First, errors in second-generation sequencing data are very common, and therefore the graph produced from raw sequencing data will contain many branches that are not in the actual genome (examine Figure 1.7 again, observing the highlighted base - a sequencing error - and the resultant perturbation to the otherwise linear graph). These can be mitigated (but perhaps not completely solved) by error-cleaning algorithms that remove low coverage kmers, as presumably in high coverage data, random errors are rare and can be detected and discarded. Second, long repetitive stretches of the genome that feature the same kmers multiple times will be collapsed into a single copy, as de Bruijn graphs only store each kmer once. Finally, homology in the genome can cause two separate regions of the genome to appear proximal to one another in the graph. This may result in a vertices with multiple outgoing edges, causing unresolvable ambiguity when traversing the graph.

Nevertheless, such an approach should resolve many of the deficiencies of an alignment-based approach. Absent or divergent loci should be recovered. The uncleaved graph should be complete (barring any regions of the genome that suffer from an amplification bias that prevents them from being sequenced). Prior information about variation in the species (or in this case, just the parents) are included by assembling the parents and comparing to them directly, rather than indirectly via the reference. Finally, additional information can be added at graph construction time or by adding a separate color to the graph encoding the supplementary data.

## 1.5 Overview of this work

In this dissertation, we present a novel multi-color graph-based approach to *de novo* mutation detection and allele identification. We show how knowledge of the pedigree enables us to identify so-called **novel kmers** - kmers present in children and absent from parents - that serve as an exceedingly strong signal as to the presence of *de novo* variation. We use these kmers to analyze subgraphs in the genome likely to represent DNM s and navigate color-specific paths and trails to determine the precise allele. We also demonstrate how the novel kmers act as "sign posts" during graph traversal, indicating that a traversal is following a fruitful path. This simultaneously constrains the runtime of

the algorithm and allows us to overcome sequencing error that could not otherwise be overcome. We demonstrate that this approaches yields vastly superior sensitivity and specificity to DNMs than conventional methods, and can easily access events that occur on the haplotypic background of the non-reference parent.

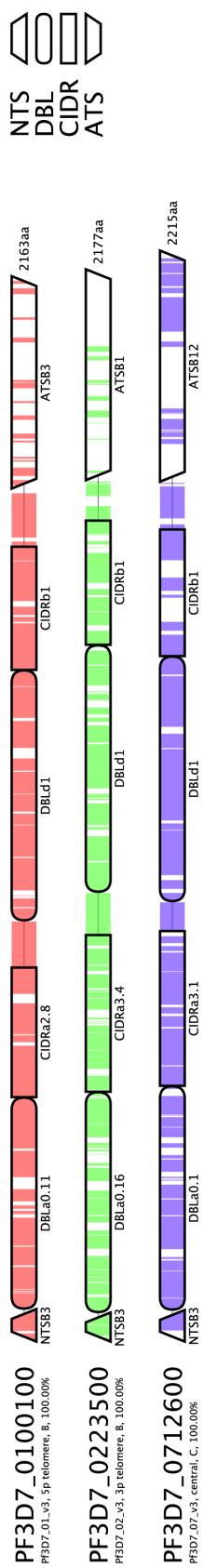
In Chapter 2, I present a review on mutational mechanisms that generate *de novo* mutations, their rates, factors that influence their generation, and known events in various species.

Chapters 3 and 4 detail the software packages I have written for this work, the former including descriptions of the realistic variant read simulations, the latter detailing the graph genotyping algorithm.

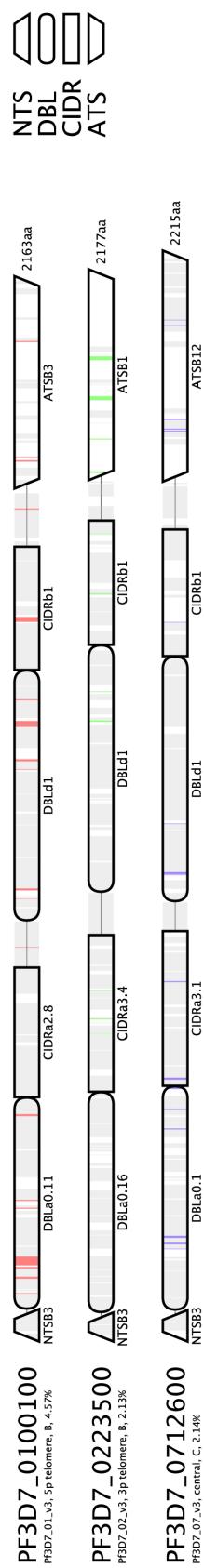
Chapters 6 and ?? present results from applying the algorithm to real data. The former chapter focuses on the aforementioned *P. falciparum* crosses. The latter addresses a *Pan troglodytes* pedigree.

Finally, Chapter 7 discusses the work in a larger context and details various improvements that can be made in future work.

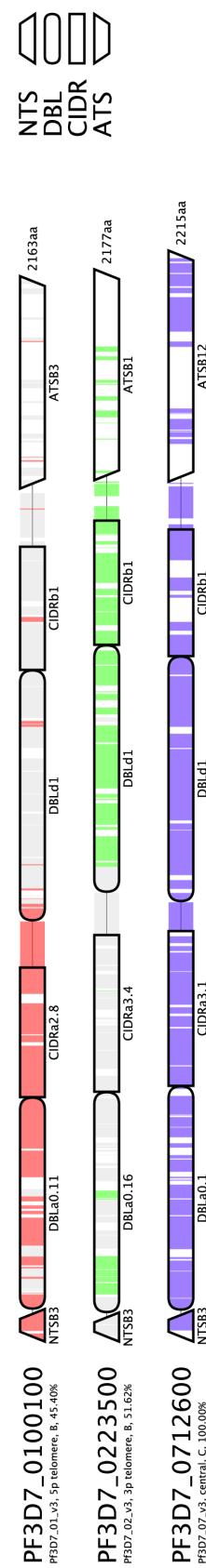
### 3D7 parent (PG0051-C)



### HB3 parent (PG0052-C)



### Progeny (PG0063-C)



**Figure 1.6:** Presence and absence of unique kmers in three 3D7 *var* genes. Each vertical line represents a kmer. Colored kmers represent those unique 3D7 kmers that are recovered in the sample. Grey indicates no recovery. White indicates the kmer at that position was not unique in the 3D7 genome. Only the coding regions of the respective genes are shown, with domain annotations obtained from the VarDom server.<sup>1</sup>

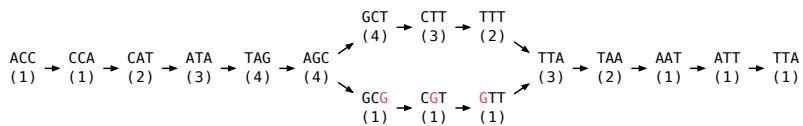
a. Genome to be sequenced

ACCATAGCTTTAATTAA

b. Sequenced reads and resulting kmers ( $k=3$ )

ACCATAG (ACC, CCA, CAT, ATA, TAG)  
TAGCTT (TAG, AGC, GCT, CTT, TTT)  
TTAATTAA (TTA, TAA, AAT, ATT, TTA)  
ATAGCTT (ATA, TAG, AGC, GCT, CTT)  
CATAGCT (CAT, ATA, TAG, AGC, GCT)  
AGCGTTA (AGC, GCG, CGT, GTT, TTA)  
GCTTTAA (GCT, CTT, TTT, TTA, TAA)

c. de Bruijn graph reconstruction ( $k=3$ )



**Figure 1.7:** The process of generating a de Bruijn graph representation of sequence data.  
a. The underlying genome. b. Reads sequenced from the genome (including one read with a sequencing error). Reverse-complement reads are not shown for clarity. c. The  $k = 3$  de Bruijn graph reconstruction, including kmer coverage annotations.

## 2 *Background*

MANY MECHANISMS CONTRIBUTE TO THE PRODUCTION of *de novo* mutation in a genome. In *Plasmodium falciparum*, these mutations can occur at various stages in the parasite's lifecycle. It is thus important to review this lifecycle so that we might better understand the mechanisms that contribute to the *de novo* mutation landscape and how each of these mutations may manifest in genomic sequence data.

### 2.1 *Lifecycle of the P. falciparum parasite*

*Plasmodium falciparum* is a protozoan pathogen with a complex life cycle spanning several stages in (limited) vertebrate and mosquito hosts. We shall review these stages and their constituent components in turn.

#### 2.1.1 *Liver stage*

Vertebrate infection by *P. falciparum* begins when a pregnant, infected *Anopheles* spp. mosquito bites a host to consume a blood meal.<sup>35</sup> Dozens to hundreds of **sporozoites** (the initial motile invasion stage of the *falciparum* parasite) are transmitted to the host bloodstream via the saliva of the mosquito.<sup>36</sup> The sporozoites travel the bloodstream until they reach the liver, infecting hepatocytes (specifically **Kupffer cells**: macrophages which express low levels of MHC I molecules.<sup>37</sup>

Inside the **parasitophorous vacuole** (a cytoplasm-filled protective envelope, "PV") produced by the sporozoite upon invasion of the hepatocyte, the parasite is protected from the phagolysosomes of the Kupffer cell and can begin asexual reproduction.<sup>38</sup> The sporozoites undergo schizogonic development wherein the sporozoite produces many copies of its nucleus in preparation for multiple fission. Upon cell segmentation, the parasite cells differentiate into **merozoites**, the next invasion stage of the *falciparum* parasite.

The liver stage takes between 6 and 8 days<sup>39</sup> to complete, producing thousands of haploid merozoites per parasitized hepatocyte.<sup>40</sup> This stage ends when the merozoites

exit the hepatocytes and return to the bloodstream (presumably via physical rupture of the host cell).

### 2.1.2 Blood stage

Newly released merozoites are non-motile; they come into contact with erythrocytes during transit in the bloodstream. As erythrocytes are non-nucleated, thus lacking MHC I and II molecules, they make for an effective hiding place from the adaptive immune system.<sup>41</sup> Merozoites invade the RBCs quickly, within 60 to 120 seconds of their egress from hepatocytes<sup>42,43</sup> (presumably this speed is to minimize its exposure to immunological attack). A merozoite once again forms a PV after invasion in order to create a more hospitable development environment for itself. This is followed by a repeating cycle of asexual reproduction. The intra-erythrocytic development cycle progresses through three stages: **ring** (immature trophozoite, named for its morphology under microscopy), **trophozoite** (the merozoite after shedding its surface coat and invasion organelles in its apical complex), and **schizont** (a multi-nucleated cell resulting from multiple fission and just prior to cell segmentation).<sup>44</sup> Eventually the schizont ruptures, releasing 16 to 32 merozoites into the bloodstream which can then quickly infect more erythrocytes. This process takes 24 to 48 hours.

To avoid destruction in the spleen, the parasites express and transport to the surface of the parasetimized RBC (pRBC) a cytoadherence factor termed **PfEMP1** (*Plasmodium falciparum* erythrocyte membrane protein 1).<sup>45</sup> The pRBCs typically adhere to the endothelial cells of post-capillary vessels, thus withdrawing from peripheral circulation.<sup>46</sup> Such parasites are said to be **sequestered** from the immune system, which affords the parasite time to replicate within the parasetimized cell. Should the cell still come into contact with B-cells, each parasite's genome encodes approximately 60 variants of this protein in a family of genes termed *var*. Little to no overlap exists in the repertoires of geographically distant parasites.<sup>47</sup> Expression of a single member of the *var* gene family is mutually exclusive with all other forms being silenced. This differential expression is epigenetically controlled through the placement of methylation marks on upstream promoter elements.<sup>48</sup>

All clinical symptoms manifest during red blood cell rupture. Waste products and toxic factors that accumulate in the cell are released into the blood stream when the cell is lysed. This stimulates immune responses. In uncomplicated malaria, symptoms include fever, chills, sweats, rigors, and other flu-like symptoms. As many iterations of erythrocyte invasion, parasite replication, and erythrocyte rupture will occur, these symptoms can appear to periodically relapse. Other symptoms such as anemia and hypovolemia

may occur due to the destruction of RBCs. Severe malaria may occur if the parasite sequestration occurs in the brain (**cerebral malaria, CM**), or in the placenta (**pregnancy associated malaria, PAM**), potentially compromising blood flow to critical tissues. These severe pathologies are often fatal.<sup>49</sup>

#### 2.1.3 Reproduction

During the intra-erythrocytic development stage, approximately 10% of parasites are randomly committed to developing into the sexual form: the **gametocyte**.<sup>50</sup> This is currently thought to occur in the erythrocytic schizonts. Committed parasites reinvoke new erythrocytes and mature into gametocytes in 10 to 12 days. Mature gametocytes do not exit pRBCs within the human host. Instead, they lie in wait for another mosquito to bite, drawing the gametocyte-carrying erythrocytes as part of the blood meal. Gametocytes mature into male and female gametes upon sensing the different environmental conditions in the mosquito midgut (change in temperature, change in pH, and exposure to xanthurenone). Mature haploid gametes fuse to form diploid zygotes, which soon matures into an **ookinete**, a motile form of the zygote that can penetrate the lumen of the mosquito stomach and in which meiotic recombination occurs. The ookinete migrates to the mosquito mid-gut epithelial cell wall and forms an **oocyst**, a non-motile thick-walled spore on the exterior surface of the midgut. The newly formed sporozoite replicates via mitosis within the oocyst. The eventual oocyst rupture releases haploid sporozoites that migrate to the salivary gland of the mosquito. Once the mosquito bites another host and transmits the new sporozoites, the cycle repeats.

#### 2.1.4 The *P. falciparum* crosses

Observing *de novo* mutations in *P. falciparum* parasites requires a system wherein we can obtain DNA for the new sporozoites and their progenitors. Currently, no method for performing such crosses *in vitro* exists, and using a human host for the vertebrate component of the parasite's life cycle would be ethically infeasible. Rodent models are also inviable; *Plasmodium falciparum* is very particular about its vertebrate hosts. Only humans and our closest extant relatives, chimpanzees (*Pan troglodytes*) are known to become infected. In the latter case, it appears infection by *P. falciparum* is asymptomatic, even in splenectomized chimpanzees with high levels of parasitemia.<sup>51</sup>

All four crosses (3D7xHB3, HB3xDD2, 7G8xGB4, and 803xGB4) have involved infecting chimpanzees with sporozoites and later collection of pRBCs for later culturing and analysis.<sup>52</sup> Briefly, this protocol proceeds as follows. First, gametocytes (3D7, HB3, DD2, 7G8, GB4, and 803) are cultured *in vitro*. Next, mosquitos are fed parasetimized blood

through an artifical blood feeder;<sup>53</sup> hopefully the mosquitos ingest gametocytes from both parents. These mosquitoes are then permitted to bite chimpanzees, passing the recombinant parasites (and non-recombinant forms as well, given that there is no mechanism to prevent self-crossings) to the animals' bloodstream. Once blood-stage infection is detected, the parasites are harvested, cultured *in vitro* (limiting dilutions ensure that each culture reflects a clonal expansion of a single sporozoite), and screened for recombinant progeny. This process is repeated until enough recombinant progeny have been detected and successfully cultured.

Until single cell sequencing methods can recapitulate a cell's genome with extremely high fidelity, the culturing step is necessary to ensure adequate material for sequencing. Most second-generation sequencing protocols require at least 1 nanogram of DNA to proceed (though most recommendations call for much more), which is still tens of thousands of parasites required at minimum to ensure sufficient genomic yield during library construction. PCR amplification is not recommended; high fidelty enzymes exhibit an error rate of  $10^{-6}$  mutations/bp, which would lead to 230 PCR-induced mutations in the 23 megabase *P. falciparum* genome. Taken together, the need for culturing is clear.

However, culturing is a third environment in which the parasite must survive. Culturing of *Plasmodium* spp. parasites is notoriously difficult and laborious,<sup>54</sup> and most parasites do not thrive in culture conditions. Those that do almost certainly incur *de novo* mutations that underlie culture adapation. For example, the F12 line of parasites (derived from 3D7) is no longer capable of producing gametocytes.<sup>55-57</sup> Almost certainly this is a response to existing exclusively in culture where the gametocytogenesis pathway cannot be completed. Commitment to sexual differentiation would preclude further asexual replication in the committed parasites. No selective pressure remains to ensure the genes involved in gametocytogenesis remain functional. Parasites that do not produce gametocytes will quickly out-compete those that do. Their new alleles will quickly reach fixation in the culture population, and many more might reach a nominal allele frequency in the pool.

The implications for what we can expect to see in second- and third-generation sequencing data are clear: we must expect mutations to appear with different allele frequencies, despite occurring in a seemingly haploid genome. Any mutation sustained prior to mitosis of newly recombinant sporozoites in the ookinete will appear to be fixed in the sequenced sample. As cultures are initiated with a single parasite (one hopes), any mutation sustained between recombination and harvesting from chimpanzee peripheral blood will also appear fixed. Finally, mutations occurring *in vitro* may or may not achieve fixation. Barring reverse mutations, only *de novo* mutations occurring during culture can

ever be non-fixed in this experimental system. Special care must be taken to not permit these mutations to confound rate calculations for mutational events in the genome, though future analyses regarding culture adaptation may do well to study them more carefully.

## 2.2 *Mutational types*

We have discussed the parasite life cycle which gives us a sense of when mutations may occur. We now discuss the types of mutations we should expect to find, and the mechanisms that generate them.

### 2.2.1 *Point mutations*

Point mutations (single nucleotide variants, or SNVs) are the simplest (and likely most common) alteration that can occur in the genome. These may be induced by exposure to mutagenic agents (ultraviolet radiation, oxidative damage, base analogs, alkylating agents, etc.). More commonly, point mutations arise as the result of errors during DNA replication. **Mispairings** between base pairs may occur when a nucleotide, capable of existing in various **tautomeric** forms (repositionings of a hydrogen atom which alters the hydrogen bonding pattern of the nucleotide) cause the altered form to bind to incorrect nucleotides. Such a tautomeric shift may occur prior to or during replication without being corrected. As the polymerase generates the compliment for each strand, the mispaired base opposite the tautomeric base will have its true compliment incorporated, thus making the error permanent for all descendent cells.<sup>58</sup>

Similar replication errors may arise after **spontaneous base degradation**. Deamination of cytosine (C) to uracil (U) - a non-standard nucleotide in the genome - can result in the mispairing between the latter and adenine (A). Deamination of methylcytosine can produce a thymine. Should these degraded nucleotides escape repair processes (and in the latter case, there is no error recognition mechanism to detect and remove the aberrant thymine, as it is a normal base in DNA), the changes will effectively be ratified by replication.

### 2.2.2 *Insertions, deletions, inversions*

The most common cause of **insertion** (the addition of one or more nucleotides to a locus in the genome) and **deletion** (the removal of one or more nucleotides) mutations is errors during the replication of repetitive elements. This can occur when a repeat unit (or several) are looped out during replication, resulting in a "slip" in the template strand versus the nascent strand (an apparent insertion) or vice versa (an apparent deletion).

Indels also commonly arise as the result of DNA repair efforts on **double-strand breaks (DSBs)** by the cell, via a number of different repair pathways. **Homology-directed repair (HDR)** proceeds by first resecting a short region around the DSB in the 5' to 3' directions on both strands. A genome-wide homology search returns a (presumably) homologous template sequence with which to guide the repair. **Strand invasion** brings the broken strands and complementary complete strands into proximity so that the missing sequence can be resynthesized, forming a DNA **heteroduplex**. A **displacement loop (D-loop)** is formed between the invading 3' overhanging region and the homologous counterpart. The action of the polymerase extends the invading 3' strand by synthesizing the missing sequence according to the template, and in doing so, the D-loop is changed to a cross-shaped structure known as a **Holliday junction**. The crossing strands are cut, yielding the repaired chromosomes. Mutations can arise if the homology search returns sequence that is similar but not perfectly homologous to the lost sequence. While in a diploid genome, the homology search would yield sequence on the sister chromatid, such a search necessarily yields a different part of a haploid genome. Many types of mutation can be induced by this mechanism, including insertions, deletions, even inversions.

In contrast, **non-homologous end joining (NHEJ)** does not require a homologous template. In most cases, a clean DSB (one that simply separates the strands at the same position in both strands) is easily repaired by the NHEJ pathway by simple ligation of the loose ends. However, should the break be messier, a short region (1 to 4 bp) around the DSB may first be resected in the 5' to 3' directions on both strands. Once the ends are blunted and therefore compatible for ligation, the NHEJ pathway fuses the two loose ends, resulting in a deletion of the resected sequence.<sup>59</sup> In rare cases, the repair process can incorporate **non-homologous exogenous DNA** (free DNA that diffuses into the active site and gets caught in the repair process).<sup>60</sup>

The **microhomology-mediated end joining (MMEJ)** pathway also performs a lossy repair on double-strand breaks.<sup>61</sup> Both strands are extensively resected until 5 to 25 bp homologies are located in each strand. These homologous regions are annealed, leading to a deletion of everything between the DSB and the located homologies. These deletions are substantially larger than those produced by NHEJ, typically from 30 to 200 bp in length.<sup>62</sup>

**Single-strand annealing (SSA)** can be employed to repair DSBs occurring between two repetitive sequences on the same strand with identical orientation.<sup>63</sup> Single strand regions are created adjacent to the breaks via resection, extending to the end of the complimentary repeat sequence until the strands can be brought together by complementarity.

The 3' overhangs are then digested as necessary, and gaps are filled in the sequence in order to restore linearity. The original sequence between the repeat copies is destroyed.

While in many genomes, **transposable elements** (DNA sequences that can move from one region of the genome to another) can contribute to indels, in the finished assembly of the *Plasmodium falciparum* 3D7 reference genome, no transposable elements were found.<sup>29,64,65</sup>

### 2.2.3 Cross-overs

Cross-overs can take place via **homologous recombination (HR)** during meiosis in the ookinete. The process follows the steps outlined above for the HDR (although in the case of HR, the DSB is not the result of DNA damage, but rather is developmentally programmed to initiate the crossover). The homology search now returns the homologous chromosome from the counterpart gamete. Strand invasion and Holliday junction generation proceeds as usual so that the counterpart strand may be synthesized. In contrast to HDR, the second 3' overhang (which was not part of the initial strand invasion) forms a second Holliday junction with the homologous chromosome. Rather than cutting the Holliday junction on the crossing strands, two sets of cuts are made (one cut per junction): first on the crossing strand, the second on the non-crossing strands. This results in the crossover product.<sup>66</sup>

While crossovers can produce new chromosomes not present in the gametes, the sequence immediately surrounding the breakpoint may not look altered. Homologous recombination necessarily occurs in regions of homology. In rare cases, the breakpoint may occur between two variants positions between the gametes and produce a crossover product that has the maternal allele on one end of the breakpoint and the paternal allele on the other. Assembly-based approaches to variation discovery may miss this event unless the two alleles now appearing on the same haplotype also appear within a kmer length of one another.

### 2.2.4 Gene conversion

Gene conversions occur in the same manner as cross-overs, with one exception: should a sequence mismatch be present between the donor and acceptor strands in the heteroduplex, the mismatch must be repaired before the Holliday junctions can be resolved. The mismatch repair process usually acts on the broken strand, using the intact strand as a template, thus effectively converting the sequence of the broken strand to that of the intact strand in order to restore perfect complementarity. The Holliday junctions are then

resolved as they are for cross-overs, yielding a short stretch of sequence that appears to have been donated by one parent amidst the haplotypic background of another.<sup>67</sup>

Once again, these events are difficult to resolve in an assembly framework unless the mismatches are sufficiently close to one another.

#### 2.2.5 Non-allelic homologous recombination (NAHR)

Occasionally, the genome-wide homology search during mitosis or meiosis may yield a template that is not an allele of the sequence being repaired. In this scenario, the recombination machinery described above for cross-over and gene conversion events may yield a non-allelic repair. This joins two disparate regions of the genome, often regions from non-homologous chromosomes, to produce a sequence absent from either parent. Such **non-allelic homologous recombination (NAHR)** events are typically mediated by homologous repetitive elements: **segmental duplications, (SDs)**, typically 10 to 300 kb in length with 95% to 97% sequence identity among them.<sup>68-71</sup> The SDs from different regions of the genome are brought together in the cross-over pathway to generate the new sequence. As it is unlikely that these regions are perfect homologs, the additional action of mismatch repair may generate some additional sequence modifications before the final sequence is synthesized.

Identification of NAHR events in assembly data is non-trivial. In a perfect assembly, one should be able to observe repeated template switching of the child's haplotype to the maternal and paternal haplotypes, and additionally detect that the templates do not belong to the same locus. However, as NAHR events are mediated by homology, the assembly must be able to overcome the resultant loops in the graph without ambiguity in order to complete the traversal. This is unlikely to be achieved every time (if ever). Thus, in second-generation sequencing data, one expects an NAHR event to manifest as multiple pieces.

The *P. falciparum* genome is 80% AT, highly repetitive, and contains a number of highly conserved SDs in subtelomeric regions of several chromosomes.<sup>72</sup> Notably, the subtelomeric regions of nearly all of *P. falciparum*'s 14 chromosomes (excluding the mitochondria and apicoplast) house several members of the antigenic gene families, *var*, *rifin*, and *stevor*. As mitotic diversification of the *var* genes has been observed many times, NAHR is thought to be a critical capability of a pathogen that must continuously evade immune pressure to survive.

## 2.3 Known rates

Little work has been done on *de novo* mutation rates in *P. falciparum*. Two studies are known to exist: both using clone trees of selected parasites.

Bopp *et al.* investigated parasite genome changes over time by generating new cell lines from the 3D7 parasite and DD2 parasites. The authors reported detection of 167 SNVs in 25 clones total (6.68 SNVs per sample on average) and 59 structural variants (insertions and deletions). Bopp *et al.* estimate the SNV rate to be  $1.7 - 3.2 \times 10^{-9}$  mutations per base per generation (absent clones exposed to anti-malarial drugs), and  $9.5 \times 10^{-6}$  structural variations per base per generation.<sup>73</sup> SNVs were relatively confined to the so-called **core** of the genome (excluding subtelomeric, pericentromeric, and interspersed hypervariable regions), while structural variants were found predominantly in subtelomeric regions housing antigenic genes.

Claessens *et al.* find similar numbers in their clone tree work. Having produced and whole-genome sequenced 37, 56, and 81 subclones from the 3D7, DD2, and HB3 (respectively), the authors find SNV mutation rates of 4.07, 3.63, and  $3.78 \times 10^{-10}$  mutations per base per generation.<sup>33</sup> While this may seem considerably different than the Bopp *et al.* estimate, the Bopp estimates adjusted their raw data to account for non-synonymous deleterious mutations that may have been eliminated by purifying selection prior to identification. Adjusting the Claessens *et al.* estimates using the Bopp methodology, the rates become 4.28, 3.82, and  $3.98 \times 10^{-9}$ , in line with the Bopp estimates. Claessens *et al.* note that they observed "back-to-back" mutations (what we refer to in this dissertation as *multi-nucleotide polymorphisms, MNPs*). In their rate calculations, they considered these as two adjacent SNPs, but note that this assumption may be unwarranted.

In examining NAHR, Claessens *et al.* isolated their analysis to exon 1 of *var* genes in 3D7, DD2, and HB3. This is the longer exon of the two that comprise *var* genes, and encodes the region of the PfEMP1 protein that is immunologically exposed. The authors report a ratio of exon 1 recombinations per SNP to be 0.27, 0.35, and 0 for 3D7, DD2, and HB3, respectively. HB3 is notable in that it appears to exhibit no NAHR events whatsoever.

## 2.4 Biases

In humans and chimpanzees, it has been shown that the *de novo* mutation rate in the children is largely driven by the age of the father at conception.<sup>22,74</sup> From five months prior to birth to birth itself, female primordial germ cells undergo a mere 22 mitotic divisions, and 2 meiotic divisions during sexual maturity<sup>75</sup> to produce mature female

gametes (ova). In contrast, male sperm stem cells undergo a division every 16 days in addition to subsequent mitotic divisions of the gonial cells (4) and meiotic divisions of the meiotic cells (2). The sperm cells thus have vastly more opportunities to accumulate errors than ova. A number of disorders (e.g. Apert syndrome, achondroplasia, thanatophoric dysplasia, Costello syndrome, etc.) have been associated to *de novo* mutation.<sup>76–78</sup>

In *P. falciparum*, no information regarding a parental age effect is available. The experiment would be exceedingly difficult to perform in principle as we'd have to ensure that one parasite only contributed male gametocytes and the other only contributed female gametocytes. In our crosses, the "gender" of the parents may change from one progeny to the next; no data is available for the gender of the gametocytes that have contributed their genetic material to the resulting progeny.

## 3 *Simulation*

*De novo* MUTATIONS WILL UNDOUBTEDLY TAKE MYRIAD FORMS (SNPs, insertions and deletions of varying length, expansions and contractions of short tandem repeats, tandem duplications, non-allelic homologous recombinations, and possibly even inversions). Detecting all types of variants is a considerable challenge, and the software to do so will be introduced in the next chapter. In order to measure that software's expected sensitivity and specificity to such variation, we require truth datasets to which we can compare our calls. A sufficiently small genome (on the order of tens of megabases), could be run on third-generation sequencers, the long reads used to assemble full-length genomes. Then, the variants called from short-read second-generation sequencing data could be compared to the "truth" dataset established by the newer platform. However, this is still very expensive (thousands of dollars for each sample), which limits the number of samples that could be feasibly obtained. Furthermore, if variants of the classes we are attempting to identify are absent in the handful of genomes we can afford to sequence, we would not be able to accurately ascertain our power.

We chose instead to pursue a simulation strategy in order to measure our DNM calling performance<sup>1</sup>. There are two components to these simulations: first we must generate the genomes of the parents and several children, including each type of DNM we hope to discover. From these genomes, we must then simulate reads that realistically model errors inherent in our data (matching read lengths, fragment size distributions, single base mismatch errors, indel errors, read pair chimeras, coverage profile, etc.). We discuss both of these components below.

### 3.1 *Simulating genomes*

Simulating a genome merely involves generating an artificial reference sequence in FASTA format. Our framework is a simple forward simulation of samples. We first generate the

---

<sup>1</sup>Several months after the simulation framework was completed, we obtained PacBio sequencing data on the parents of the 803xGB4 cross and three randomly selected progeny. These results will be discussed in a later chapter.

genomes of the parents. To generate a child’s initial genome, we perform recombination *in silico*. We then add *de novo* mutations on this substrate, thus producing the child’s final genome.

We make use of the Variant Call Format (VCF),<sup>79</sup> a text file that encodes one variant per line, specifying the genomic locus, reference and alternate alleles, and metadata for the variant, to describe differences between the two parents and the DNMs to incorporate into the child’s genome. While the `FastaAlternateReferenceMaker` module in the GATK does purport to generate a new reference sequence based on variants in a VCF, we note that at the time of this writing, it silently fails to incorporate multinucleotide polymorphisms (MNPs) (simultaneous deletion and insertion). We generate many of these events to remove a reference allele and add an alternate allele in its place (e.g. inversions or gene repertoire replacements). To include this critical functionality, we developed our own tool to permute an existing reference sequence based on a single-sample VCF file.

Our algorithm, `IncorporateVariantsIntoGenome`, is described in Algorithm 2. Briefly, the sequence of each chromosome is loaded into an array, one nucleotide per array element. We then iterate over each record in the VCF file. For each SNP or insertion, we replace the reference nucleotide at that position with the entire alternate allele (for insertions, more than a single nucleotide). For deletions, we replace each corresponding array elements with empty strings. To generate the new genome, we iterate through each element of the array, emitting the string found in each position.

Note that we chose not to process each variant iteratively as insertions (deletions) would increase (decrease) the size of the array, altering the mapping between the VCF positions and the array positions. Keeping track of the mapping in spite of the changes is cumbersome. Instead, our scheme of placing all of the variants on the chromosome array first and then emitting the resulting sequence preserves the mapping. We will revisit this strategy later on in this chapter when we introduce an algorithm to lift data over from the reference genome coordinates to a simulated genome’s coordinates.

Algorithm 2 could fail to produce a correct FASTA file in the pathological case that there are multiple overlapping variants called at a single locus. We are careful to avoid that scenario; we set our simulated variants to be placed no closer than 1000 bp from one another.

Many algorithms presented in this chapter rely on empirical distributions to model cross-over rates, read fragment size, indel lengths, and positional errors in reads. In all cases, we use the inverse transform sampling method for pseudo-random number generation from an arbitrary probability distribution given its cumulative distribution function

---

**Algorithm 2** Generate an alternative reference sequence based on a VCF file.

---

```
1: function INCORPORATEVARIANTSINTOGENOME(ref, vcf)
2:   for all chr in ref do
3:     vcs  $\leftarrow$  vcf.getVariants(chr)
4:     for all vc in vcs do
5:       if vc.getType() == DEL || vc.getType() == MNP then
6:         for pos in vc.getPosition() : (vc.getPosition() + vc.getReferenceAllele().length()) do
7:           chr[pos] = ""
8:           chr[vc.getPosition()] = vc.getAlternateAllele()
9:   write(chr)
```

---

**Table 3.1:** Assembly statistics on publicly available finished and draft *P. falciparum* references, ordered by scaffold N<sub>50</sub> length. Parental samples are shown in boldface.

Isolate	Origin	Length (Mb)	Scaffolds	Scaffolds N <sub>50</sub> (Kb)	%Q <sub>40</sub>
<b>3D7</b>	<b>Unknown</b>	<b>23.30</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>1,690.00</b>	-
<b>HB3</b>	<b>Honduras</b>	<b>24.26</b>	<b>1,189</b>	<b>96.47</b>	<b>93.17</b>
IGH-CR14	India	21.74	849	37.02	95.49
<b>DD2</b>	<b>Indochina/Laos</b>	<b>20.88</b>	<b>2,837</b>	<b>19.11</b>	<b>85.66</b>
RAJ116	India	14.11	1,199	13.00	89.68
VS/1	Vietnam	18.89	5,856	4.42	74.79
<b>7G8</b>	<b>Brazil</b>	<b>14.28</b>	<b>4,843</b>	<b>3.87</b>	<b>71.00</b>
Senegal_V34.04	Senegal	13.24	4,329	3.76	76.22
D10	PNG	13.38	4,471	3.71	71.80
RO-33	Ghana	13.71	4,991	3.47	69.91
K1	Thailand	13.29	4,772	3.42	73.30
FCC-2/Hainan	China	12.96	4,956	3.30	69.39
D6	Sierra Leone	13.22	5,011	3.23	71.62
SL	El Salvador	13.19	5,193	3.08	69.41
PFCLIN	Ghana	42.19	18,711	2.99	-

---

(CDF).<sup>80</sup> Simply put, we compute the CDF for an empirical probability distribution, generate a random uniform deviate between 0 and 1 for the  $x$  value, and interpolate the  $y$  value from the CDF.

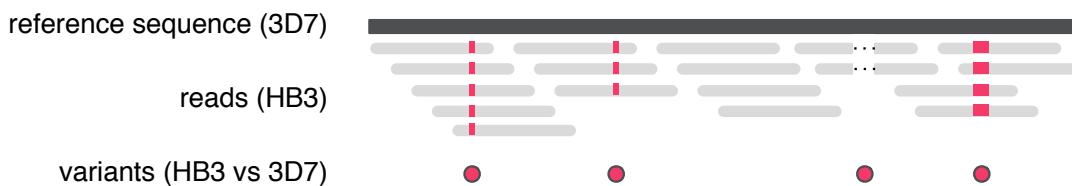
### 3.1.1 Parents

We began by simulating the genomes of two parents using a workflow depicted in Figure 3.1. For convenience, we simulated samples from the 3D7xHB3 cross. Choosing the existing reference sequence for the 3D7 sample obviates the need to generate any data for the first parent. The second parent is trickier; while an existing draft reference sequences does exist for HB3, it is of low quality, assembled into thousands of pieces rather than

the simple 14 autosomes we expect (Table 3.1 shows metrics on every *P. falciparum* sample publicly available). Using the supercontigs from draft reference sequences is hugely cumbersome for simulating recombination as it is not straightforward to decide which chromosomes in the 3D7 genome and which supercontigs should be processed together.

Instead, we chose to produce a new HB3 reference genome sequence by taking the 3D7 reference and inserting the appropriate modifications using Algorithm 2. These modifications are comprised of two parts: introducing the appropriate variants, and replacing the *var* gene repertoire.

#### a. Call variants in one parent (HB3) against the other (3D7)



#### b. Delete 3D7 *var* genes, insert compatible HB3 counterparts in their place



#### c. Replace reference alleles in 3D7 with variant alleles



**Figure 3.1:** Workflow for generating the HB3 parental genome. a. Reads from HB3 sample, PGoo52-C, are mapped to the 3D7 reference genome, and variants (SNPs and indels) are called and stored as a VCF file. b. We remove the 3D7 *var* gene repertoire, replacing each with a reasonable HB3 *var* counterpart, and encode the changes to the 3D7 reference genome as a VCF file. c. We alter the reference genome using Algorithm 2, thus producing the simulated HB3 genome.

We first obtained a VCF of variants found in the HB3 sample, PGoo52-C, from the MalariaGen 3D7xHB3 cross dataset.<sup>81</sup> Variant counts are described in the Table 3.2, and include SNPs, insertions, deletions, and complex (simultaneous insertions and deletions) events. These calls were made by combining the results of the reference-based UnifiedGenotyper module in the GATK<sup>25</sup> and the reference-free bubble-calling algorithm in the Cortex<sup>28</sup> software. All calls were restricted to the core genome; subtelomeric regions

**Table 3.2:** Variants found the HB3 (PGoo52-C) sample from the MalariaGen 3D7xHB3 dataset.

variants	SNPs	insertions	deletions	complex
42,054	15,376	11,807	14,643	228

were masked out due to poor mapping properties (owing to the tremendous diversity in these regions of other *P. falciparum* parasites with respect to the 3D7 reference).

Next, we produced a VCF describing *var* gene replacements. The sequences for HB3 *var* genes and upstream promoter metadata were obtained from the VarDom server.<sup>82</sup> No positional information from this data source is available, thus the exact placement of these *var* genes in a chromosomal context is unclear. However, previous work has established a strong association between conserved sequences of upstream promoters (phylogenetically grouped into five classes: A through E) and placement in the genome.<sup>83</sup> We therefore replaced 3D7 *var* genes with HB3 *var* gene counterparts, taking care to replace genes with similar UPS classes whenever possible, and grouping genes with suspiciously incomplete metadata otherwise. The replacements were described in the resulting VCF as simultaneous deletions of the 3D7 allele and insertions of the HB3 allele. No effort was made to match the orientation of the replacement *var* gene with the replaced *var* gene. The precise replacements are summarized in Table 3.3.

These two VCFs were combined to produce a complete set of changes required to transform the 3D7 genome into a pseudo HB3 genome. The transformation was applied using Algorithm 2.

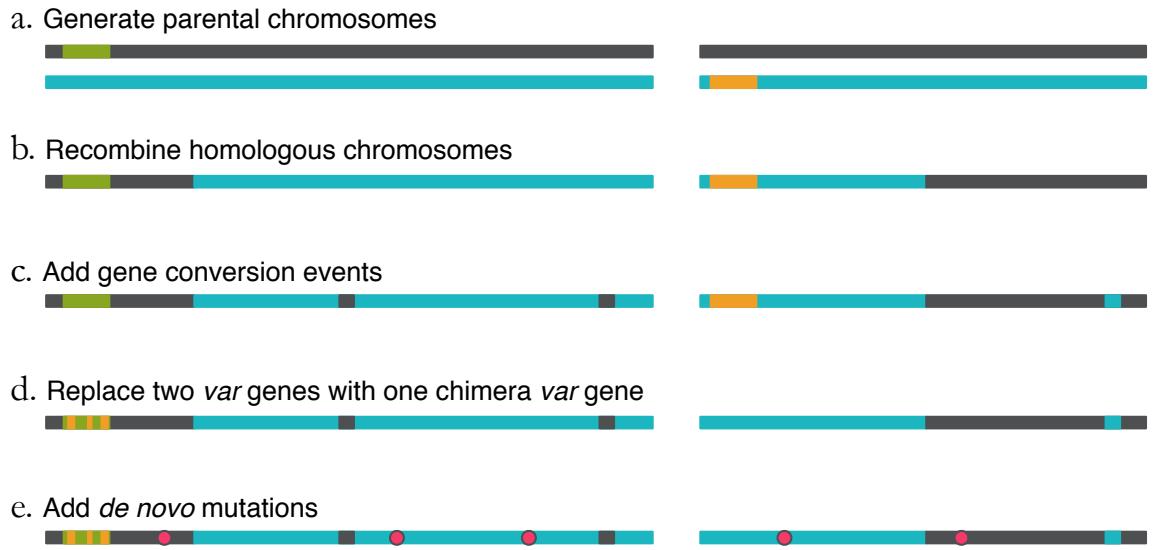
### 3.2 Children

Generating the genomes of the children is slightly more involved, as there is much more biology to simulate, and many more considerations to be made when placing variants. We generated VCF descriptions of the children using a multi-stage workflow shown in Figure 3.2. In order, we simulate:

1. homologous recombination between 3D7 and HB3 genomes
2. gene conversion events
3. NAHR events between compatible *var* genes
4. *de novo* SNPs, insertions, deletions, and inversions

**Table 3.3:** *Var* gene replacements from 3D7 to HB3 repertoire.

3D7 gene	3D7 ups class	HB3 gene	HB3 ups class
PF3D7_0421100	UPSB5	PFHG_02500	UNKNOWN
PF3D7_0600200	UPSB2	PFHG_02495	UNKNOWN
PF3D7_0632500	UPSB5	PFHG_05132	UNKNOWN
PF3D7_0800300	UPSB2	PFHG_04012	ND
PF3D7_1200400	UPSB5	PFHG_05200	ND
PF3D7_1240900	U	PFHG_05483	ND
PF3D7_0400400	UPSA1	PFHG_03840	UPSA1
PF3D7_0425800	UPSA1	PFHG_03671	UPSA1
PF3D7_1100200	UPSA1	PFHG_04861	UPSA1
PF3D7_1150400	UPSA1	PFHG_05052	UPSA1
PF3D7_1300300	UPSA1	PFHG_03234	UPSA1
PF3D7_0533100	UPSA2	PFHG_03521	UPSA2*
PF3D7_0100300	UPSA3	PFHG_02274	UPSA3
PF3D7_0100100	UPSB1	PFHG_04081	UPSB1
PF3D7_0115700	UPSB1	PFHG_04749	UPSB1
PF3D7_0200100	UPSB1	PFHG_03516	UPSB1
PF3D7_0223500	UPSB1	PFHG_04277	UPSB1
PF3D7_0300100	UPSB1	PFHG_03717	UPSB1
PF3D7_0324900	UPSB1	PFHG_04035	UPSB1
PF3D7_0400100	UPSB1	PFHG_04491	UPSB1
PF3D7_0426000	UPSB1	PFHG_04620	UPSB1
PF3D7_0500100	UPSB1	PFHG_04593	UPSB1
PF3D7_0632800	UPSB1	PFHG_04770	UPSB1
PF3D7_0700100	UPSB1	PFHG_04057	UPSB1
PF3D7_0712300	UPSB1	PFHG_03232	UPSB1
PF3D7_0733000	UPSB1	PFHG_04928	UPSB1
PF3D7_0800100	UPSB1	PFHG_03416	UPSB1
PF3D7_0413100	UPSB3	PFHG_03476	UPSB3*
PF3D7_0712400	UPSB3	PFHG_02421	UPSB3
PF3D7_1240300	UPSB4	PFHG_02272	UPSB4
PF3D7_0809100	UPSB6	PFHG_02276	UPSB6
PF3D7_0712800	UPSB7	PFHG_04014	UPSB7
PF3D7_0808700	UPSB7	PFHG_02425	UPSB7
PF3D7_1240400	UPSB7	PFHG_04769	UPSB7
PF3D7_0412400	UPSC1	PFHG_03480	UPSC1
PF3D7_0412700	UPSC1	PFHG_03478	UPSC1
PF3D7_0412900	UPSC1	PFHG_00592	UPSC1
PF3D7_0420700	UPSC1	PFHG_02419	UPSC1
PF3D7_0420900	UPSC1	PFHG_02429	UPSC1
PF3D7_0421300	UPSC1	PFHG_02277	UPSC1
PF3D7_0617400	UPSC1	PFHG_02273	UPSC1
PF3D7_0712900	UPSC2	PFHG_04015	UPSC2
PF3D7_1200600	UPSE	PFHG_05046	UPSE



**Figure 3.2:** Workflow for generating children’s genomes. a. Generate chromosomes from the parental genomes (compatible *var* genes shown in green and orange). b. Recombine homologous chromosomes. c. Add gene conversion events (by incorporating variants from the alternative haplotypic background over a limited genomic window). d. Replace one of the *var* genes with a chimera of compatible genes. e. Add *de novo* mutations.

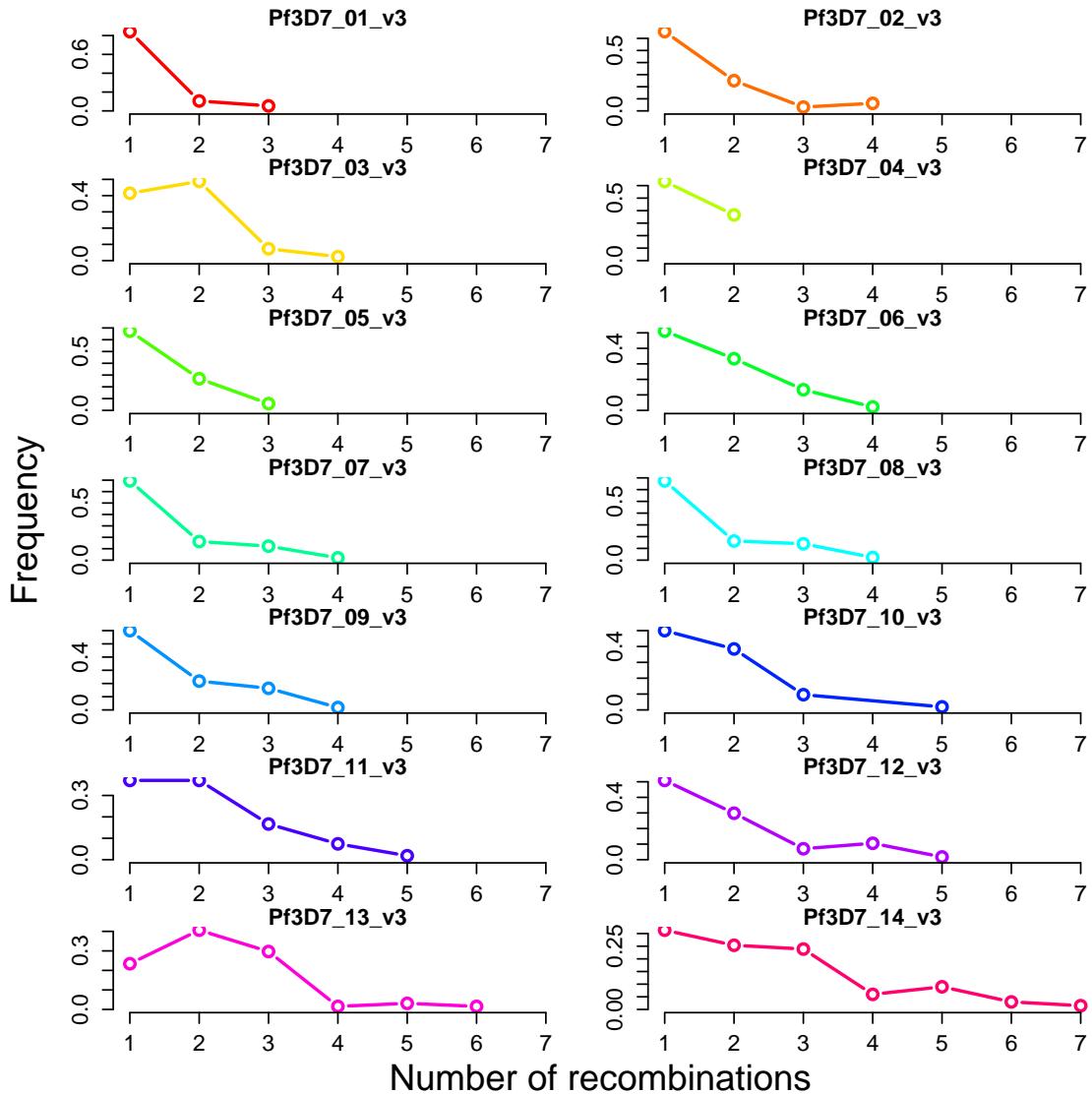
### 3.2.1 Homologous recombination

#### 3.2.1.1 Allelic homologous recombination

For each bivalent chromosome, the cross-over rate will be dependent on the length of the chromosome. The empirical distributions for bivalent formation and crossover were generated from the 75 samples in the MalariaGen crosses data. For each sample, only half of the chromosomes are expected to exhibit cross-over events. The cross-over rates are plotted in Figure 3.3. We simulated recombination in a sample by first drawing a binary number indicating whether a chromosome should be recombined, and if so, drawing the number of cross-over events per chromosome from these empirical distributions. The recombination sites themselves were chosen by drawing a uniform random variate between 1 and the length of the chromosome. Although there are certainly hotspots and coldspots of recombination in the genome, we have ignored this complication. An example haplotype mosaic of chromosome 12 for five samples is shown in Figure 3.4.

#### 3.2.1.2 Gene conversion

To simulate gene conversion events, we first chose a handful of random sites known to be variant in HB<sub>3</sub>, and determined the size of the event (number of adjacent HB<sub>3</sub> variants involved in the gene conversion) by choosing a random uniform variate between 1 and 3.

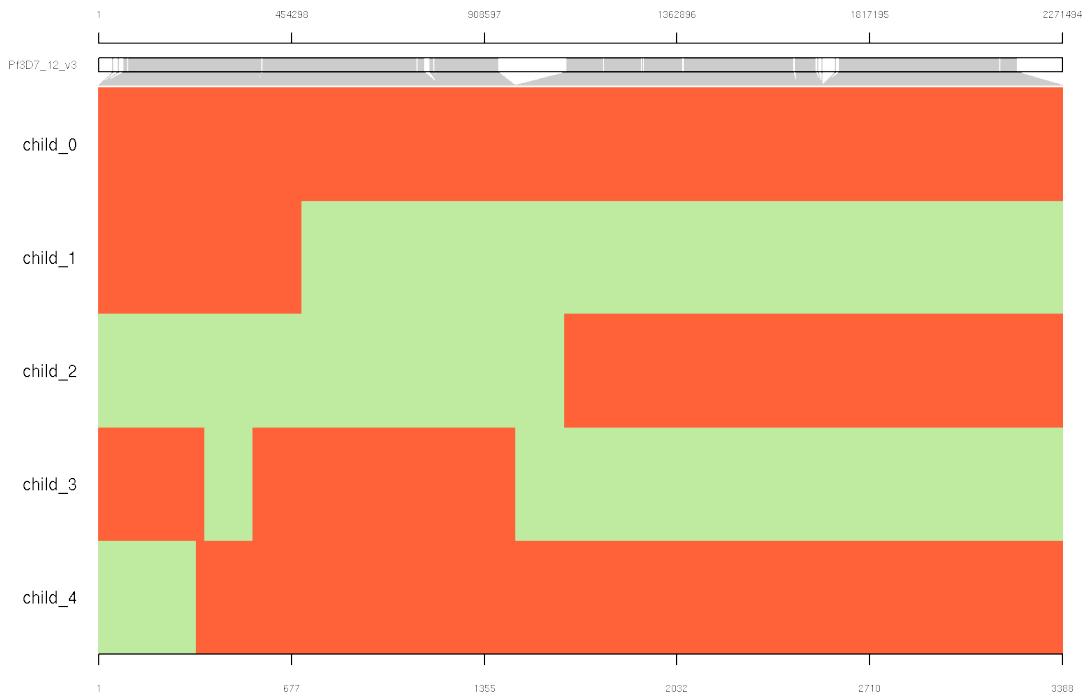


**Figure 3.3:** Empirical recombination frequencies per chromosome

If these sites were originally transmitted to the child, they were removed from the VCF. If they had not been transmitted, they were added. The homologous recombinations and gene conversion events are displayed below for each chromosome and sample.

#### 3.2.1.3 Non-allelic homologous recombination

NAHR events were generated by first finding compatible recombination partners. This list was generated by determining which  $\beta$ D7 *var* genes had been transmitted to the child, grouped by upstream promoter class and telomeric positioning (5' or 3'). In each group, two random genes were chosen. If necessary, the gene sequences were reverse complemented to have matching orientation (note that the sequences may not have the same



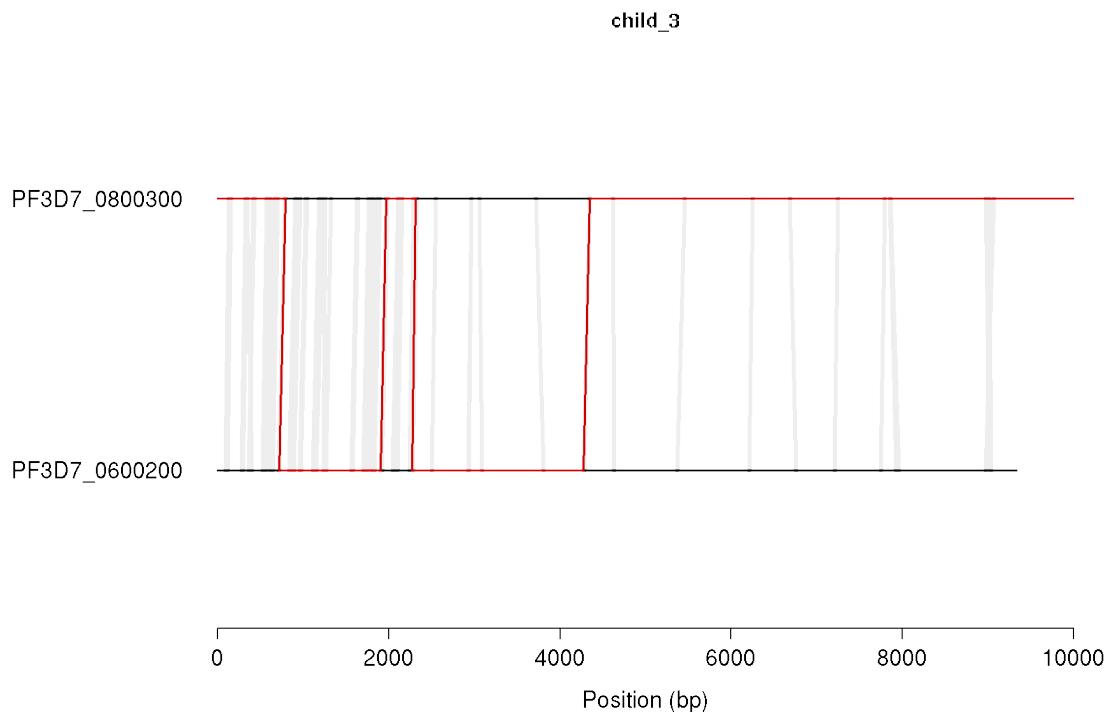
**Figure 3.4:** Simulated haplotype mosaics for chromosome 12. Genomic position is shown at the top of the figure, while variant number is shown at the bottom. Each variant is depicted as a vertical grey line attached to the mosaic plot at the appropriate location. In the mosaic, every variant is color-coded by parent of origin.

orientation in the simulated genomes themselves). As NAHR events between two *var* genes appear to occur in regions of homology, we identified shared 9-mers, positioned between 20 bp and 100 bp between the two genes, to act as possible recombination sites. We randomly selected between 2 and 5 of these positions to act as recombination breakpoints, switching between the sequences and copied sequence data accordingly. Keeping in mind that our previous work has shown that the recombined *var* genes are lost in order to produce the chimera, we added VCF records to delete the previous *var* alleles from the child's genome and replace one of them with the recombined sequence.

### 3.2.2 SNPs, insertions, and deletions

With the ground state genome now generated, we further generated simple events - SNPs, insertions, and deletions - on this foundation to complete the production of the child's genome. The precise number of events can be specified by the user at runtime, and for each simulated genome, different counts were specified.

To simulate *de novo* SNPs, we added sites with random (non-reference) alleles at random positions throughout the genome. We also simulated insertion, deletion, and inver-



**Figure 3.5:** Non-allelic recombinations for two compatible *var* genes.

- a. parental haplotype ATAAATATTACTCGTCGTTGTATACTGCAGT
- b. SNP ATAAATATTACTCGTC**ATCGTTGTATACTGCAGT**
- c. insertion ATAAATATTACTCGTC**TCA**TCATCGTTGTATACTGCAGT
- d. deletion ATAAATATTACTCGTCGTTGTATACTGCAGT
- e. inversion ATAAATATTACTCGTC**CGAG**TTGTATACTGCAGT
- f. STR expansion ATAAATATTACTCGTCGTC**GT**TGTGTATACTGCAGT
- 
- g. STR contraction ATAAATATTACTCGTC**GG**TTGTATACTGCAGT
- 
- h. tandem duplication ATAAATATTACTCGTCGTC**GTTG**CGTCGTTGTATACTGCAGT

**Figure 3.6:** Simulated variant types. a. Original, parental haplotypic background upon which variants will be placed. b. A single nucleotide polymorphism. c. An insertion of two nucleotides. d. A deletion of three nucleotides. e. An inversion of four nucleotides. f. Expansion of a 3 bp short tandem repeat (STR) by one unit. g. A contraction of an STR by one unit. h. A tandem duplication of 11 nucleotides.

sion events at every length between 1 and 100 bp. For insertions, random alleles were generated and tested to ensure they did not match the allele already in the reference sequence. For deletions, we simply replaced the reference allele with a truncated allele of the prescribed length. For inversions, we replace the reference allele with its complement.

### *3.2.2.1 Expansion and contraction of short tandem repeats (STRs)*

As a special case of indels, we sought specifically to simulate the expansion and contraction of short tandem repeats (STRs), depicted in Figure 3.6f-g. STRs are constrained to occur at loci where there are already existing repeats, and expansions (contractions) should manifest as the insertion (deletion) of whole units at a time. We first built a map of repeated 2-bp, 3-bp, 4-bp, and 5-bp sequences in the 3D7 genome. We filtered these lists, retaining only STRs where the repeated unit occurred at least three times. For each simulated event, we randomly chose a position from the appropriate list and select a number of units to add or remove. The number of units is constrained to be less than the length of the number of repeat units of the existing STR. With these considerations, we simulated expansions and contractions at the aforementioned repeat unit sizes.

### *3.2.2.2 Tandem duplications*

For tandem duplications (as depicted in Figure 3.6h) of length  $l$ , we chose positions in the genome at random, copied the next  $l$  bases, and inserted an identical copy at the same locus. Events at each length between 10 bp and 50 bp were produced.

## *3.3 Simulating reads*

We now turn our attention to simulating second-generation sequencing reads given an underlying genome. There are existing tools that will simulate perfect reads and uniform coverage, which will be important for initial tests of our variant identification software. However, the crucial simulation is of imperfect reads with non-uniform coverage. Without this, any estimate of our sensitivity and specificity is unlikely to be predictive of performance in real data.

There are many tools that can simulate imperfect reads from a given sequence. Almost every solution involves user-specified parameters controlling the properties of the sequencing data. For instance, a tool may model fragment size as a normal distribution, requiring the user to specify the requisite shape parameters. It may also permit the user to specify a desired mismatch rate to simulate the presence of sequencing error. Some tools have presets that automatically set parameters to those consistent with average behavior for various sequencing platforms.

The problem with all of these tools is an over-reliance on assumed parameters of real data. Should a fragment size distribution for real data deviate from the typical normal distribution, this will not be captured in the simulated dataset. Mismatch and indel errors do not happen at any position in the read with equal probability, but rather are biased

towards later cycles and certain sequence contexts. Read coverage is not simply Poisson-distributed, but varies across the length of the genome depending on GC bias, secondary structure, even the particular sequencing chemistry used. There are currently no tools that are capable of capturing such nuance.

Instead, we chose to learn empirical distributions of major sequencing properties using an exemplar dataset and sample from those distributions directly in order to generate reads. This frees us from having to make any assumptions about our dataset, easily generalizes to any dataset regardless of when, where, or how it was sequenced. It's also vastly more realistic than other approaches.

Our approach is detailed below. Briefly, it consists of three components:

1. A "coverage profile": a description of where every fragment and read in the genome should fall and which should contain errors.
2. A "read profile": a description of where to place errors within a read, including mismatches, insertions, and deletions.
3. The read simulator: samples from the profiles to generate reads in the new reference sequence.

### 3.3.1 Constructing the coverage profile

Construction of a coverage profile consists of two sub-problems: providing a complete description of where reads fall on the existing reference sequence, and transferring that information sensibly to the modified reference sequence. This is depicted in Figure 3.7. We address each of these needs with custom tools.



**Figure 3.7:** Construction of the coverage profile for the reference genome and liftover to the altered genome. Each read start (and fragment start, not shown) is stored along with a count of the number of reads at that location that contain errors. This information is then lifted over to the simulated sequence, and gaps in the table are filled in with neighboring values.

### 3.3.1.1 Computing read and fragment starts, and error rates

We developed a tool, `ComputeBaseAndFragmentErrorRates`, which provides a precise specification for the number of fragments and reads found starting at every position in the canonical reference genome, as well as an accounting as to which reads and fragments contained any kind of error (mismatch or indels). Briefly, we iterate over every chromosome in the reference genome, advancing through every aligned read stored in an exemplar sample’s coordinate-sorted BAM file. We instantiate a chromosome-length array indicating the number of reads that start at a given position and the number of reads that contain apparent errors (any discrepancy from the reference sequence).

We must also store information about read fragment starts and error rates, which requires us to keep track of read pairs as we traverse the BAM file. To do so, we hash the read name to the first instance of the read we see along the length of a chromosome. As paired-end reads have the same name, the second time we see the same read name, we will have found the second end of the pair. We then increment the count at the chromosome array position that corresponds to the 5'-most end of the pair, and increment the fragment errors array based on errors in either end of the pair.

This algorithm is described in Algorithm 3.

### 3.3.1.2 Lifting read profile over from reference to simulated genome

The genomic coordinates present in the table produced by Algorithm 3 must be transformed from the reference sequence to the simulated genome before it can be used. To do so, we developed a tool that could liftover the coordinates appropriately when given the table, reference sequence, and a VCF file describing the alterations made to the reference to transform it into the simulated genome. This is accomplished with an algorithm similar to Algorithm 2. We iterate through each chromosome as we did before, storing the entire sequence as an array of strings, placing alternate alleles in the place of reference alleles, or in the case of deletions, replacing reference alleles with blank strings. Once the array is populated, we advance through the coverage table one position at a time. At each position, we emit the contents of the previously constructed table with the number of reads, fragments, and errors for each. At some positions, insertions will have changed the length of the sequence in the bin, and the extra positions will not have explicit read and fragment information to emit. To account for this, we keep running statistics on previously seen read and fragment statistics from which we can compute running means and standard deviation. We generate new values for the number of reads, fragments, and error rates as necessary as the mean plus standard deviation of the relevant metric, ensuring the values are never less than 0, and that we round up or down to the nearest integer

---

**Algorithm 3** Emit all fragment starts, read starts, and error rates per position.

---

```
1: function COMPUTEBASEANDFRAGMENTERRORRATES(BAM)
2:   for all chr in chrs do
3:     nReadsErrors  $\leftarrow$  []
4:     nReads  $\leftarrow$  []
5:     nFragmentsErrors  $\leftarrow$  []
6:     nFragments  $\leftarrow$  []
7:     seenReads  $\leftarrow$  []
8:     reads  $\leftarrow$  BAM.getAllReads(chr)
9:     for all read in reads do
10:      readErrorPositions  $\leftarrow$  getPositionsErrors(read)
11:      refErrorPositions  $\leftarrow$  convertReadPositionsToReferencePositions(readErrorPositions)
12:      for all refErrorPosition in refErrorPositions do
13:        nReadsErrors[refErrorPosition]  $\leftarrow$  nReadsErrors[refErrorPosition] + +
14:        for readPosition in 0 : read.length() do
15:          nReads[convertReadPositionsToReferencePositions(readPosition)]  $\leftarrow$  nReads[convertReadPositionsToReferencePositions(readPosition)] + +
16:          if !seenReads.contains(read.getName()) then
17:            seenReads  $\leftarrow$  read.getName()
18:          else
19:            mateErrorPositions  $\leftarrow$  getPositionsErrors(seenReads[read.getName()])
20:            if then readErrorPositions.size() + mateErrorPositions.size()  $\geq$  1
21:              nFragmentsErrors[seenReads[read.getName()].getAlignmentStart()]  $\leftarrow$  nFragmentsErrors[seenReads[read.getName()].getAlignmentStart()] + +
22:              nFragments[seenReads[read.getName()]]  $\leftarrow$  nFragments[seenReads[read.getName()]] + +
23:            for pos in 0 : nReads.length() do
24:              print chr, pos, nReadsErrors[pos], nReads[pos], nFragmentsErrors[pos], nFragments[pos]
```

---

(error rates are rounded up and read/fragment counts are rounded down to increase our self-penalty).

This algorithm is described in 4.

---

**Algorithm 4** Lift a table from reference to child coordinates.

---

```

1: function LIFTOVERFROMREFToCHILD(ref, vcf, table)
2:   for all chr in ref do
3:     newchr = IncorporateVariantsIntoGenome(ref, vcf)
4:     for i in 0 : newchr.length() do
5:       emit(table[i])
6:       if newchr[i].length() > 1 then
7:         for j in 1 : newchr[i].length() do
8:           emit(extrapolate(table[i]))

```

---

### 3.3.2 Constructing the read profile

Next, we generate the read profile, describing the various properties of fragments and read. As in previous examples, we iterate over each read in the exemplar sample’s BAM file, storing relevant information in tabular form.

#### 3.3.2.1 Scalar properties

We first store the following scalar information (as the data we are modelling is assumed to be Illumina data generated from a single library, some properties which could otherwise be stored as distributions are instead treated as a single number that will be simple constants in our simulation):

1. read length
2. number of reads
3. number of reads with errors
4. number of read pairs
5. number of chimeric pairs (each end aligned to different chromosomes)
6. number of mismatches
7. number of insertions
8. number of deletions

**Table 3.4:** Example read and fragment scalar properties for sample PGoo63-C.

	PGoo51-C
readLength	76
numReads	38,846,418
numReadsWithErrors	3,696,708
numPairs	19,473,634
numChimericPairs	348,294
numMismatches	6,525,504
numInsertions	139,941
numDeletions	317,076

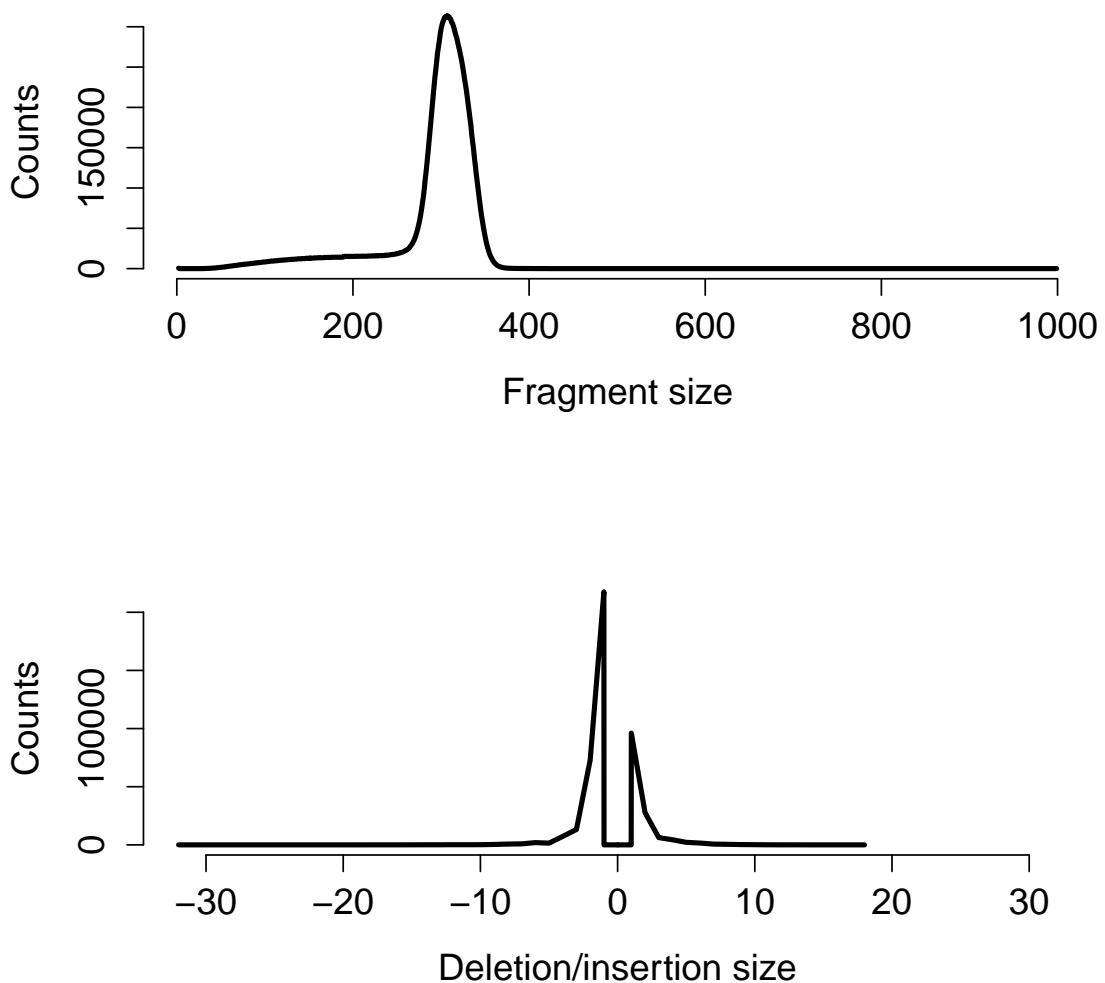
Example values for each of these metrics can be found in Table 3.4. Note that some of the mismatches, insertions, and deletions may represent true variation between the sample and the reference sequence. We do not mask these sites out. While this increases the apparent error rate, the variant rates are typically low compared to the number of bases in the reference sequence itself, making the difference negligible. Furthermore, we will choose the reference sample as the exemplar dataset for the read simulations. Since this sample should theoretically be identical to the reference sequence, this choice obviates the need for any masking of variants in the reference sample against the reference sequence.

### 3.3.2.2 Empirical distributions

Other properties take on a range of values with some probability. Rather than trying to fit the underlying distributions explicitly (which can often fail as datasets contain more nuance than what sequencing platforms should theoretically produce), we instead store empirical distributions and generate random values from them accordingly. We store the following empirical distributions:

1. number of errors (of any type - mismatch, insertion, or deletion) in a read
2. fragment size
3. insertion size
4. deletion size

Note that these distributions are not conditioned on position in the read. Example distributions derived from an exemplar sample are shown in Figure 3.8.



**Figure 3.8:** Top: empirical fragment size distribution for PG0051-C. Bottom: empirical deletion (negative values) and insertion (positive values) length distribution for the same sample.

### 3.3.2.3 Covariate table

Finally, we construct the covariate table: a set of empirical distributions for various error events conditioned on the following:

1. type (SNP, insertion, deletion)
2. end of pair (first end or second end)
3. strand (positive or negative)

4. 5' dinucleotide context
5. position in read
6. first base of error sequence (empty for deletions)

For each read, we increment an element in a table that corresponds to these six covariates. The code to do so is contained in our `GenerateReadSimProfile` module.

### *3.3.3 The read simulator*

With the coverage and read profiles in hand, we are finally ready to simulate reads. We advance through each base of the simulated genome, reading the coverage profile as we traverse. At each site, we use the coverage profile to dictate the number of fragments that must be generated and how many of those fragments should contain errors, thus modelling regions of the genome with higher or lower error rates. We then generate fragments, sampling fragment lengths from the empirical fragment length distribution. If a read is to contain an error, as specified by the coverage profile, we construct a read-specific error profile for mismatches, insertions, and deletions. These profiles take into account the preceding dinucleotide context for each position in the read<sup>2</sup>, the end of the pair being simulated, whether the fragment came from the positive or negative strand, and the first nucleotide of the error to be incorporated (not applicable for deletions).

## *3.4 The simulated dataset*

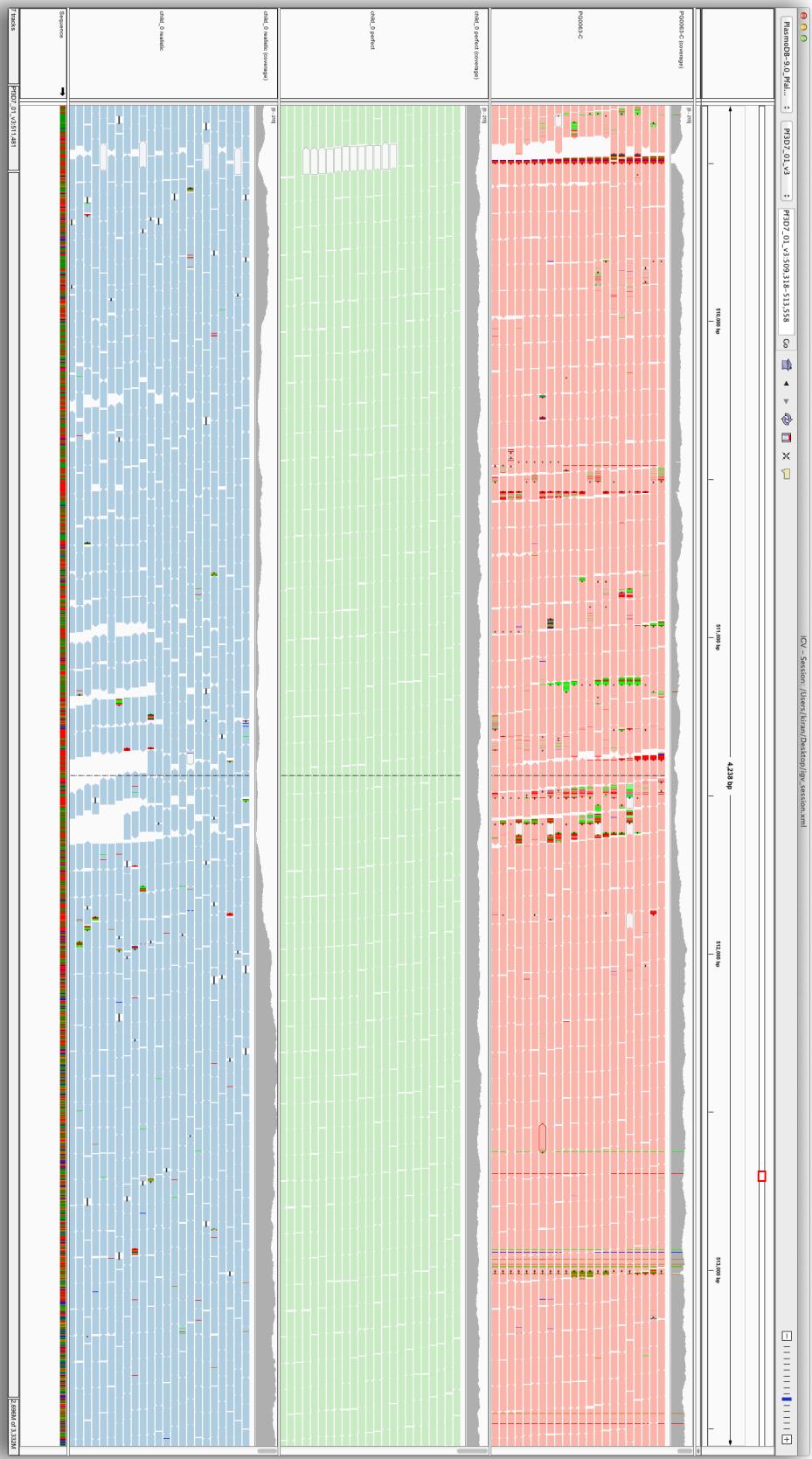
With our genome and read simulation framework now complete, we simulated the genomes of 20 progeny from a pseudo 3D7xHB3 cross. The precise counts of variant types per sample are shown in Table 3.5. For each sample, we generated two datasets: a so-called "perfect" dataset (uniform coverage, perfect reads), and a so-called "realistic" dataset (non-uniform coverage, imperfect reads). Both datasets contain approximately 150x coverage.

---

<sup>2</sup>To handle the first and second positions in the read, which do not have a dinucleotide context, we simply extract a read by starting two nucleotides into the simulated fragment.

**Table 3.5:** *De novo* variant counts for each of the 20 simulated children.

	DEL	GC	INS	INV	NAHR	RECOMB	SNP	STR_CON	STR_EXP	TD
0	22	25	22	22	2	10	5	3	3	26
1	21	21	21	21	2	10	23	11	11	26
2	11	22	11	11	2	8	13	22	22	8
3	25	17	25	25	2	32	23	17	17	21
4	4	23	4	4	2	8	14	16	16	12
5	26	23	26	26	2	37	28	5	5	8
6	13	17	13	13	2	15	27	23	23	4
7	1	22	1	1	2	30	28	5	5	12
8	26	16	26	26	2	16	16	13	13	8
9	4	23	4	4	2	25	23	23	23	21
10	12	20	12	12	2	16	23	19	19	27
11	13	19	13	13	2	7	20	18	18	17
12	19	20	19	19	2	8	14	5	5	28
13	10	20	10	10	2	25	13	28	28	11
14	28	18	28	28	2	8	3	29	29	17
15	27	22	27	27	2	30	5	19	19	2
16	23	22	23	23	2	12	29	24	24	17
17	17	22	17	17	1	10	28	13	13	11
18	23	18	23	23	2	8	1	21	21	18
19	22	22	22	22	2	17	19	3	3	2



**Figure 3-9:** Read datasets for real (top panel), simulated perfect (middle panel), and simulated realistic (bottom panel) data.

## 4 *Detection and classification*

WE NOW PRESENT A NOVEL GRAPHICAL METHOD for detecting and classifying *de novo* variants. We shall present some brief foundational background on *de novo* assembly, upon which the variant caller is built. The simulation framework and dataset we described in Chapter 3 will be used to establish the method’s accuracy.

Reference-based analyses benefit from being reasonably intuitive, as the underlying genome is linear and there are many visualization tools that can facilitate the user’s understanding of the underlying data.<sup>84–88</sup> In contrast, graph data structures are less intuitive and lack dedicated tools for visualization. In this chapter, we will also present images from our purpose-built trio graph visualization software for the purposes of guiding the reader’s intuition regarding graphical variant motifs and the operation of the calling algorithms.

### 4.1 *De novo assembly*

*De novo* assembly refers to the process wherein a sampled genome is reconstructed from sequencing data without guidance from an existing genome. Sequenced deeply enough, a set of reads from a single sample will contain overlaps that can be used to infer the sequence of contiguous segments of the genome into so-called **contigs**. If the reads are long enough to span repetitive regions in the genome, these contigs could be as long as the chromosome itself. Otherwise, separate contigs can be joined together into **scaffolds** (contigs plus gaps) using paired-end reads, information from linkage analysis, HAPPY mapping, and other methods.

The quality of the reconstruction can vary considerably depending on how the assembly is performed. Typically, constructing a complete and high-quality reference sequence (one with few errors and few gaps in the linear sequence of each assembled chromosome) is a big first step to studying the genome of an organism, done at great expense and labor over a period of several years. In 2002, after several years of work, Gardner *et al.* published the sequence of the 3D7 *P. falciparum* parasite clone. By using a whole chromosome

**Table 4.1:** Comparison of assembly statistics of the finished 3D7 reference genome and a reconstruction of the same sample from 76-bp Illumina data.

	contigs	min length	max length	mean length	N50	total sequence
3D7	16	5967	3291936	1458302	1687656	23332831
PG0051-C	51425	47	27520	478	1280	24602599

shotgun strategy with accurate and long (several hundred bp) first-generation sequencing reads (Sanger), each chromosome was fully resolved with very few gaps in the sequence and no unplaced contigs.<sup>29</sup>

Today, the same sample can be assembled in a matter of days rather than years using high-throughput second-generation sequencing. Short reads (76 – 100 bp) from second-generation sequencers (Illumina) can be produced cheaply and in abundant quantities, and similar read overlap considerations can be used to generate assemblies. However, these reads tend to be much more error prone, and the shorter read length fails to span many repetitive regions of the genome. The result is a much cheaper, but far more fragmented assembly than the reference assembly. Table 4.1 compares the assembly statistics of the reference genome versus a reconstruction of the same sample from Illumina data taken from our cross dataset (PG0051-C) using the McCortex assembly software.<sup>89</sup> While the parasite genome is known to have 16 chromosomes (which the reference recapitulates), the Illumina assembly broken into over 50,000 pieces with an N50<sup>1</sup> of a mere 1,280 bp.

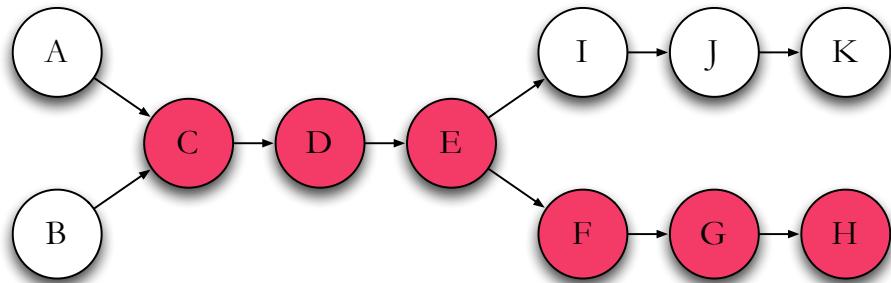
It is perhaps surprising then to discover the central argument of this dissertation is on the value of *de novo* assembly of short reads for *de novo* mutation discovery. After all, a poor-quality Illumina assembly - as evidenced by the numerous short contigs - would seem to be very limiting, even if it could theoretically reconstruct pieces of the genome that cannot be recovered from a reference-based analysis. However, for the work that we describe in this chapter, the value is not in the contig reconstructions, but in the underlying data structure from which the contigs are produced: the "de Bruijn graph".

The de Bruijn graph is a data structure that encodes read overlaps such that a walk through the vertices with unambiguous connections yields contiguous sequence in the genome. In real data, those walks may end prematurely due to errors or homology, yielding junctions that cannot be confidently navigated. Typically, assembly algorithms will be conservative in the contigs they emit from this data, choosing to terminate the walk at the junction rather than risk going forward and emitting sequence that does not actually

---

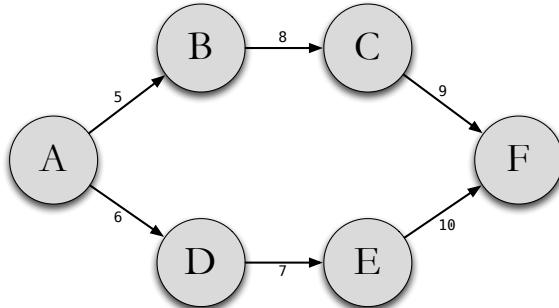
<sup>1</sup>**N50:** the length for which the set of all contigs that length or greater represents half the total lengths of all contigs.

appear in the genome. However, with an additional set of metadata and a reasonable assumption, we can traverse the barrier. In trio data, it is easy to detect a so-called novel kmer: a kmer occurring in the child but absent in the parents. By annotating the graph with this information, we can see stretches of novel kmers. Figure 4.1 shows a portion of such an annotated graph. Ignoring the annotations, a traversal that starts at vertex  $D$  would yield a short contig:  $C \rightarrow D \rightarrow E$ . However, if we assume the novel kmers link together, we can extend our traversal to yield  $C \rightarrow D \rightarrow E \rightarrow F \rightarrow G \rightarrow H$ . These novel kmers are the hallmark of *de novo* variation, and by utilizing these annotations, we can navigate parts of the graph that are otherwise unnavigable, surpassing what conservative contigs can give us and providing tremendous sensitivity and specificity to DNMs.



**Figure 4.1:** Graph with novel kmer annotations in red.

#### 4.1.1 Definitions



**Figure 4.2:** An example directed graph with six vertices.

First, we provide some definitions. We denote a **graph** as  $G = \{\mathcal{V}, \mathcal{E}\}$  where  $\mathcal{V}$  represents a unique set of **vertices**, and  $\mathcal{E}$  a set of **edges**.<sup>90</sup> We shall assume the set of vertices  $\mathcal{V} = V_1, V_2, \dots, V_n$ . A pair of vertices may be connected by an edge. For the purposes of this dissertation, we shall require that all edges are **directed** (though for some applications outside this work, it is also possible for edges to be **undirected**). Written as  $V_i \rightarrow V_j$

(or equivalently  $V_i \leftarrow V_j$  and  $V_j \rightarrow V_i$ ), directed edges restrict graph traversal in one direction (thus enforcing a traversal order when reconstructing a region of the genome). A vertex may have a number of incoming (outgoing) edges, the precise count being referred to as a vertex's **in- (out-) degree**. We shall also refer to any vertex with an in-degree or out-degree greater than 1 as a **junction**.

A **path** is a sequence of adjacent vertices that respects these edge relationships, i.e.  $V_i, \dots, V_k$  such that for every  $j = i, \dots, k$ , we have  $V_j \rightarrow V_{j+1}$ . In Figure 4.2, the vertex sequence  $A, B, C, F$  forms a path. Similarly, a **trail** denotes a sequence of adjacent vertices, but does not respect the directionality of the edges. In Figure 4.2, the sequence  $F, E, D, A$  forms a trail. Edges can optionally carry **weight**, indicating an arbitrary cost for traversing from one vertex to another via particular edges. Unless otherwise specified, we shall assume the edge weight is always 1.

A **multi-color graph** is a useful extension for multi-sample scenarios. Each edge carries additional metadata used to denote sample identity (e.g. each sample is assigned a unique "color"). All kmers in all samples are added to the graph, and following the edges with the same color yields the genome of that sample. Many kmers will not be accessible when traversing paths or trails in one color versus another. These motifs are the hallmark of most variation in a graphical setting.

Often in this dissertation, we will perform operations on a limited graph region wherein we process only vertices of interest and all edges present between them in the original graph. This is referred to as an **induced subgraph** (which is *not* technically synonymous with a subgraph, but for simplicity in this work, we will often drop the "induced" qualifier). Let  $\mathbf{V} \subset \mathcal{V}$ . The **subgraph**  $G[\mathbf{V}] = \{\mathbf{V}, \mathcal{E}'\}$  where  $\mathcal{E}'$  are all the edges  $V_i = V_j \in \mathcal{E}$  such that  $V_i, V_j \in \mathbf{V}$ .

A **de Bruijn** graph represents fixed length symbols (vertices) and their overlaps (edges), with the added restriction that each symbol may only appear once in the graph.<sup>91</sup> Applied to assembly, each symbol is taken to be a genomic sequence of length  $k$  (or **kmer**), with edges connecting vertices overlapping by  $k - 1$  bases<sup>2</sup>.

To construct the initial graph, each sequenced read is broken up into  $l - k + 1$  kmers (where  $l$  is the read length) and added to the graph as vertices, with edges being placed between adjacent kmers. Overlapping reads should share kmers, and the adjacency information stored in the graph can be updated accordingly. Thus processing one read at a time in this manner will yield a graph of overlaps for the entire dataset.

---

<sup>2</sup>According to the original mathematical definition, a de Bruijn graph should represent *every* possible symbol of length  $k$ , which makes the assembly formulation a subgraph rather than a graph. However, none of the relevant literature refers to assembly graphs in this manner, so we shall carry on abusing the term.

We rely on the Cortex assembly software for construction of the graph. Cortex represents the graph on disk as fixed-width records (herein referred to as **CortexRecords**) consisting of a **CortexKmer** (defined as a odd-length kmer or its reverse complement, whichever is alphanumerically lower), coverage in each color, and a list of incoming and outgoing edges. The edge lists utilize a minimalist description. For incoming edges, only the first base of the preceding kmer is stored; the rest of the kmer is assumed to be the 0 to  $k - 1$  substring of the current kmer. Likewise, for outgoing edges, the subsequent kmer is assumed to be the 1 to  $k$  substring of the current kmer plus the last base of the next kmer. Figure 4.3 lists three example records. In the first record, the specified kmer has coverage 9 in color 0 (for our purposes, the child), 8 in color 1 (mother), and 5 in color 2 (father). The trailing three columns encode edge information per color. The first four characters of each column denote incoming edges to kmers with A, C, G, or T prefixes (or "." for no edge to that prefix). The last four characters of each column denote outgoing edges to kmers with A, C, G, or T suffixes (or "." for no edge to that suffix).

```
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAATATGTATATATA 9 8 5 a.....T a.....T a.....T
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAATATGTATTAAC 7 6 3 a....A... a....A... a....C...
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAATATGTATGTATATA 4 9 0 a.....T a.....T .....
```

**Figure 4.3:** Example CortexRecord entries.

The Cortex de Bruijn graph can be easily represented as a hash table where each key is a CortexKmer and the associated value a list of incoming and outgoing edges. This enables lookups to be performed in  $\mathcal{O}(1)$  time, but requires the entire graph be loaded into memory. While this makes sense from the perspective of a software developer writing assembly software (where one would assume that every kmer will be processed during the lifetime of the program's execution), it is cumbersome for our purposes. DNMAs are anticipated to be scant, which implies that the number of kmers that need to be examined is modest. Furthermore, should we wish to scale to larger genomes in the future (e.g. the 3 gigabase chimpanzee genome), we must be aware of the much greater difficulty in loading such a graph entirely into memory (unless one happens to be operating on a computer with several hundred gigabytes of available RAM). Instead, we sort the Cortex graphs and perform a binary search whenever we need to load the CortexRecord associated with a particular CortexKmer. This increases the time complexity for kmer lookups to  $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$ , but eliminates the need to load the entire graph to memory.

We define a series of utility functions that aid graph traversal. The **findRecord** method retrieves the CortexRecord indexed by a kmer via a binary search over the sorted disk-based graph, or throws an error if the graph is not sorted. The CortexKmer within the

`CortexRecord`, in addition to carrying the text of the kmer, also stores a bit that indicates whether the stored orientation matches the requested orientation, which is useful for navigation. The methods `getPrevKmers` and `getNextKmers` retrieve lists of kmers connected to incoming and outgoing edges of the specified kmer, orientation-matched to the kmer sk.

Many methods will accept two graphs rather than just one: a `clean` graph and a `dirty` graph. The clean graph represents data where errors have been removed by the assembly software's automatic filtering process (coverage and contig length considerations). The dirty graph represents data prior to this cleaning step. When a kmer is absent from the clean graph or lacks incoming/outgoing edges, traversal can still continue if the dirty graph contains the requested kmer and edge information. This overcomes an issue wherein *overcleaned* data (data filtered with too stringent a threshold) causes erroneous gaps in the graph. If carefully used, the dirty graph can be used to patch these holes without causing significant errors in the traversal. Almost all methods with this double graph signature have a form that look like Algorithm 5, wherein a single graph version of the same method is called, only to be called again if the operation on the clean graph was unsuccessful.

---

**Algorithm 5** Get next kmers from the clean graph, failing back to the dirty graph

---

```

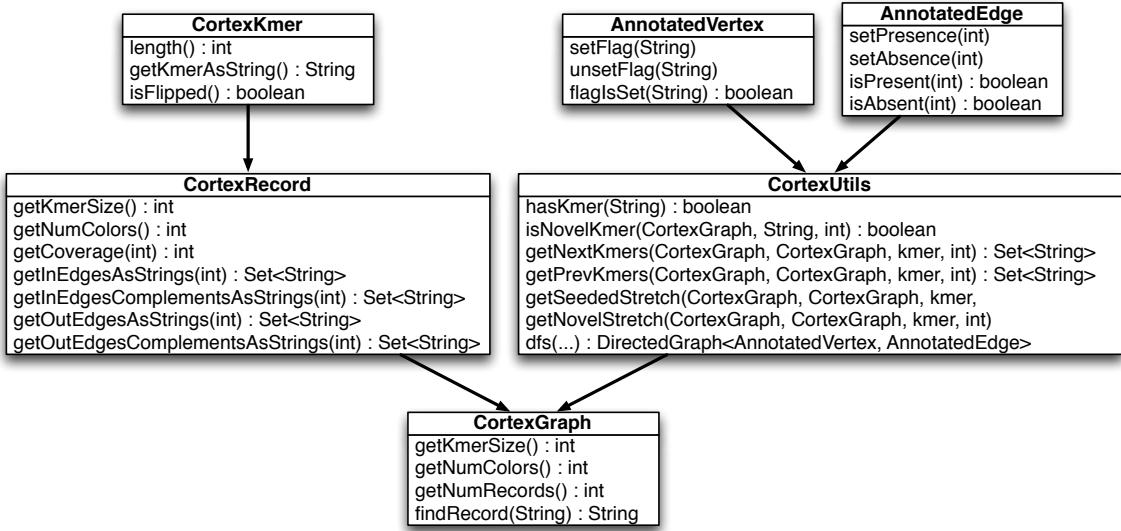
1: function GETNEXTKMERS(clean, dirty, kmer, color)
2:   nextKmers = getNextKmers(clean, kmer, color)
3:   if (dirty != null && nextKmers.isEmpty()) then
4:     nextKmers = getNextKmers(dirty, kmer, color)
5:   return nextKmers

```

---

Finally, we present in Figure 4.4 the UML diagram of the relevant parts of codebase encapsulating the relationships between `CortexGraph` (manager of access to underlying disk representation of the multi-color de Bruijn graph); `CortexRecord` (decodes graph records into kmer, coverage, and incoming/outgoing edges); `CortexKmer` (the kmer itself, along with orientation information); the utility method object `CortexUtils` (a collection of miscellaneous methods written to facilitate graph navigation); and the `AnnotatedVertex` and `AnnotatedEdge` objects (used to store subgraphs and metadata).

For clarity of the pseudocode presented below, we will refrain from referring to the object to which a method is bound. For example, rather than specifying `CortexUtils.getNextKmer(...)` in an algorithm, we shall simply write `getNextKmer(...)`. We *will* refer to the parent object if doing so implies different data being accessed. For example, `clean.findRecord(...)` and `dirty.findRecord(...)` refer to different data sources, the former being the error-cleaned data, the latter data that has not be processed in this manner.



**Figure 4.4:** Relationships between the `CortexGraph`, `CortexRecord`, `CortexKmer`, `CortexUtils`, `AnnotatedVertex`, and `AnnotatedEdge` objects.

## 4.2 Variant motifs

Just as reference-based methods search for motifs in the data representing variants (e.g. recurrent mismatches, gaps, or unusual truncations in the read alignments; read pairs aligning much further apart than expected; chimeras or inter-chromosomal alignments; etc.), so must we scan for indicative motifs in the assembly graph. Before we discuss the precise nature of these motifs, it is useful to draw a distinction between "simple" and "complex" variants. A "simple" variant is a SNP, insertion, or deletion that occurs within a single chromosome. A "complex" variant could be a homologous or non-homologous recombination, translocation, or other interchromosomal exchange - something that does not fit within the confines of the straightforward SNP or indel classification. The patterns inherent to these two categories of variants are very different.

### 4.2.1 Simple variant motifs

Simple variants in *de novo* assembly data typically manifest as "bubbles" in the de Bruijn graph: regions where a variant has broken the homology between sequences, resulting in flanking kmers that are shared between the samples and spanning kmers that differ through the variant itself. In a single diploid sample, this could be a heterozygous SNP or indel between two homologous chromosomes. In a collection of haploid samples, one or more samples may differ from the others, resulting in the bubble.

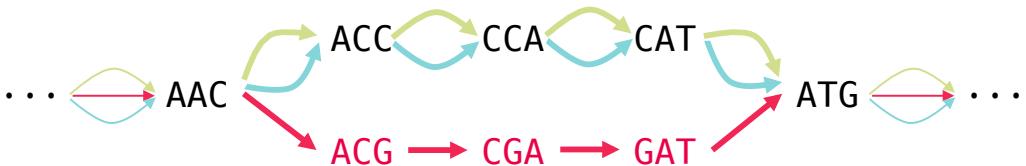
As an illustration, consider three sequences from a mother-father-child pedigree, shown

in Figure 4.5a. While the maternal and paternal haplotypes (green and blue, respectively) are identical, the child's haplotype (red) differs by a single C to G SNP. Figure 4.5b shows the resulting multi-color de Bruijn  $k = 3$  graph built from this data. The mutation has given rise to the canonical bubble motif in the graph. Three novel kmers (kmers present in the child and absent in the parents) spanning the variant allele are present. Figure 4.6 is an equivalent graph for another simulated SNP, shown with more context and constructed with a much larger value of  $k$  appropriate for 76 - 100 bp read lengths, typical of second-generation sequencing datasets (in this case,  $k = 47$ ).

a.

...AACCATG...  
...AACCATG...  
...AACGATG...

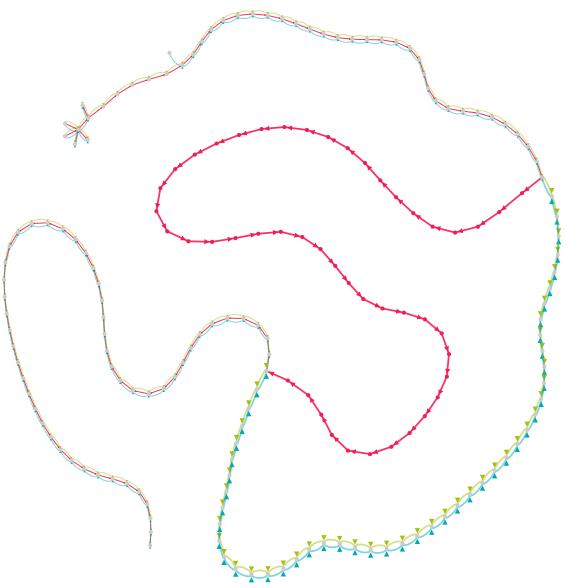
b.



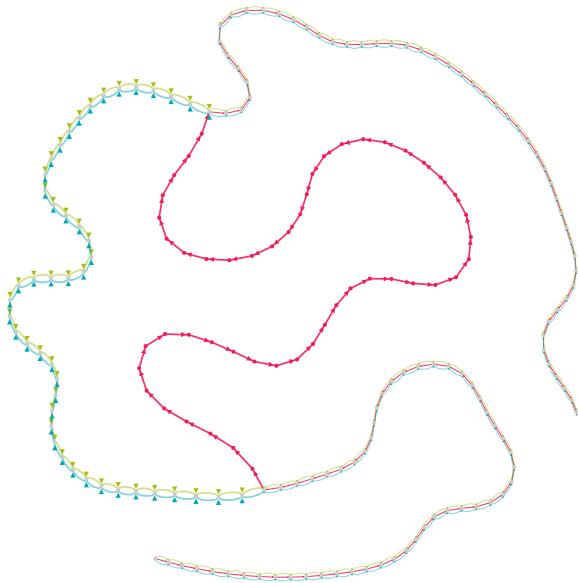
**Figure 4.5:** A simple variant motif for a C to G SNP. a. Haploid sequences from a mother (green), father (blue), and child (red), the last differing from the first two by a single base substitution. b. The resulting multi-color de Bruijn graph for  $k = 3$ . Red vertices denote kmers that are deemed "novel", i.e. present in the child and absent in the parents. Edge colors reflect the samples in which the connected pairs of kmers are found. Edges that are part of the bubble (variant call) are displayed with thicker lines.

All simple variants will have this basic structure: a bubble in the graph that separates the variant samples from the non-variant samples. The only major difference is the length of each branch: longer for an insertion in the child, shorter for a deletion (note that for short events, this is generally not apparent from the display, as evidenced by Figures 4.7 and 4.8).

Many variants may occur on the haplotypic background of one parent and not the other. This is common in regions of the genome that are divergent between the two parents. Figure 4.9 depicts one such simulated event. A 41-bp tandem duplication has occurred on the background of the mother (evidenced by the presence of green edges), but not the father (thus the absence of blue edges). In the flanking tails, edges shared between all three samples are present until a blue edge separates from the graph and connects to different vertices. While not shown, these branches continue along the genome of the



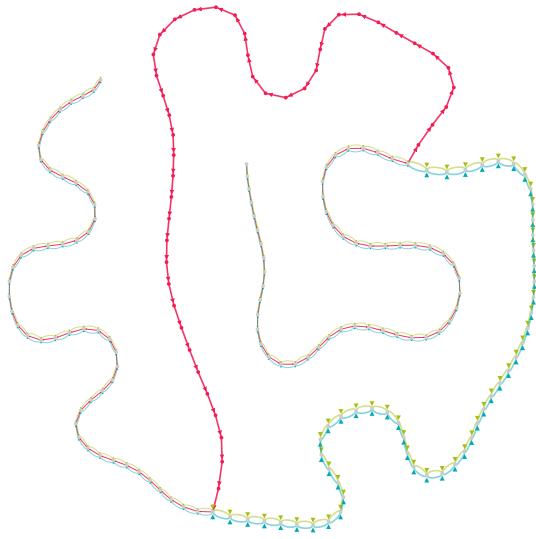
**Figure 4.6:** A multi-color de Bruijn graph at  $k = 47$  for a haploid pedigree spanning a simulated *de novo* SNP, produced by our VisualCortex software. Vertex labels have been suppressed for clarity. Spatial layout is arbitrary and for display purposes only.



**Figure 4.7:** A 5 bp insertion in the child

father.

Finally, it is possible to encounter variants where the path through the graph taken by

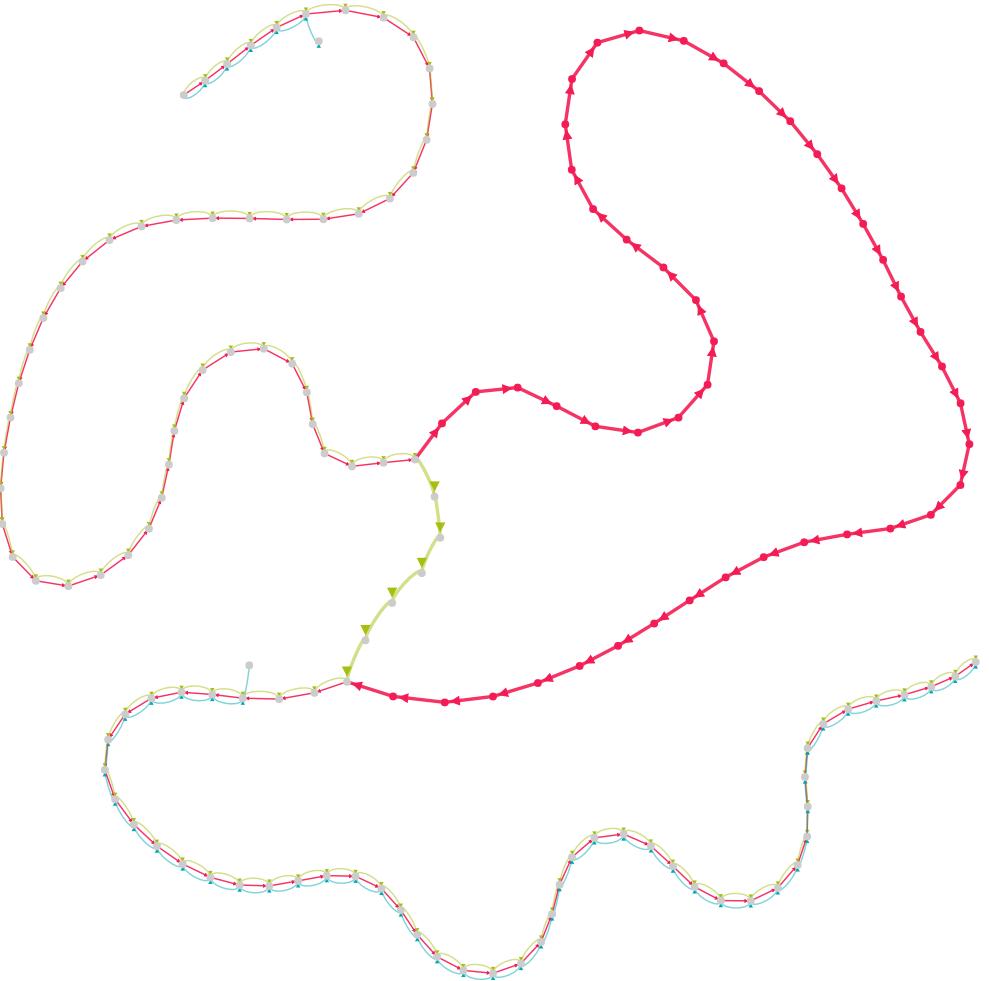


**Figure 4.8:** A 5 bp deletion in the child

the child can appear to follow both the variant and non-variant paths, as demonstrated by Figure 4.10. Such a scenario may arise by a mutation on a sequence with copy number greater than 1: both the unaltered and altered sequences would then exist simultaneously in the child’s genome.

#### 4.2.2 Complex variant motifs

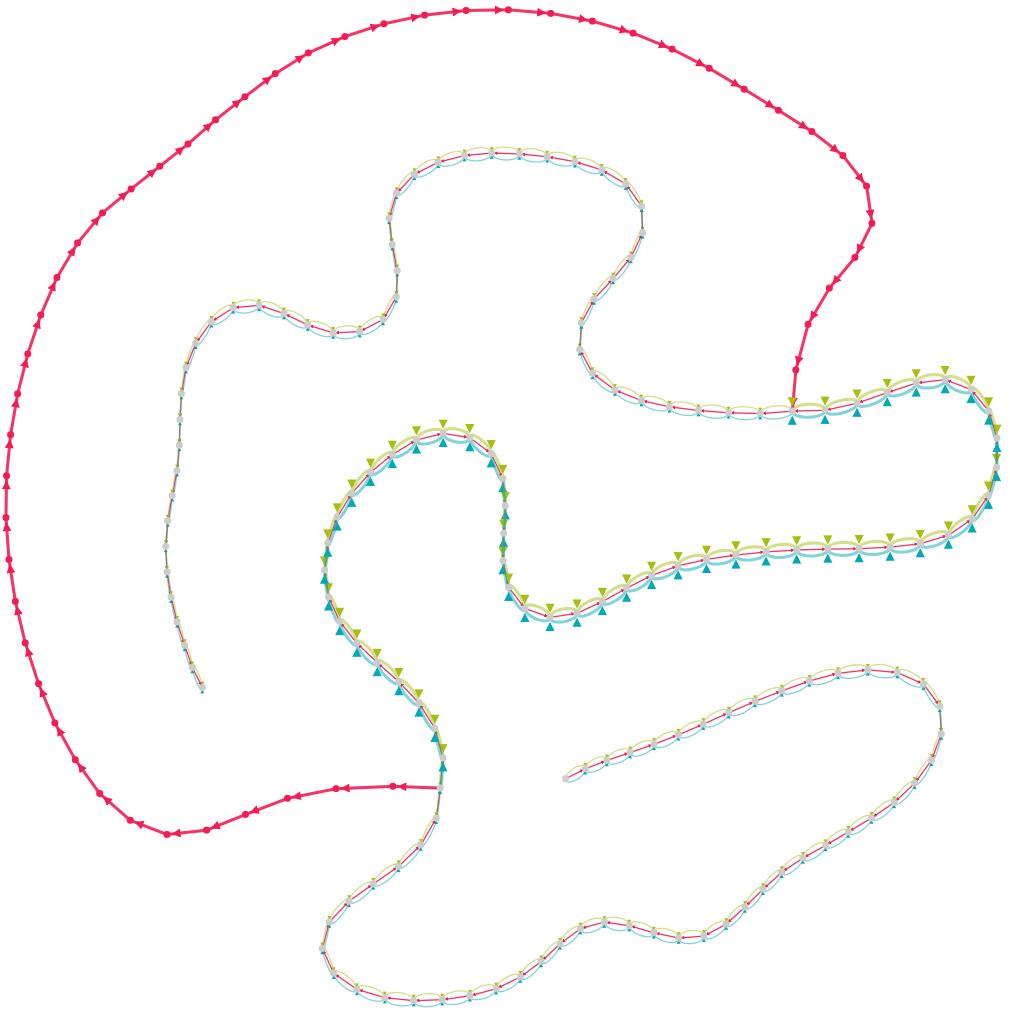
Recombination events (allelic crossovers or gene conversion events; NAHR events) will not necessarily appear as bubbles. Bubbles form in the graph when parental and progeny haplotypes diverge (at the site of a variant) and reconnect (at the flanking homologous regions). In a recombination event, the haplotypes do not necessarily reconnect. In a crossover or gene conversion event, as in Figure 4.11, the progeny’s graph should follow one parent or the other, switching at the crossover site. Gene conversions and other multiple crossovers may switch back and forth several times. These events can be detected simply by keeping track of which parent’s graph is apparently being followed. However, we caution the reader that it’s quite likely that many events of this nature will likely go uncalled or improperly called. For such recombination events to be detected, a kmer spanning two proximal variants must be present. This is unlikely to occur for simple crossovers, particularly in genomes of reasonably low heterozygosity, as neighboring



**Figure 4.9:** A tandem duplication on the haplotypic background of the mother.

variants beyond a kmer's length away will not give rise to novel kmers necessary for the event's detection. It is perhaps slightly more likely for gene conversion events, where the multiple crossovers proximal to a variant exclusive to one of the parents will generate the sought-after novel kmer signal.

NAHR events are trickier; as these events are generally mitotic rather than meiotic events, the expected motif is that a child's graph should follow the same parent, but connect disjoint components of the graph (e.g. telomeres of different chromosomes) through novel kmers. In principle, one should be able to detect such an event by testing whether removing the child's contribution to the pedigree subgraph results in disrupting the otherwise connected components.<sup>92</sup> In practice, however, NAHR events are mediated by homology between low-complexity regions of the subtelomeric genomic regions. The homology will result in confounding connections between disparate regions of the graph.

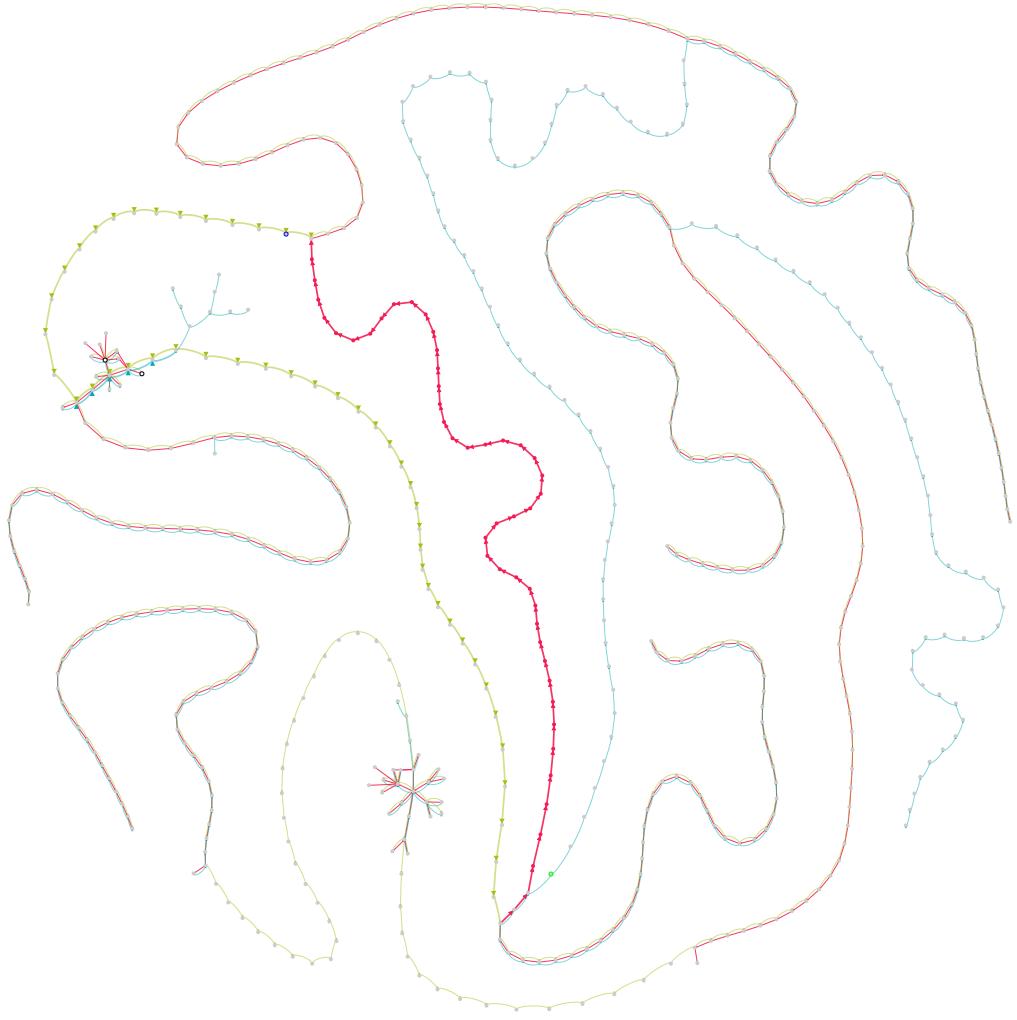


**Figure 4.10:** A variant wherein the child's path does not simply diverge from that of the parents, but rather navigates both.

An easier solution is to track the parent apparently being copied from and determine the chromosome of origin for each kmer present in the flanking regions of the novel kmers. This is only feasible if one happens to have draft reference genomes for which a kmer's chromosome of origin can be approximately determined.

#### 4.2.3 Handling errors in sequencing

Bubble and non-bubble motifs are trivial to find and navigate if there are no errors in the sequence data, but this situation rarely arises in real data. Real data is subject to sequencing errors, making graph traversal much more difficult. Errors manifest as extraneous branches in the graph, adding ambiguity to traversals. Without a guide as to which branch to explore at a junction, we are either forced to abandon the traversal, make

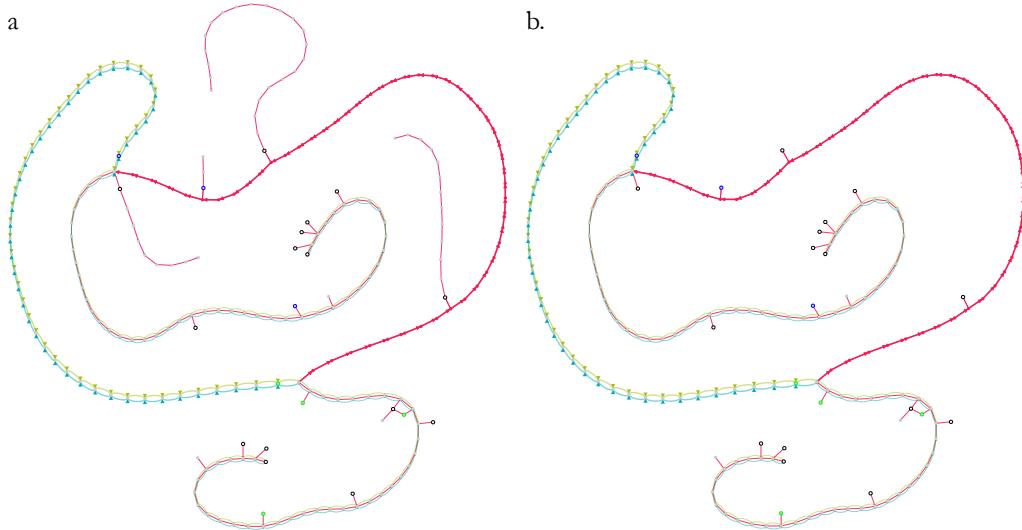


**Figure 4.11:** A gene conversion event

a guess, or explore all possible branches. The first option is overly conservative; many variants will go untyped. The second is hazardous; there is the very real potential for choosing erroneously and typing the variant incorrectly. The last is computationally expensive; errors explode the complexity of the graph, making it prohibitively costly to find the correct path through the graph.

To solve this, recall that DNM<sub>s</sub> do more than open up a bubble motif in the graph. Ideally, each kmer along the variant path is novel. If we assume that branches following the novel branch at junctions are correct and linked with the current variant being explored, we can use these novel kmers as "sign posts" to mark successful traversals. Navigating a branch and not seeing a sign post gives us adequate cause to abandon a branch in favor of another.

Figure 4.12a-b depict a simulated indel in imperfect data, the former with some of



**Figure 4.12:** Indel with sequencing errors in graph. a. Selected extraneous branches expanded for illustrative purposes b. All extraneous branches collapsed.

these extraneous branches displayed, the latter with them suppressed. Branches with novel kmers (the red vertices) clearly complete the variant, while branches lacking these novel kmers are superfluous to the traversal and can be discarded without loss. This limits the amount of unnecessary traversal in the graph, making it easier to find paths through the parental and child colors to form the variant.

### 4.3 Calling and classifying *de novo* variants

Armed with an intuition as to how graphs behave in regions of *de novo* variation, we can now describe the procedure for identifying and classifying a variant. The overview involves five big steps (and associated substeps):

1. Identify confident and trusted novel kmers
2. Construct multi-color de Bruijn "trio" graphs (child, mother, father)
3. Load subgraph local to a novel kmer
4. Identify and classify variants in the subgraph
5. Evaluate performance

We discuss these in details in the sections below.

### 4.3.1 Identify confident and trusted novel kmers

We first seek to build a list of novel kmers that are both *confident* (i.e. unlikely to be sequencing errors) and *trusted* (i.e. are unlikely to be the result of contamination). Identification of the novel kmers themselves is trivial; we simply build a list of kmers that appear in the child but are completely absent in the parents. The subsequent filtering steps are described below.

#### 4.3.1.1 Remove low coverage kmers

For a deeply sequenced sample, we expect all kmers in the genome to be of similarly high coverage. While there will inevitably be regions of the genome where coverage is poor owing to failure to amplify regions with high GC content, the Lander-Waterman statistics in Chapter 1 suggest we should easily see many copies of the entire *P. falciparum* genome at a coverage of  $100x$ . We can therefore assume that failure to reach a certain coverage threshold is indicative of sequencing error, and such kmers can be removed as candidates from the novel kmer list.

The problem remains as to where the threshold should be set. For each sample, we plotted the histogram of kmer coverage, shown in Figure 4.13, smoothing the resulting distribution with a non-parametric LOESS fit. The smoothed histogram makes it easier to find the first local minimum using Algorithm 6.

---

#### Algorithm 6 Compute the local minimum of a kmer coverage distribution

---

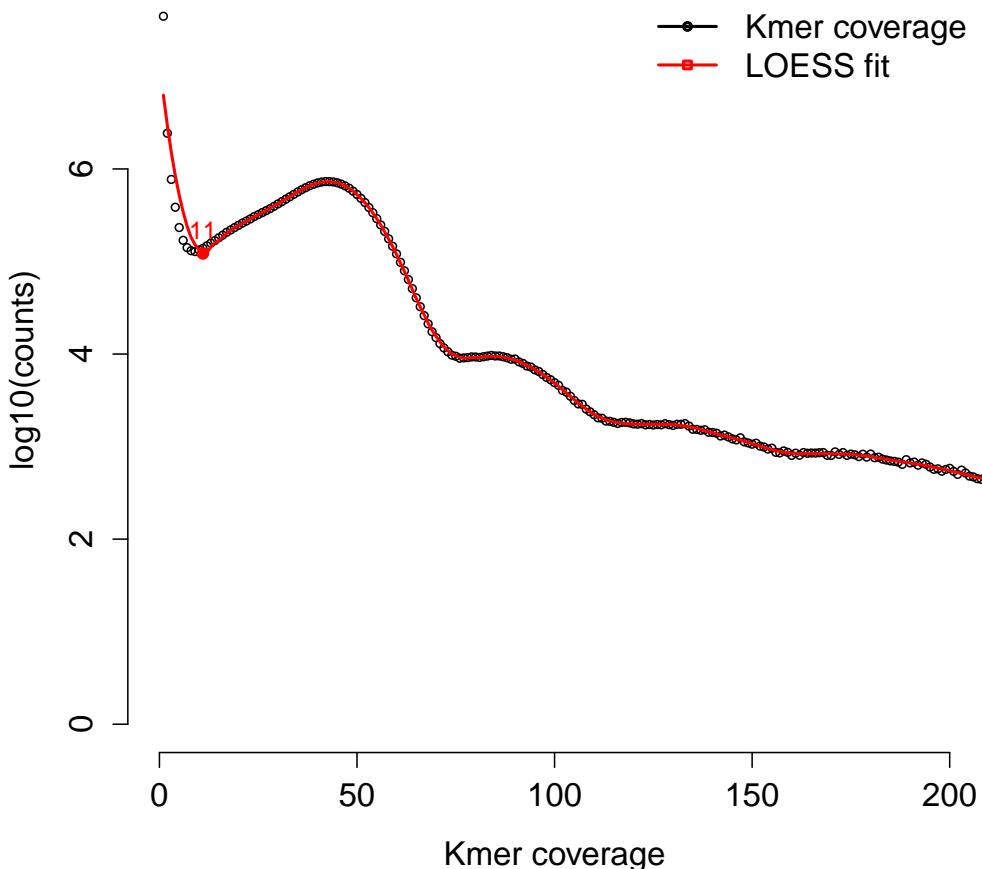
```
1: function FIRSTLOCALMINIMUM(coverageHist)
2:   y = laggedDifferences(c(INT_MAX, x)) > oL
3:   y = cumSum(equalRunLengths(y).lengths)
4:   y = y[seq(2L, length(y), 2L)]
5:   return(y[2])
```

---

#### 4.3.1.2 Remove possible contaminants

Contamination can occur during sequencing library preparation due to handling from human operators (transferring either bacterial or human genetic material to the library) or from other samples (often from different species) being processed in the same laboratory. Contamination would result in kmers that appear novel - owing to their absense in the parents - but are irrelevant for our study. It is perhaps not a paramount concern when processing *P. falciparum* data, as the genome is very different than any other sample likely to be a contaminant. However, it may contribute false-positives that we can easily mitigate.

### PG0055-C.ERR019066



**Figure 4.13:** Kmer coverage histogram for a real sample, with LOESS fit

To remove the effects of contamination, we run every confident novel kmer through BLAST.<sup>93</sup> Specifically, we used the `blastn` package and all available BLAST nucleotide databases to identify the likely species of every confident novel 47-mer in each sample. Any unidentified kmer or apparently *P. falciparum* kmer was retained; all others were removed. In practice, this removes anywhere from dozens to thousands of kmers from needing to be considered; as evidenced by Figure 4.14, the exact number varies as each sample is prepared independently, at different times and by different personnel.

#### 4.3.2 Construct multi-color de Bruijn "trio" graphs

To construct the "trio" graphs, we perform assembly on each sample with the *Cortex de novo* assembly software<sup>28</sup> following the recommended workflow.<sup>89</sup> Briefly, each sample is

assembled using the `build` command at a kmer size of 47 bp<sup>3</sup> and ignoring nucleotides with an Illumina quality score less than 5. Each sample was then cleaned of likely sequencing errors with the `clean` command using automatically calculated coverage and supernode (unambiguous runs of kmers with in/out degree of 1) length thresholds. Finally, the graph for the child was merged into a *clean* trio graph, and separately, a *dirty* trio graph (one using the uncleaned graph data) using the `join` command. This multi-color graph consists of child, mother, and father. For our purposes with *P. falciparum*, "child" is assigned color 0, "mother" (the first parent of the cross) to color 1, and "father" to color 2. Read threading was *not* applied, as in our analyses, there is no need for contigs, just the graph data structure.

#### 4.3.3 Load subgraph local to a novel kmer

To facilitate variant calling, we must process regions of the graph likely to harbor DNM s. While it is technically possible to load a *P. falciparum* graph into RAM (owing to its small 23 megabase genome), it is unlikely such a solution would scale to larger genomes. It is also cumbersome to do so when there are only on the order of dozens, perhaps hundreds, of variants to be discovered per genome. Therefore, we adopted a solution of fetching only relevant parts of the genome as necessary, operating on the local subgraph surrounding the putative variant, rather than on the entire graph at once.

##### 4.3.3.1 Depth-first search

Graph exploration is an *online* problem, meaning the structure of the graph cannot be known until it is explored. As a non-linear data structure, it is not trivial to determine where to start and stop exploring a graph. During traversal, one may encounter junctions (due to errors or homology) without any additional information as to which branch to choose. Graphs sometimes loop back onto themselves, necessitating that we keep track of our walk so that we do not end up traversing endlessly in circles. Incorrect decisions in the traversal cannot always be detected, requiring appropriate stopping conditions to abort a traversal if no fruitful data is discovered.

Typically, graph exploration can be accomplished with a so-called *depth-first search*, or DFS. The basic premise of a DFS is summarized in Algorithm 7: start at a vertex, walk in a chosen direction until a junction is encountered, choose one branch and repeat the DFS from that point until it is deemed appropriate to stop, then jump back to the junction to choose the next branch, and repeat until completion. In practice, this approach has some

---

<sup>3</sup>This setting results from evaluations on optimal kmer size for maximizing contig length, despite not needing to produce contigs for our analyses

drawbacks that manifest quickly in real data. First, the basic DFS algorithm terminates only when there are no more vertices left to traverse, which is overkill for our purposes. Second, all branches are treated equally. For our purposes, branches containing errors are not important and should be discarded lest they confuse later algorithms trying to find paths through bubbles in order to type variants. Third, this requires us to explore three graphs separately, which is inefficient.

---

**Algorithm 7** A basic, iterative depth-first search

---

```

1: function IDFS(graph, vertex)
2:   s = new Stack()
3:   visited = {}
4:   s.push(vertex)
5:   while !s.isEmpty() do
6:     current = s.pop()
7:     if (visited.contains(current)) then
8:       next
9:     visited.add(current)
10:    for v in graph.nextVertices(vertex) do
11:      s.push(v)

```

---

The solution is to instead conduct a DFS with stopping conditions and recursively. Stopping conditions, specifying the conditions upon which a traversal is deemed "successful" or "failed" allow us to decide certain branches in the subgraph are unfruitful for analysis. The recursive traversal allows us to act on the result of the stopping condition, adding it to the subgraph if successful, discarding it if not. This is described in Algorithm 8.

Stopping conditions are implemented as a callback object, permitting programmer-specified limits for different situations. To type DNM<sub>s</sub>, we begin traversal at a novel kmer, walking forward and backward in the graph until the stopping conditions are met. We then explore the parental graphs based on the subgraph we loaded for the child. As the parental traversals have some additional information (namely, the presence of the child's subgraph allows us to check if a parental traversal has diverged and rejoined from the graph), the stopping conditions are different.

The stopping condition callback object implements two boolean methods: `hasTraversalSucceeded` and `hasTraversalFailed`. Both of them may return `false`, in which case the traversal continues. If either returns `true`, traversal is halted and the branch is evaluated for retention or rejection.

---

**Algorithm 8** The recursive depth-first search with arbitrary stopping conditions

---

```
1: function RDFS(clean, dirty, kmer, color, g, stopper, depth, goForward, history)
2:   firstKmer = kmer
3:   sourceKmersAllColors = goForward ? getPrevKmers(clean, dirty, kmer) : getNextKmers(clean, dirty, kmer)
4:   sourceKmers = sourceKmersAllColors.get(color)
5:   dfs = new AnnotatedGraph()
6:   repeat
7:     cv = kmer
8:     cr = clean.findRecord(cv)
9:     if (cr == null && dirty != null) then
10:      cr = dirty.findRecord(cv)
11:      prevKmers = getPrevKmers(clean, dirty, cv)
12:      nextKmers = getNextKmers(clean, dirty, cv)
13:      adjKmers = goForward ? nextKmers : prevKmers
14:      addVertexAndConnect(dfs, cv, prevKmers, nextKmers)
15:      if (stopper.keepGoing(cr, g, depth, dfs.vertexSet().size(), adjKmers.get(color).size()) && !history.contains(kmer)) then
16:        history.add(kmer)
17:        if (adjKmers.get(color).size() == 1) then
18:          kmer = next(adjKmers.get(color))
19:        else if (adjKmers.get(color).size() != 1) then
20:          childrenWereSuccessful = false
21:          for (ak in adjKmers.get(color)) do
22:            branch = dfs(clean, dirty, ak, color, g, stopperClass, depth + isNovelKmer(cr) ? 0 : 1, goForward, history)
23:            if (branch != null) then
24:              addGraph(dfs, branch)
25:              childrenWereSuccessful = true
26:            if (childrenWereSuccessful || stopper.hasTraversalSucceeded(cr, g, depth, dfs.vertexSet().size(), 0)) then
27:              return dfs
28:            else if (stopper.traversalSucceeded()) then
29:              return dfs
30:            else
31:              return null
32:          until (adjKmers.get(color).size() == 1)
33:        return null
```

---

#### 4.3.3.2 Stopping conditions for child

The child's stopping conditions on traversal success or failure are provided in Algorithm 9 and 10, respectively. For the child, success is approximately determined by having explored a novel kmer stretch in the graph to the point that it has rejoined the parental graphs. However, we purposefully continue reading another 50 kmers before returning success. If more novel kmers are recovered in that span, we reset our counters and continue walking. This facilitates two things: the absence of novel kmers due to sequencing errors or overthresholding, and typing complex variants that may have short stretches of non-novel kmers. Failure is determined by a number of criteria, including the absence of novel kmers, low complexity regions, having no more branches to explore, having reached a maximum graph depth, or having reached a maximum graph size.

---

#### Algorithm 9 Child's traversal success determination method

---

```
1: function HASTRAVERSALSUCCEEDED(cr, g, depth, size, edges)
2:   if (goalSize == 0 && (cr.getCoverage(1) > 0 || cr.getCoverage(2) > 0)) then
3:     goalSize = size
4:     goalDepth = depth
5:   if (goalSize > 0 && isNovel(cr)) then
6:     goalSize = size
7:     goalDepth = depth
8:   return (goalSize > 0 && (size >= goalSize + 50 || isLowComplexity(cr) || edges
   == 0))
```

---

---

#### Algorithm 10 Child's traversal failure determination method

---

```
1: function HASTRAVERSALFAILED(cr, g, depth, size, edges)
2:   return !isNovel(cr) && (isLowComplexity(cr) || edges == 0 || depth >= 5 || size
   > 5000)
```

---

#### 4.3.3.3 Stopping conditions for parents

The parents' stopping conditions on traversal success or failure are provided in Algorithm 11 and 12, respectively. Success is determined by having diverged from the child's graph and rejoined it. Care is taken to ensure that we have rejoined the graph at a boundary of the novel kmer stretch, rather than some other part of the graph obtained when trying to read some extra flanking data in Algorithm 9. Failure is determined by a number of criteria, including having reached a maximum graph size, having reached a maximum graph depth, or low complexity regions.

---

**Algorithm 11** Parents' traversal success determination method

---

```
1: function HASTRAVERSALSUCCEEDED(cr, g, depth, size, edges)
2:   fw = cr.getKmerAsString()
3:   rc = reverseComplement(fw)
4:   v = null
5:   rejoinedGraph = false
6:   if (g.containsVertex(fw) || g.containsVertex(rc)) then
7:     rejoinedGraph = true
8:   for av in g.vertexSet() do
9:     if (av.getKmer().equals(fw) || av.getKmer().equals(rc)) then
10:       if (!sawPredecessorFirst && !sawSuccessorFirst) then
11:         if (av.flagIsSet("predecessor")) then sawPredecessorFirst = true
12:         else if (av.flagIsSet("successor")) then sawSuccessorFirst = true
13:         if ((sawPredecessorFirst && av.flagIsSet("predecessor")) || (sawSuccessorFirst && av.flagIsSet("successor"))) then
14:           rejoinedGraph = false
15:           break
16:   return size > 1 && rejoinedGraph
```

---

---

**Algorithm 12** Parents' traversal failure determination method

---

```
1: function HASTRAVERSALFAILED(cr, g, depth, size, edges)
2:   return size > 1000 || junctions >= 5 || isLowComplexity(cr)
```

---

#### 4.3.4 Identify and classify variants in the subgraph

With the relevant subgraph now loaded, we can now attempt to type variants. Typing involves three steps:

1. Annotate vertices in the graph that can be possible start and end points of the variant bubble
2. Find the shortest path from start to end that satisfies some conditions
3. From the haplotypes, remove the flanking homologous sequence to reveal the variant alleles

Let us first detail how we annotate the viable starts and ends of the variant, which simply amounts to iterating through each vertex in the subgraph and checking that it means various conditions. A variant start (end) vertex should have out degree (in degree) greater than 1. The branches should be color-specific to reflect the opening of a bubble between the different samples in the graph. This is detailed in Algorithm 13.

---

**Algorithm 13** Annotating possible variant starts and ends of the subgraph

---

```
function ANNOTATESTARTSANDENDS(b)
    for av in b.vertexSet() do
        if (b.outDegreeOf(av) > 1) then
            aes = b.outgoingEdgesOf(av)
            childEdges = {}
            parentEdges = {}
            for (AnnotatedEdge ae in aes) do
                if (ae.isPresent(0) && ae.isAbsent(1) && ae.isAbsent(2)) then
                    childEdges.add(ae)
                if (ae.isPresent(color)) then
                    parentEdges.add(ae)
                if (childEdges.size() > 0 && parentEdges.size() > 0) then
                    av.setFlag("start")
                    candidateStarts.add(av)
            if (b.inDegreeOf(av) > 1) then
                aes = b.incomingEdgesOf(av)
                childEdges = {}
                parentEdges = {}
                for AnnotatedEdge ae in aes do
                    if ae.isPresent(0) && ae.isAbsent(1) && ae.isAbsent(2) then
                        childEdges.add(ae)
                    if ae.isPresent(color) then
                        parentEdges.add(ae)
                    if (childEdges.size() > 0 && parentEdges.size() > 0) || beAggressive then
                        av.setFlag("end")
                        candidateEnds.add(av)
```

---

#### 4.3.4.1 Dijkstra's shortest path algorithm

With all of the start and end points now annotated, we now need to find a path from one end of the putative variant to the other. The number of possible paths could be very large. We shall make the assumption that the correct path is the shortest path. While this will often be the case, we note that the shortest path is not necessarily the biological path. This could be the case in highly repetitive regions longer than a kmer length. Since de Bruijn graphs tend to collapse long repeats, we may miss some events.

E. W. Dijkstra described his shortest path algorithm in 1959.<sup>94</sup> We describe it below in Algorithm 14. Briefly, we keep track of all vertices' distance from the source vertex, setting the source's distance to itself to 0 and all others to infinity (to denote as-of-yet unvisited vertices). We then select the vertex with the minimum distance to the source (in the first iteration, the source itself) and compute a new distance to all immediately adjacent vertices. This new distance is a sum of the distance traversed so far from the source to one of these vertices. For our purposes, we shall assume the distance between two adjacent vertices is always 1. If the distance computed is less than the distance recorded, we replace the old value with the new. We remove this vertex from the processing queue and proceed to the next vertex with the lowest distance from the source.

To use this algorithm for allele identification, we iterate through all possible combinations of start and stop vertices, obtained as described in the previous section. We then iterate through the three graph colors (representing the child, mother, and father). For each color, we apply Algorithm 14. For the child, we place the additional constraint that the path accepted must contain at least one novel kmer.

This algorithm will return the child and parental haplotypes. To identify the precise alleles of the event, we simply trim back the homologous regions of the haplotypes with Algorithm 15.

#### 4.3.4.2 Classify event

For simple variants (those that conform to the bubble motif), event classification is reasonably straightforward. We simply inspect the recovered alleles and evaluate them against simple rules. For example, a SNP should be a single nucleotide in length. An insertion should have a parental allele length of 1 and a child allele length  $> 1$ .

To classify complex variants, we rely on other heuristics. GC events are classified by keeping track of which parent the child's genome appears to be exclusively copying from (simply by measuring when kmer coverage has dropped from one parent and returned in the other), detailed in Algorithm 16. NAHR events, involving recombinations between

---

**Algorithm 14** Finding the shortest path in a graph

---

```
function DSPA(graph, source, destination, color)
    dist = {}
    prev = {}
    q = []
    for all v in g.vertexSet() do
        dist[v] = infinity
        prev[v] = null
        push(q, v)
    dist[source] = 1
    while !q.isEmpty() do
        u = vertexWithMinDistance(q, dist)
        if u == destination then
            break
        q.remove(u);
        if u != -1 then
            for all e in g.outgoingEdgesOf(u, color) do
                v = g.getEdgeTarget(e, color)
                alt = dist[u] + 1
                if alt < dist[v] then
                    dist[v] = alt
                    prev[v] = u
    s = []
    Integer u = destination
    while u != null && prev.containsKey(u) do
        push(s, u)
        u = prev[u]
    return s
```

---

---

**Algorithm 15** Trim back haplotypes to reveal alleles

---

```
function TRIMHAPLOTYPES(child, parent)
    eo = child.length() - 1
    e1 = parent.length() - 1
    s = 0
    length = (child.length() < parent.length() ? child.length() : parent.length())
    for (s = 0; s < length && child[s] == parent[s]; s++) do
        (do nothing)
    while (eo > s && e1 > s && child[eo] == parent[e1]) do
        eo-
        e1-
```

---

different chromosomes, are detected by examining if any kmers are uniquely found on different chromosomes, detailed in Algorithm 17.

The classification algorithm can be described by the decision tree in Figure 4.15.

#### 4.3.4.3 Choosing haplotypic background

When calling variants, we do not know the haplotypic background upon which a variant has occurred. We must compare the child's graph to the mother's and then to the father's, making separate calls. This results in two variant calls for the same event. A single event must be chosen. In cases where the child and parental alleles are identical, this is trivial. Additionally, variants where the event can be identified against one parent but not the other are straightforward. The problematic events are those that have conflicting descriptions between parents. In this situation, we heuristically assign a score for various properties of the variant, choosing the representation with the highest score. This has the effect of preferring simpler descriptions (e.g. "SNP") to more complex ones (e.g. "GC").

#### 4.3.4.4 Mark traversed novel kmers as used

We then mark all the novel kmers we saw used in the stretch as used so we do not process them again. This allows us to keep track of our progress, only acting on kmers that have not been associated to any variant yet.

### 4.3.5 Evaluate performance

We evaluated the performance of our graphical DNM caller by running the thing on some simulated data. Note that the way a variant is simulated and the way a variant is called are not necessarily identical. In particular, indels are tricky because there is not a standard representation in graphs. Usually, when indels are called in reference-based methods, the reference is taken to be the forward strand and indels are left-shifted as far as possible. In graphs, there is no information available for determining orientation. When they were simulated, we knew what the forward strand was, but we do not know that in the graph. Thus, when we go to check on the presence of a variant, we must check it in both orientations, and accounting for multiple representations.

#### 4.3.5.1 Pre-compute novel kmer to variant map

We iterated through all variants, extracting sequence from the simulated child's reference genome between start –  $(2k - 1)$  and stop +  $(2k - 1)$  bp. We then extracted each kmer from this sequence and, if the kmer is novel, emitting a table row mapping the novel kmer to variant ID, variant type, and position in the child's reference genome. Note that

---

**Algorithm 16** Stretch has switches

---

```
function HASSWITCHES(graph, stretch)
    inherit = []
    for all 47-bp kmers k in stretch do
        covo = graph.getCoverage(k, 0)                                ▷ child
        cov1 = graph.getCoverage(k, 1)                                ▷ mother
        cov2 = graph.getCoverage(k, 2)                                ▷ father
        if (covo > 0 && cov1 == 0 && cov2 == 0) then
            append(inherit, "C")
        else if (covo > 0 && cov1 > 0 && cov2 == 0) then
            append(inherit, "M")
        else if (covo > 0 && cov1 == 0 && cov2 > 0) then
            append(inherit, "D")
        else if (covo > 0 && cov1 > 0 && cov2 > 0) then
            append(inherit, "B")
    for i in inherit.length() do
        for inherit[i] == 'B' do
            prevContext = '?'
            nextContext = '?'
            for (j = i - 1; j >= 0; j-) do
                if (inherit[j] == 'M' || inherit[j] == 'D') then
                    prevContext = inherit[j]
                    break
            for (j = i + 1; j < inherit.length(); j++) do
                if (inherit[j] == 'M' || inherit[j] == 'D') then
                    nextContext = inherit[j];
                    break;
            context = '?';
            if (prevContext == nextContext && prevContext != '?') then
                context = prevContext
            else if (prevContext != nextContext) then
                if (prevContext != '?') then
                    context = prevContext
                else
                    context = nextContext
            inherit[i] = context
    return inheritStr.matches(".*D+.C+.M+.*") || inheritStr.matches(".*M+.C+.D+.*")
```

---

---

**Algorithm 17** Stretch has chimeras

---

```
function HASCHIMERAS(stretch, lookup)
    chrCount = {}
    for all kmers k in stretch do
        if lookup.numAlignments(k) == 1 then
            chrCount[lookup.getFirstAlignment(k).getChr()]++
    return chrCount.size() > 1
```

---

---

**Algorithm 18** Score variant

---

```
function CHOOSEVARIANT(gvc)
    scores = []
    for all colors c do
        if (gvc.traversalIsComplete(c)) then
            scores[c]++
        if (gvc.variantType(c) != "unknown" then
            scores[c]++
        if (gvc.variantType(c) not in ("GC", "NAHR")) then
            scores[c]++
    bestColor = whichMax(scores)
    return (scores[0] == scores[1] ? 0 : bestColor)
```

---

because we chose to space our variants out over considerable distance, it is generally not possible for a kmer to map to multiple variants. However, as we have placed very few constraints on variant positioning otherwise, it is possible a simulated variant has landed in a low-complexity region that occurs multiple times throughout the genome, and that multiple variants thus share novel kmers. In that instance, the first variant we see during processing is assigned the novel kmer.

#### 4.3.5.2 Load variant containing a novel kmer and comparing

If we are in evaluation mode (that is, if we've a novel kmer to variant map along with a dataset), then after each variant we call, we check if any of the kmers involved in the variant call are in the map, and load the relevant variant information. We then evaluate our call using Algorithm 19.

### 4.4 Results on simulated data

We ran our algorithm on the perfect and realistic simulated datasets presented in Chapter 3. Looking first at purely event recovery without classification (i.e. did we find *de novo* variants, irrespective of whether we classified them correctly), we summarize our stats in Tables 4.2 and 4.3. In both cases, our sensitivity and specificity to DNM s is very high - greater than 98% in nearly all cases. Note that the true negatives (tn) are effectively every kmer that we did *not* call in our dataset, which effectively makes our specificity nearly perfect, as the use of the novel kmers prevents us from making calls in the vast majority of the graph.

Additionally in these tables, we also computed the "redundant call", or "rc" metric. The rc metric reveals an important caveat regarding graph calls: should the traversals fail and the alleles of the variant not ascertained, the novel kmers involved in the variant will

---

**Algorithm 19** Evaluate variant

---

```
function EVALVARIANT(call, truth, stretch)
    relevantVariants = []
    for all kmers in stretch do
        if (truth.contains(kmer)) then
            push(relevantVariants, truth.get(kmer))
    bestVariant = null;
    for all vi in relevantVariants do
        ref = call.getParentalAllele()
        alt = call.getChildAllele()
        refStretch = call.getParentalStretch()
        altStretch = call.getChildStretch()
        found = false;
        if (!found) then                                ▷ left-shift variants and check
            pos = call.getStart()
            while (pos >= 0 && pos + ref.length() < refStretch.length() && pos + alt.length() < altStretch.length()) do
                refFw = refStretch.substring(pos, pos + ref.length())
                altFw = altStretch.substring(pos, pos + altLength)
                refRc = reverseComplement(refFw);
                altRc = reverseComplement(altFw)
                if (known ref and alt alleles match called fw or rc alleles) then
                    ref = (refFw or refRc)
                    alt = (altFw or altRc)
                    found = true;
                    break;
            pos-
            if (!found) then                                ▷ right-shift variants and check
                pos = call.getStart()
                while (pos >= 0 && pos + ref.length() < refStretch.length() && pos + alt.length() < altStretch.length()) do
                    refFw = refStretch.substring(pos, pos + refLength)
                    refRc = reverseComplement(refFw)
                    altFw = altStretch.substring(pos, pos + altLength)
                    altRc = reverseComplement(altFw)
                    if (known ref and alt alleles match called fw or rc alleles) then
                        ref = (refFw or refRc)
                        alt = (altFw or altRc)
                        found = true;
                        break;
            pos++
            ▷ Maybe what we've found is a truncated version of what we were expecting
            knownRef = vi.ref
            knownAlt = vi.alt == null ? "" : vi.alt
            if (!found && knownRef.length() > ref.length() && knownAlt.length() > alt.length() && knownRef.length() == knownAlt.length()) then
                refFw = ref;
                altFw = alt;
                refRc = reverseComplement(refFw);
                altRc = reverseComplement(altFw);
                refFinal = null, altFinal = null;
                if (knownRef contains refFw or refRc and knownAlt contains altFw or altRc)
then
```

not be marked as used. However, we still emit a variant "event", despite our inability to classify it. In the subsequent iteration of the algorithm, the remaining novel kmers will be picked up for calling again, leading to the same variant being emitted multiple times. Thus, we must exercise caution with untyped variants: the rate at which they appear in our callset may be slightly higher (up to 10%) than the rate at which they truly exist in the genome.

Results on event classification are shown as heatmaps in Figures 4.16 and 4.17, with observed events on the bottom and expected events on the side. On the observed axis, an "unknown" event denotes a variant that could not be typed. On the expected axis, an "unknown" event is one that does not appear in the simulation list (i.e. a false positive). The total number of events simulated that could possibly be recovered via novel kmers is the sum of each row (except for the "unknown" row, which instead enumerates the false positives and the types they've been assigned). For the most part, variants appear on the diagonal, indicating proper classification. Performance degrades when we move into the non-bubble motif variants (i.e. GC and NAHR) events.

Gene conversion events are quite often erroneously described as SNPs. This is likely due to the fact that the classification algorithm is looking for clear switches of parental copying in the child (copying from mother, then father, then mother again, or vice versa). However, if variants that appear on different haplotypic backgrounds are too close to one another, 47-bp kmers might span both, and the recombination motif that we seek may be obscured and cause the algorithm to call a SNP instead.

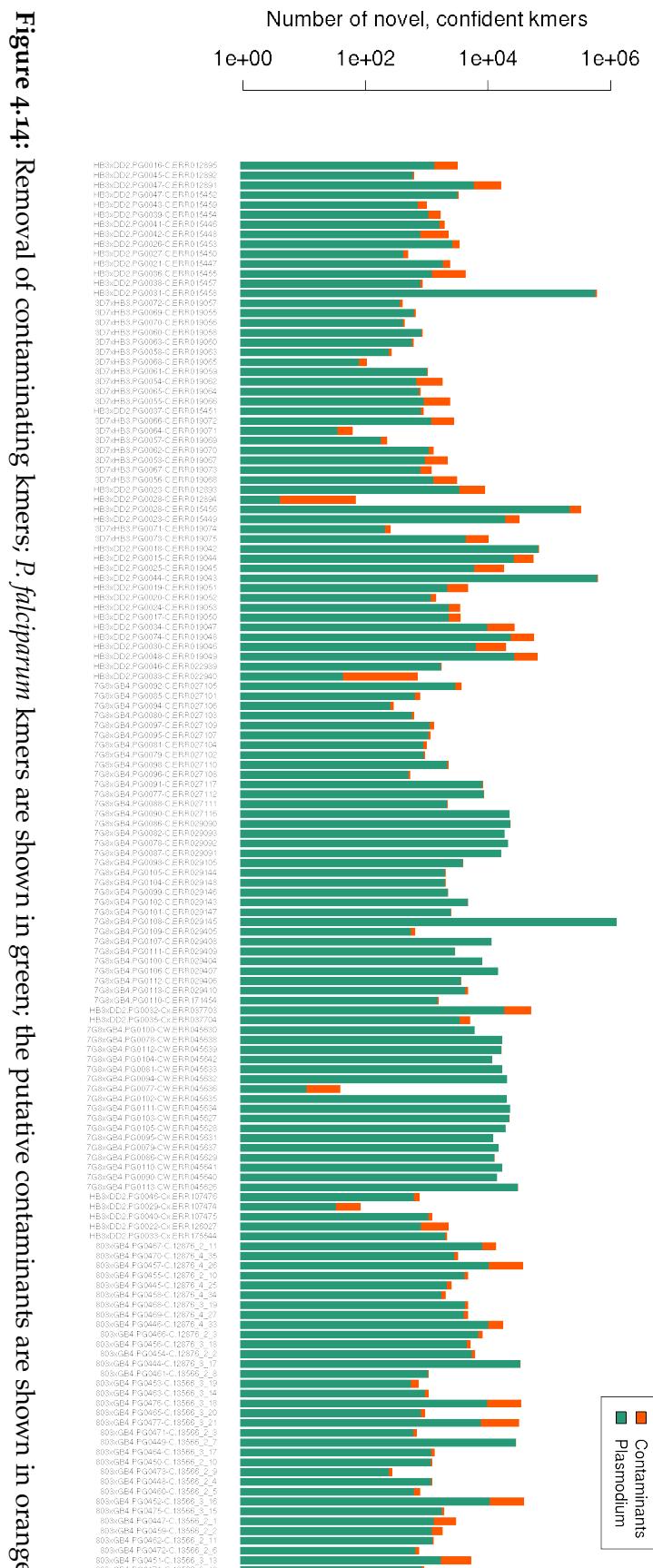
Many NAHR events are classified as "unknown". This is perhaps not unreasonable. Our classification algorithm for NAHR events (Algorithm 17) requires that the stretch have kmers from different chromosomes. However, if the stretch truncates early due to errors or homology, there may be insufficient genomic context in order to determine the chromosomes of origin, leaving us unable to classify the variant accordingly.

Table 4.2: ROC metrics on simulated perfect data

sn	sim	fp	fn	tp	tn	rc	sens	spec	prec	npv	fpr	fmr	fdr	acc
5	perfect	1	5	126	22240910	9	0.9618	1	0.9921	1	0	0.0382	0.0079	1
3	perfect	2	3	154	22200660	4	0.9809	1	0.9872	1	0	0.0191	0.0128	1
0	perfect	0	2	106	22241343	7	0.9815	1	1.0000	1	0	0.0185	0.0000	1
12	perfect	0	2	113	22233659	3	0.9826	1	1.0000	1	0	0.0174	0.0000	1
13	perfect	0	2	114	22217297	5	0.9828	1	1.0000	1	0	0.0172	0.0000	1
17	perfect	0	2	117	22242890	6	0.9832	1	1.0000	1	0	0.0168	0.0000	1
1	perfect	1	2	137	22249556	8	0.9856	1	0.9928	1	0	0.0144	0.0072	1
14	perfect	2	2	162	22196410	7	0.9878	1	0.9878	1	0	0.0122	0.0122	1
11	perfect	1	1	114	22207761	2	0.9913	1	0.9913	1	0	0.0087	0.0087	1
6	perfect	1	1	118	22203683	2	0.9916	1	0.9916	1	0	0.0084	0.0084	1
8	perfect	1	1	129	22229379	5	0.9923	1	0.9923	1	0	0.0077	0.0077	1
10	perfect	0	1	130	22238480	2	0.9924	1	1.0000	1	0	0.0076	0.0000	1
15	perfect	1	1	131	22208991	10	0.9924	1	0.9924	1	0	0.0076	0.0076	1
16	perfect	1	1	166	22213928	4	0.9940	1	0.9940	1	0	0.0060	0.0060	1
2	perfect	1	0	105	22225262	3	1.0000	1	0.9906	1	0	0.0000	0.0094	1
4	perfect	2	0	72	22210167	2	1.0000	1	0.9730	1	0	0.0000	0.0270	1
7	perfect	1	0	57	22225612	1	1.0000	1	0.9828	1	0	0.0000	0.0172	1
9	perfect	0	0	107	22255460	2	1.0000	1	1.0000	1	0	0.0000	0.0000	1
18	perfect	2	0	133	22242522	0	1.0000	1	0.9852	1	0	0.0000	0.0148	1
19	perfect	1	0	98	22236313	6	1.0000	1	0.9899	1	0	0.0000	0.0101	1

**Table 4.3:** ROC metrics on simulated realistic data

	sn	sim	fp	fn	tp	tn	rc	sens	spec	prec	npv	fpr	fnr	fdr	acc
5	realistic	4	2	123	77566161	7	0.9840	1	0.9685	1	0	0.0160	0.0315	1	
0	realistic	1	1	101	77516712	7	0.9902	1	0.9902	1	0	0.0098	0.0098	1	
6	realistic	2	1	107	77289511	2	0.9907	1	0.9817	1	0	0.0093	0.0183	1	
13	realistic	0	1	107	77362132	3	0.9907	1	1.0000	1	0	0.0093	0.0000	1	
17	realistic	3	1	109	77390562	5	0.9909	1	0.9732	1	0	0.0091	0.0268	1	
12	realistic	2	1	111	77440516	3	0.9911	1	0.9823	1	0	0.0089	0.0177	1	
16	realistic	1	1	155	77369055	5	0.9936	1	0.9936	1	0	0.0064	0.0064	1	
2	realistic	4	0	93	77425427	1	1.0000	1	0.9588	1	0	0.0000	0.0412	1	
4	realistic	3	0	65	77312705	2	1.0000	1	0.9559	1	0	0.0000	0.0441	1	
3	realistic	6	0	150	77296380	1	1.0000	1	0.9615	1	0	0.0000	0.0385	1	
1	realistic	1	0	133	77509177	5	1.0000	1	0.9925	1	0	0.0000	0.0075	1	
7	realistic	4	0	56	77445270	1	1.0000	1	0.9333	1	0	0.0000	0.0667	1	
8	realistic	6	0	126	77469034	3	1.0000	1	0.9545	1	0	0.0000	0.0455	1	
9	realistic	2	0	95	77503142	2	1.0000	1	0.9794	1	0	0.0000	0.0206	1	
10	realistic	1	0	124	77398963	2	1.0000	1	0.9920	1	0	0.0000	0.0080	1	
11	realistic	2	0	108	77422535	2	1.0000	1	0.9818	1	0	0.0000	0.0182	1	
14	realistic	6	0	150	77355056	7	1.0000	1	0.9615	1	0	0.0000	0.0385	1	
15	realistic	1	0	125	77435743	9	1.0000	1	0.9921	1	0	0.0000	0.0079	1	
18	realistic	4	0	123	77355144	3	1.0000	1	0.9685	1	0	0.0000	0.0315	1	
19	realistic	2	0	95	77480228	6	1.0000	1	0.9794	1	0	0.0000	0.0206	1	



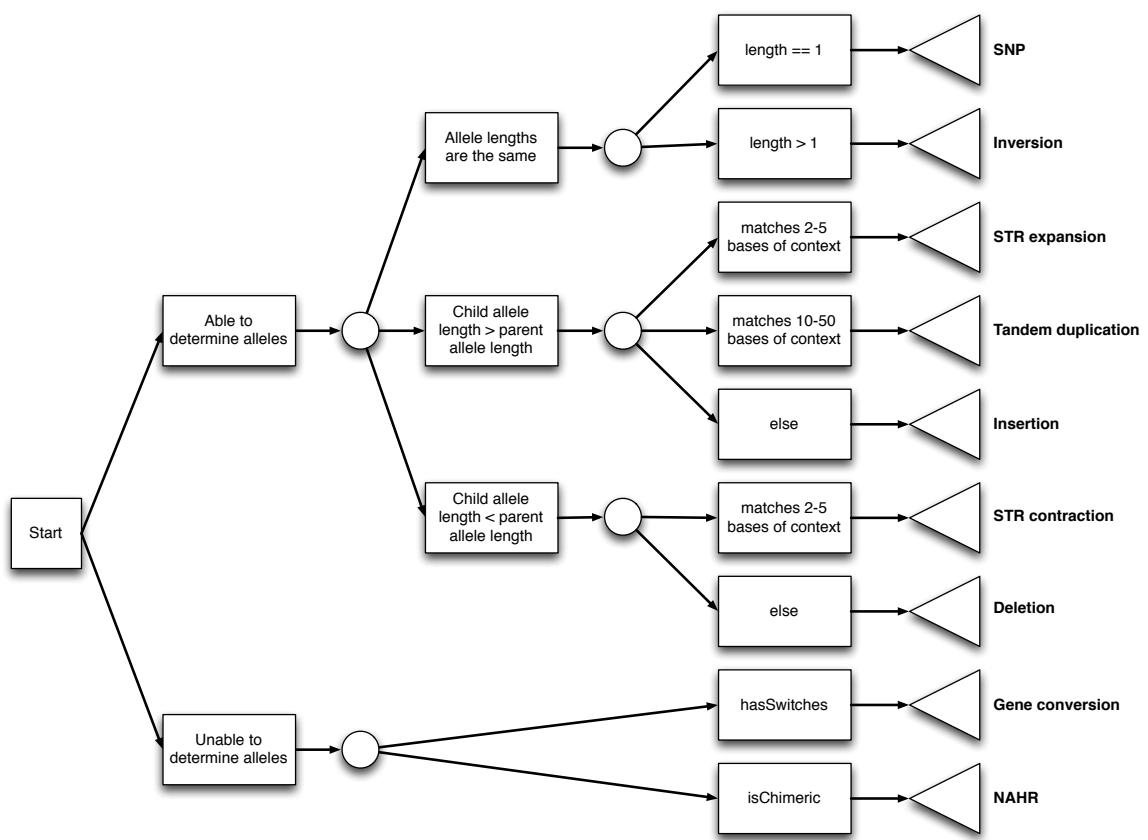


Figure 4.15

SNP	301	3	0	9	0	0	0	3	13	27	SNP
DEL	0	262	0	6	0	0	0	3	16	59	DEL
STR_CON	0	4	279	1	0	6	0	0	14	13	STR_CON
INS	0	0	0	320	0	0	0	3	10	17	INS
STR_EXP	0	2	0	1	242	2	0	5	32	35	STR_EXP
TD	0	1	0	2	0	220	0	0	8	65	TD
INV	0	0	0	6	0	0	123	5	110	142	INV
GC	31	11	4	3	2	1	0	15	3	15	GC
NAHR	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	19	27	NAHR
unknown	3	2	0	2	0	0	1	0	2	11	unknown
SNP	301	3	0	9	0	0	0	3	13	27	SNP
DEL	0	262	0	6	0	0	0	3	16	59	DEL
STR_CON	0	4	279	1	0	6	0	0	14	13	STR_CON
INS	0	0	0	320	0	0	0	3	10	17	INS
STR_EXP	0	2	0	1	242	2	0	5	32	35	STR_EXP
TD	0	1	0	2	0	220	0	0	8	65	TD
INV	0	0	0	6	0	0	123	5	110	142	INV
GC	31	11	4	3	2	1	0	15	3	15	GC
NAHR	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	19	27	NAHR
unknown	3	2	0	2	0	0	1	0	2	11	unknown

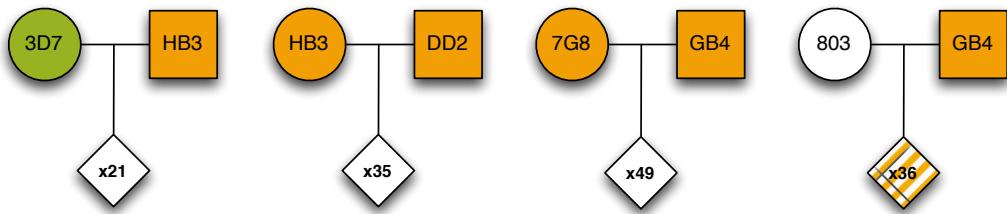
**Figure 4.16:** Confusion matrix for observed events (below) versus expected events (right), in simulated perfect data.

	SNP	DEL	STR_CON	INS	STR_EXP	TD	INV	GC	NAHR	unknown
SNP	282	1	0	12	0	0	0	0	2	41
DEL	0	241	0	10	0	0	0	0	1	71
STR_CON	0	2	240	2	0	3	0	1	0	15
INS	0	0	0	269	0	0	0	0	0	86
STR_EXP	0	0	0	3	202	1	0	5	6	59
TD	0	0	0	2	0	208	0	0	1	73
INV	0	0	0	4	0	0	99	1	0	280
GC	30	10	3	5	3	1	0	6	0	20
NAHR	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	9	41
unknown	3	2	0	4	0	0	0	0	1	48

**Figure 4.17:** Confusion matrix for observed events (below) versus expected events (right), in simulated realistic data.



## 5 Real data



**Figure 5.1:** Relationships for samples in four *P. falciparum* crosses, with the number of QC-passing Illumina datasets for progeny shown. Green and orange shading indicates the availability of finished and draft quality reference genomes, respectively. Orange stripes denote the availability of a draft reference genome for a single progeny, used as validation for *de novo* events. Gender assignments for the parents are arbitrary, intended only to simplify discussion.

IN THE PREVIOUS CHAPTER, WE DEMONSTRATED OUR *de novo* MUTATION DETECTION software on simulated crossings of *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria parasites. We now apply our work to real samples: short-read Illumina data on nearly 150 isolates taken from four separate crossings of six parasites.

No comprehensive catalog of *de novo* variation in these crosses currently exists. To date, the focus on the 3D7xHB3, HB3xDD2, 7G8xGB4 and 803xGB4 datasets has primarily been on discovering the genomic basis for phenotypic differences between the parents, and on characterizing novel antigenic forms in the children. However, the previous phenotypic studies have verified the presence of some large structural *de novo* variants - namely a handful of NAHR events involving antigenic genes. These known events serve as useful validation data for the most difficult form of variation for our software to detect. Furthermore, these previously observed events have occurred in low-complexity regions. These regions may confound DNA repair machinery and provide a substrate for the generation of *de novo* variation. They are typically considered outside the reach of reference-based analyses (which constrain themselves to the roughly 20 megabases of so-called "core" genome wherein divergence between multiple isolates is much lower and

**Table 5.1:** Summary of sequencing data for four *Plasmodium falciparum* crosses

	3D7xHB3	HB3xDD2	7G8xGB4	803xGB4
Samples	22	42	52	36
Samples QC+	21	35	49	36
Read length	76	76	76	100
Fragment size	$300 \pm 29$	$253 \pm 48$	$293 \pm 21$	$222 \pm 10$
Coverage	$99 \pm 38$	$121 \pm 91$	$110 \pm 40$	$205 \pm 106$
Platform	Illumina GAII	Illumina GAII	Illumina GAII	Illumina HiSeq 2000
Sequencing Date	2010	2009-2012	2010-2011	2014

short reads tend to align unambiguously<sup>81)</sup>, but may be accessible with our graph-based approach. Finally, the *P. falciparum* genome is small enough to be sequenced inexpensively on current third generation sequencing platforms, enabling high-quality reconstructions of the parental genomes and even one of the progeny. The parental samples facilitate DNM discovery, while the child sample serves as a validation dataset with which to evaluate our performance. These factors make the *P. falciparum* datasets a compelling study target.

## 5.1 Data processing

### 5.1.1 Initial data

We obtained short-read, paired-end whole genome sequence data for parent and progeny clones of the 3D7xHB3,<sup>7</sup> HB3xDD2,<sup>9</sup> 7G8xGB4,<sup>95</sup> and 803xGB4 crosses, generously provided to us by the MalariaGen project<sup>1</sup>. All samples were sequenced on Illumina platforms over the past five years using a PCR-free library preparation protocol known to reduce coverage biases associated with AT-rich templates. Avoiding PCR during library construction also removes the issue of replication errors that occur in early cycles being propagated to all subsequent copies, thus masquerading as *de novo* mutations. Across all four crosses, we obtained 152 samples prior to any quality control checks. The data is summarized in Table 6.1.

<sup>1</sup>More information, including links to the European Nucleotide Archive where the original reads are stored, can be found at <http://www.malariaegen.net/apps/pf-crosses/1.0/>. Note that while the 803xGB4 data we were provided does come to us via MalariaGen, it was provided to them (and subsequently to us) as a personal communication from Michael Krause, Rick Fairhurst *et al.* at the NIAID. It is not yet part of the public dataset.

### 5.1.2 Data processing for progeny

#### 5.1.2.1 Graph construction

We built de Bruijn graph structures from the available Illumina data for each child with McCortex's build command, using a kmer size of 47 bp and discarding bases with a Phred-scaled quality score<sup>96</sup> less than Q5. The "dirty" graph (raw graph structure before any pruning is applied) was cleaned using McCortex's clean command, allowing the software to compute cleaning thresholds automatically, and falling back to trimming contiguous regions of the graph with coverage less than 2 in the event that automatic thresholds could not be calculated. McCortex's contigs, while strictly speaking not used in our analysis, still serve a useful function in quality control checks. To generate contigs, paired-end reads were thread through the graph with the McCortex thread command and specifying a minimum fragment size of 0 bp, maximum fragment size of 400 bp, and choosing the software's (more conservative) one-way gap-filling procedure.

### 5.1.3 Data processing for parents

#### 5.1.3.1 Graph construction

Constructing the parental graphs was a bit more involved than graphs for the children as there were often additional data sources to incorporate. For five out of the six parents, we benefitted from the availability of supplementary draft assembly data from the Pf3k project. These draft assemblies were constructed using version 3.0 of the Hierarchical Genome Assembly Process (HGAP3).<sup>97</sup> Briefly, the pipeline performs error correction via the Quiver module, which aligns two-thirds of the data to the longest third, emitting the consensus base and recomputed quality score at each position. The corrected data is then assembled with a modified version of the Celera assembler,<sup>98</sup> an overlap-layout-consensus (OLC) assembler originally designed for use on long Sanger reads. While such reads were typically 500 bp in length, read lengths from PacBio RS II instruments are on average 10,000 to 14,000 bp in length, sometimes as long as 50,000 bp, two orders of magnitude longer than the reads used to assemble the finished 3D7 reference. This data

**Table 5.2:** Additional data availability for all *P. falciparum* cross parents

	3D7	HB3	DD2	7G8	GB4	803
Finished reference	x					
PacBio assembly	x	x	x	x	x	
Draft assembly		x	x	x		
Illumina data	x	x	x	x	x	x

helps in determining parental paths in the graph near variants with fewer ambiguities than Illumina data. Table 6.2 shows all additional data used in constructing parental assemblies.

Parental graph construction was performed on each parental data source separately following the same workflow used for the children’s graphs. The separate graphs were then combined into a single graph using McCortex’s join command.

For most samples, the finished or draft PacBio assemblies vastly outperform any assembly that could be produced with the Illumina data, and are an excellent basis for localizing events and determining their proximity to genes. However, as there is no high-quality sequence of the 803 genome, we were forced to construct one ourselves using the available Illumina data. After producing the cleaned graph with the McCortex workflow, we applied the software’s paired-end read threading and contig emission steps. The assembly statistics for all six genomes are presented in Table 6.3. The assembly for 803 is exceedingly poor compared to the other assemblies, as expected from short Illumina reads. That the total sequence length is more than 2.5 times larger than a typical *falciparum* parasite is artifactual and discussed further below.

### 5.1.3.2 Transfer of gene models

We transferred gene models onto the new genomes by examining existing finished and draft reference genomes and their annotation sets, selecting each annotated exon sequence from its corresponding FASTA sequence file, and aligning it to the new genome using BWA. For 7G8, GB4, and 803, we transferred only the 3D7 annotations obtained from PlasmoDB release 26.<sup>30</sup> For DD2 and HB3, additional separate annotations exist from the Broad Institute<sup>2</sup>. These undoubtedly contain better representations of genes divergent from their 3D7 counterparts (particularly antigens). However, owing to the poor DD2 and HB3 assemblies to which they are associated, the annotations are likely to be incomplete. We therefore chose to transfer both the 3D7 and DD2 (HB3) annotations onto the new DD2 (HB3) assemblies. This has resulted in a slight over-annotation of genes in these two genomes, as shown in Table 6.3. This happens when the gene models slightly differ between 3D7 and the target (e.g. exon end definitions differ by as much as a single nucleotide), but refer to the same gene. Rather than simply choosing one definition, we permit both to remain as the PlasmoDB annotations are continuously maintained and improved, while the Broad’s annotations have not been updated since April 2014.

---

<sup>2</sup>[http://www.broadinstitute.org/annotation/genome/plasmodium\\_falciparum\\_spp/](http://www.broadinstitute.org/annotation/genome/plasmodium_falciparum_spp/)

**Table 5.3:** Statistics on all parental assemblies

	contigs	min length	max length	N50	total sequence	genes
3D7	16	5,967	3,291,936	1,687,656	23,332,831	5,777
DD2	16	6,094	3,257,617	1,661,885	22,682,339	8,284 (3D7, DD2)
7G8	17	6,094	3,311,228	1,560,458	22,832,195	5,530 (3D7)
GB4	26	7,376	3,360,747	1,565,171	23,525,386	5,576 (3D7)
HB3	28	6,094	3,378,065	1,593,993	22,812,563	7,467 (3D7, HB3)
803	148,826	47	17,610	1,042	59,118,463	4,663 (3D7)

#### 5.1.3.3 Generation of visualization resources

We use the Circos<sup>99</sup> genomic comparison tool to generate whole-genome views of DNM activity in a sample's genome or in all samples from a single cross. To prepare these visualizations, we require alignments between the contigs of a parental genome and the chromosomes of the reference. For 3D7, DD2, 7G8, GB4, and HB3, this is trivial as nearly the entirety of each chromosome has been successfully reconstructed. For those genomes, we simply lined up each assembled contig with its 3D7 counterpart (at the resolution of the image, details of a true alignment cannot be discerned). In the case of 803, we aligned each contig to the 3D7 genome using BWA to derive the mapping.

Finally, we computed a number of sequence composition and complexity metrics in tiled 2,500 bp windows using the SeqComplex tool<sup>3</sup>. The full list of metrics computed is as follows:

1. gc: GC content
2. gcs: GC skew (defined as  $(G - C) / (G + C)$ )
3. at: AT content
4. ats: AT skew (defined as  $(A - T) / (A + T)$ )
5. cpg: CpG content
6. ce: Sequence complexity by Shannon entropy<sup>100</sup>
7. cl: Sequence complexity by linguistic values<sup>101</sup>
8. cwf: Sequence complexity by Wootton and Federhen<sup>102</sup>
9. cz: Sequence compression factor (the ratio of uncompressed to compressed sequence file size, using the gzip compression utility)

<sup>3</sup><https://github.com/caballero/SeqComplex>

These metrics were computed for each parental genome except 803, whose contig lengths were too variable to consistently satisfy the 2,500 bp window requirement, making comparison with GB4 cumbersome.

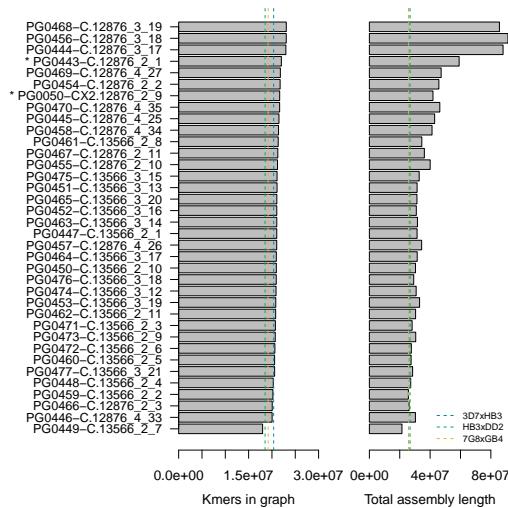
#### 5.1.4 Quality control

We examined assembly metrics on all of our samples in order to flag samples for downstream analysis rejection. We examined each sample for outlier behavior per cross in the number of unique kmers (total number of unique kmers in the graph after the automatic cleaning step - too few kmers indicate poor sequencing quality resulting in most data being thrown away) and contig N<sub>50</sub> (the weighted median length of the contigs - very short contigs may indicate high sequencing error rate). The number of samples retained for analysis is in Table 6.1.

One expects that a newly assembled *falciparum* parasite should have a similar assembly length to the 3D7 reference sequence, or at least the other assembled parasites in this dataset. While this is true for nearly all samples in the 3D7xHB3, HB3xDD2, and 7G8xGB4 crosses, many of the 803xGB4 samples, shown in Figure 6.2, appear to defy this expectation. Some (including the 803 parental sample) exhibit assembly lengths well above the 23 megabases we expect. Several samples have assemblies in excess of 40 megabases. This outcome is unchanged even when other assembly software (e.g. SGA) is applied. The source of this excess sequence is unclear, but contamination by an organism not present in the BLAST database is a plausible hypothesis. We note that during investigation of this phenomenon, an update to our BLAST database revealed a number of kmers from the *Pseudomonas* genus that had previously been considered "novel", as the kmers in question were not yet present in the database. The *Pseudomonas* genus is a family of common environmental bacterium, one of the leading causes of opportunistic human infection,<sup>103</sup> and around 6.7 Mbp in length. It is the subject of drug resistance surveillance<sup>104</sup> at many labs including the Wellcome Trust Sanger Institute, where our *falciparum* samples were processed.

For labs that routinely perform a lot of sequencing, it is common for samples from different projects to be prepared simultaneously, and/or for samples to be multiplexed to maximize the use of sequencer capacity, both of which can contribute to sample cross-contamination.<sup>105</sup> Assembly software does not typically employ contamination checks prior to assembly, instead simply processing any data provided to it. It is likely that any such contamination would have been assembled and incorporated mostly as disconnected regions of the de Bruijn graph - a series of vertices that do not connect to any other part of the *falciparum* genome. This might serve to inflate the novel kmer count if the child

sample is contaminated but the parents are not, but such regions are easily identified and discarded. Therefore, we did not treat inflated assembly size to be a QC failure.



**Figure 5.2:** Number of kmers and assembly length in the 803xGB4 samples. Vertical dashed lines indicate the mean value of the metric in other crosses.

### 5.1.5 Data processing for validation isolates

We selected a number of samples for long-read sequencing on the PacBio RS II instrument. As of this writing, two samples have been completed: PG0051-C (the 3D7 clone, useful for verifying assembly quality by comparison with the finished 3D7 reference), and PG0446-C (one of the 803xGB4 progeny). The former was provided by Susana Campino of the Kwiatkowski lab at the Wellcome Trust Sanger Institute. The latter was provided by Michael Krause and Rick Fairhurst at the Malaria Pathogenesis and Human Immunity Unit at the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease. Approximately 15  $\mu$ g of high molecular weight gDNA was provided for each isolate to the CSHL Pacific Biosciences Sequencing Service<sup>4</sup>. Sequencing libraries with an average fragment size of 20 kb were constructed for each sample and size-selected to remove fragments smaller than 7 kb and larger than 20 kb using BluePippin. Optimal loading concentration was determined by choosing a wide range for each of the first 4 SMRT cells and selecting the concentration that yielded the highest read yield for the remaining SMRT cells. The PG0051-C isolate was sequenced in late 2014 with the P5-C3 chemistry and assembled with PacBio's HGAP 2.0 software (assuming a genome size of 23 megabases). The PG0446-C isolate,

<sup>4</sup><http://cshl.edu/Research/PacBio.html>

**Table 5.4:** Assembly statistics for PacBio RS II data on PGoo51-C and PGo443-C isolates

	PGoo51-C (3D7)	PGo443-C (36F11)
Chemistry	P5-C3	P6-C4
SMRT cells	8	9
Number of reads	245,661	282,459
N <sub>50</sub> read length	12,968 bp	14,339 bp
Assembler	HGAP 2.0	HGAP 3.0
Average contig coverage	78x	94x
Polished contigs	34	33

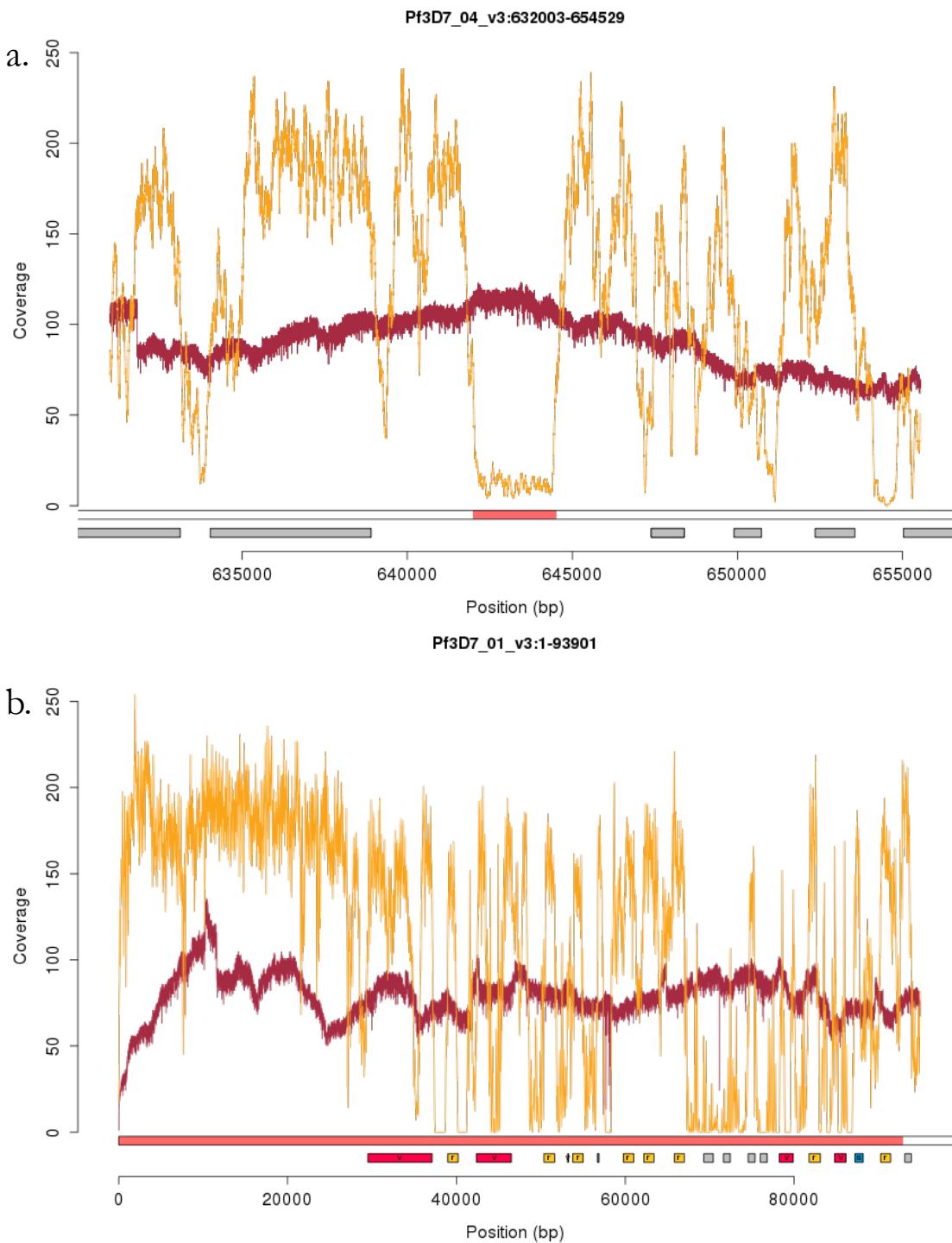
run 16 months later, was sequenced with the newer P6-C4 chemistry and HGAP 3.0 software with the same genome size parameter. Table 6.4 summarizes the sequencing and assembly results on these two isolates.

#### 5.1.5.1 Establishing assembly quality

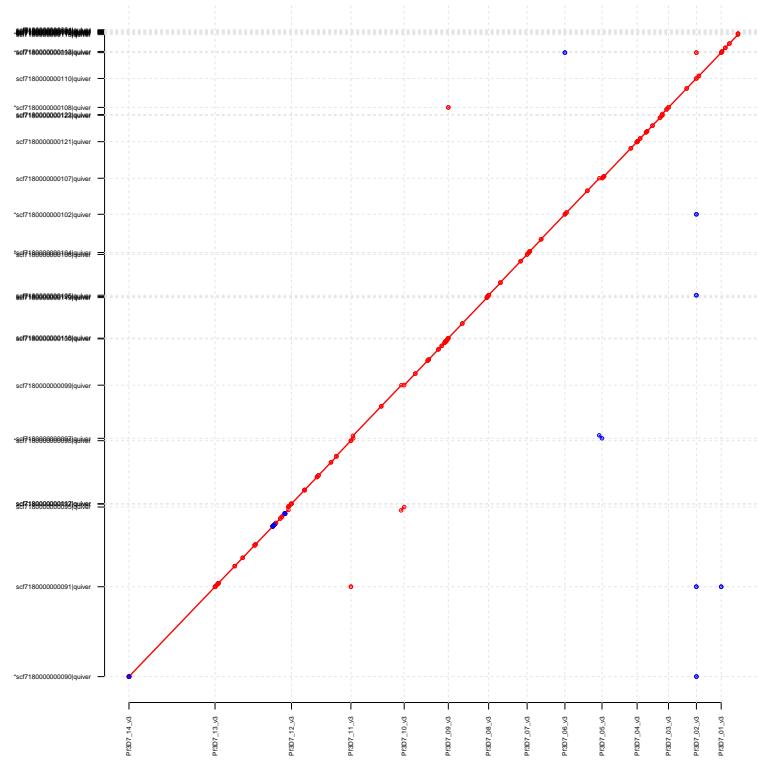
We examined genome recovery and access to massively repetitive sequence (subtelomeric and centromeric regions) that tend to be inaccessible with Illumina sequencing. PacBio reads were aligned to the finished 3D7 genome using PacBio’s `blasr` long read alignment tool<sup>5</sup>, while Illumina reads were mapped with the `bwa mem` tool. Two such regions in the Illumina and PacBio data for the PGoo51-C isolate are shown in Figure 6.3. It is evident that the PacBio coverage is roughly uniform across the entire length of the chromosome. In contrast, the Illumina coverage spikes and dips as it moves along, reaching zero coverage in many regions (especially the biologically interesting subtelomeric repetitive regions).

We compared the PacBio-produced assembly of the PGoo51-C isolate to the finished reference sequence by performing an all-by-all (contigs versus chromosomes) alignment with MUMmer.<sup>106</sup> The alignments are visualized as a multi-dotplot in Figure 6.4, an extension of a dot plot that depicts alignments as two dimensional matrices with target and query sequences on the *x* and *y* axes, aligning regions of the two sequences shaded accordingly.<sup>107</sup> Most chromosomes are assembled completely, and the overwhelming majority of the assembly appears on-diagonal (indicating successful one-to-one reconstruction). Elements appearing off-diagonal could represent misassembly. However, note that most of these off-diagonal elements occur towards the extremes of each chromosome. Given that the reference genome was constructed with Sanger reads substantially shorter than the PacBio reads, it is possible some repetitive regions have been collapsed or misplaced, contributing to this nominal error rate.

<sup>5</sup><https://github.com/PacificBiosciences/blasr>



**Figure 5.3:** Coverage for Illumina data (orange) and PacBio data (red) of the same sample: PG0051-C (the reference isolate, 3D7). a. Coverage over the chromosome 4 centromere. b. Coverage over the 5' telomere of chromosome 1. Genes from the *var*, *rifin*, and *stevor* antigenic gene families are highlighted and identified with a "v", "r", or "s", respectively.



**Figure 5.4:** Alignment of contigs from PG0051-C to 3D7 reference assembly

As we have sequenced DNA from the 3D7 parasite, any differences should likely reflect errors in the sequence. We therefore called SNPs between the two assemblies to find these errors. The sums are presented in Table 6.5, as well as the percent of bases per chromosome these errors represent. Overall, the SNP, insertion, and deletion rates are exceedingly low: amounting to 19,580 events in a 23 megabase genome (0.17%). The insertion rate is much higher than that of deletions and SNPs, perhaps due to the dominant insertion error mode of the PacBio sequencing instrument. All chromosomes appear reasonably similar in performance.

We examined the recovery of the 62 members of the *var* gene family by aligning their full-length genomic sequences (exons and introns) to the PG0051-C assembly using bwa mem. All 62 *var* genes were successfully aligned to the assembly (all had mapping quality greater than 0; only 1 had mapping quality less than 60). 21 were found to map with 100% identity. The remaining have, on average, 2.46 mismatches, 1.39 insertions, and 0.63 deletions. The overwhelming majority of indels are a single nucleotide in length.

It seemed likely that many of these errors occur in intronic regions where high repetitive sequence content might contribute to misassembly. We investigated this hypothesis by aligning the exons of the *var* genes separately and enumerating errors observed in

**Table 5.5:** Apparent errors per chromosome in the PGoo51-C assembly

	SNP	INS	DEL
Pf3D7_01_v3	119 (0.02%)	763 (0.12%)	291 (0.05%)
Pf3D7_02_v3	164 (0.02%)	475 (0.05%)	162 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_03_v3	272 (0.03%)	523 (0.05%)	290 (0.03%)
Pf3D7_04_v3	141 (0.01%)	856 (0.07%)	713 (0.06%)
Pf3D7_05_v3	111 (0.01%)	531 (0.04%)	175 (0.01%)
Pf3D7_06_v3	504 (0.04%)	731 (0.05%)	180 (0.01%)
Pf3D7_07_v3	194 (0.01%)	609 (0.04%)	320 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_08_v3	134 (0.01%)	597 (0.04%)	251 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_09_v3	61 (0.00%)	713 (0.05%)	259 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_10_v3	732 (0.04%)	810 (0.05%)	308 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_11_v3	310 (0.02%)	1,008 (0.05%)	459 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_12_v3	232 (0.01%)	1,202 (0.05%)	390 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_13_v3	231 (0.01%)	1,493 (0.05%)	409 (0.01%)
Pf3D7_14_v3	152 (0.00%)	1,309 (0.04%)	396 (0.01%)
Total	3,357 (0.03%)	11,620 (0.10%)	4,603 (0.04%)

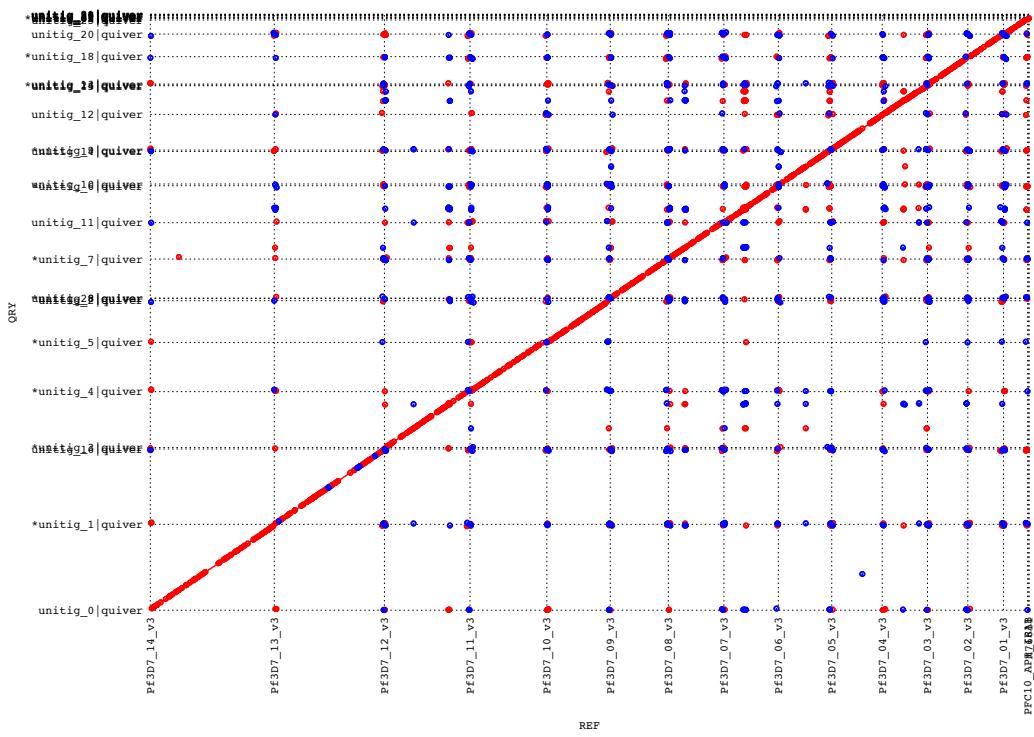
exons and introns. We ignored 11 genes with poor exon alignments (i.e. with mapping quality less than 10). 91.78% of the errors are found in intronic regions. In all cases, exon 2 of the *var* gene (the short exon) is base-for-base perfect when compared to the canonical reference.

Based on these measurements of the error rate, we estimate the quality of the PacBio assembly of the PGoo51-C (3D7) isolate to be approximately  $Q31^6$ , or less than one error per thousand bases. We note that this is a pessimistic estimate, based on the assumption that any differences between this and the reference assembly indicate errors in our assembly. In long, repetitive regions of the genome, this assumption may not be accurate.

#### 5.1.5.2 Preparing the validation isolate reference

Having established the performance of the instrument and assembler in providing a viable assembly for a *P. falciparum* isolate, we turned our attention to the validation sample from the 803xGB4 cross, PGo446-C. We aligned the isolate’s assembly to the 3D7 reference sequence using MUMmer, shown in Figure 6.5. Note that compared to the PGoo51-C isolate, the validation isolate has much more off-diagonal activity, particularly towards the telomeres. This is to be expected. While the core genome between isolates is expected to be relatively stable, tremendous immune pressure has forced the antigenic repertoire to diversify rapidly. These genes, primarily located in the subtelomeric regions, are the

<sup>6</sup> $Q = -10\log_{10}(q) = -10\log_{10}((11,620 + 4,603 + 3,357)/23,332,831)$



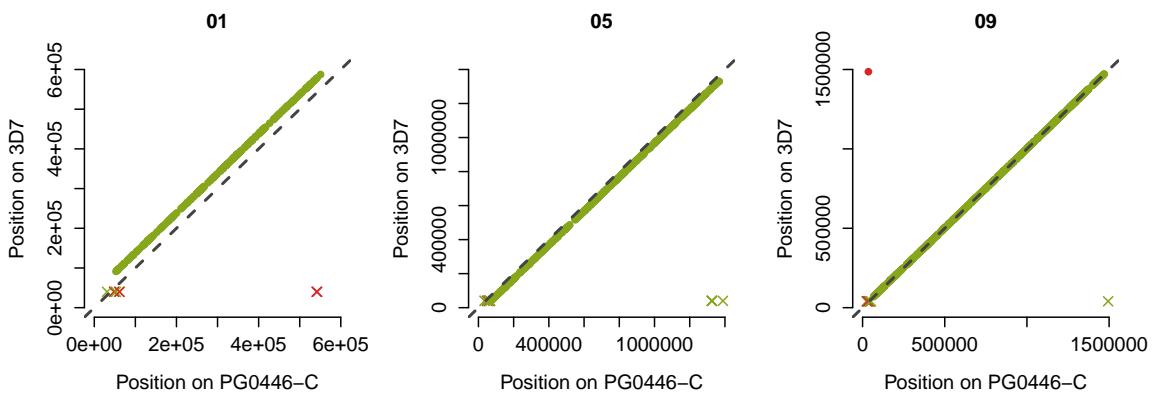
**Figure 5.5:** Alignment of contigs from PG0443-C to 3D7 reference assembly

regions that land off-diagonal, indicative of the extensive recombination and mutation history.

We relabelled and reoriented each contig as necessary based on the alignment so as to more easily establish genomic positioning of events during analysis. The assignments and orientation were further validated by transferring 3D7 gene model annotations onto the PG0446-C assembly by aligning each exon with `bwa mem`, operating under the assumption that the core genome is reasonably stable between isolates and that properly labelled and oriented contigs will yield exon alignments that match orientation and approximate positioning between the two assemblies. Figure 6.6 shows an example for chromosome 1. The vertical offset of all points is due to the fact that the assembly length of chromosome 1 in the PG0446-C assembly is longer than the reference length. Only exons towards the telomeric ends of the chromosome are misplaced, evidently originating from chromosomes other than chromosome 1. All other chromosome 1 exons are aligned with the expected position and orientation.

After chromosome identification, we observed a handful of contigs that could not be

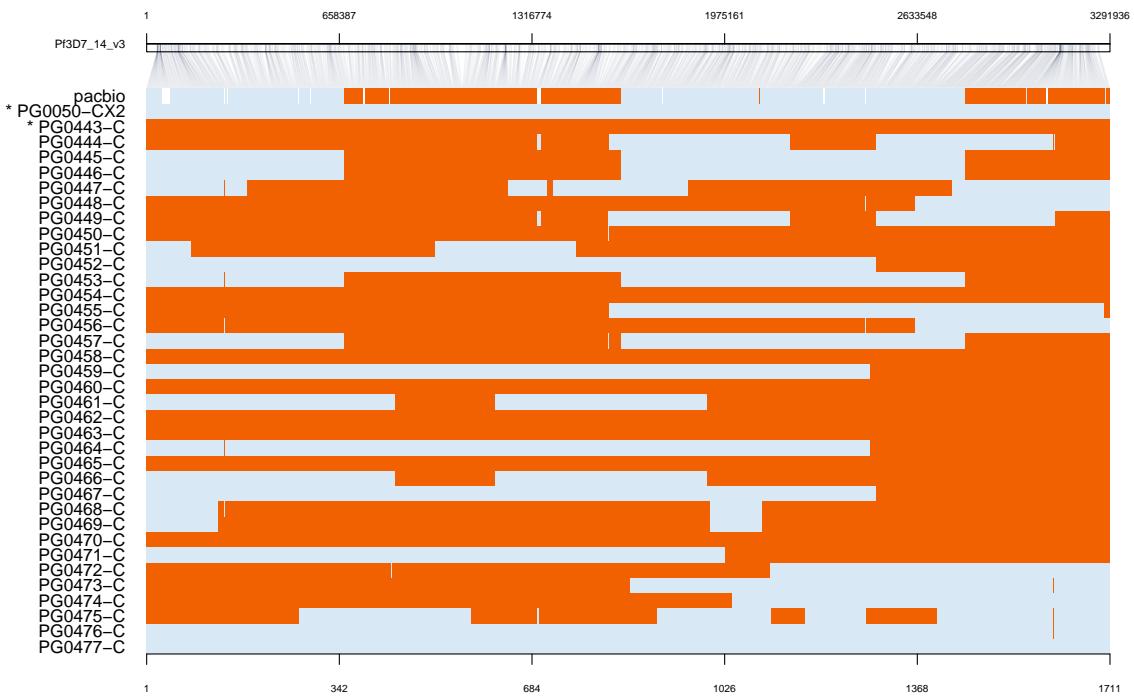
assigned a place in the nuclear genome. After running each unplaced contig through BLAST, we discovered two long contigs (thousands of bp) and nearly perfect hits to various species in the *Pseudomonas* genus. Discovering this contamination in the PacBio assembly and the Illumina samples strongly suggests the samples are contaminated at the source, contributing to the inflated 803xGB4 assembly lengths. We removed these contigs from our assembly.



**Figure 5.6:** Placement and orientation of exons from the reference assembly mapped to the PG0446-C assembly. Chromosomes 1, 5, and 9 shown.

We verified sample identity by slicing the PacBio assembly into 1,000 bp tiles (non-overlapping), aligning each tile to the 3D7 reference genome using `bwa mem`, and genotyping sites found to be variant in the MalariaGen 803xGB4 callset using the Genome Analysis Toolkit module, `UnifiedGenotyper` (specifying the genotype likelihood model to "SNP", ploidy to 1, genotyping mode to "GENOTYPE\_GIVEN\_ALLELES", assuming default base quality scores should be  $Q30$ , and providing the 803xGB4 alleles from MalariaGen)<sup>7</sup>. Chromosome 14 is shown in Figure 6.7. Note that while the PacBio sample's crossover pattern does appear to match that of PG0446-C, samples PG0445-C, PG0453-C, and PG0457-C also share the same pattern. This common pattern is observed for these samples on all chromosomes. These samples are almost certainly clones of one another.

<sup>7</sup>This procedure, while admittedly a bit indirect, provides vastly better results than genotyping the PacBio reads directly. The assembly contains far fewer errors than the reads, even after error correction. It is also much more straightforward than processing the MUMmer variant output, which uses a different file format to VCF, making comparisons cumbersome.



**Figure 5.7:** Haplotype mosaic for chromosome 14 in the 803xGB4 cross dataset. Parental samples are identified with asterisks. For remaining samples, alleles are color-coded according to the parent from which they are apparently inherited - orange for mother (PG0443-C, the 803 isolate), blue for father (PG0050-CX2, the GB4 isolate). Missing data (sites where no genotype could be ascertained) are shown in white. Bottom axis represents variant number. Top axis represents variant position along the length of the chromosome.

## 5.2 Comparison to validation isolate

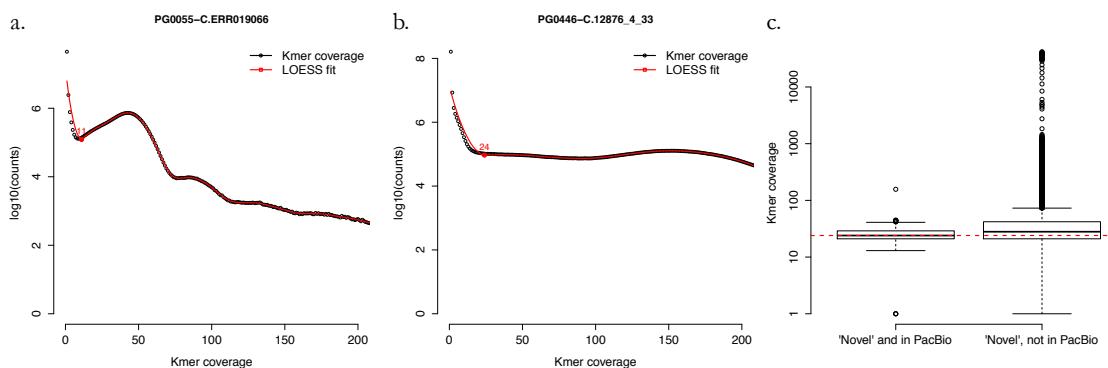
### 5.2.1 Verification of novel kmers

As we have demonstrated that the PacBio assembly of the validation isolate is high-quality, novelty found in the Illumina dataset for the same sample can be verified by examining the PacBio isolate. At the filtration levels of "all", "confident", and "trusted", initial processing of the Illumina data for 803xGB4 sample PG0446-C was found to have 28,904; 17,069; and 8,197 novel kmers, respectively. The PacBio assembly of the same sample recapitulates only 1,639; 802; and 48 novel kmers, respectively. The discrepancies can be largely attributed to three (not necessarily independent) factors: an over-aggressive lower threshold for coverage, no upper threshold, and significant data contamination.

The first two points regarding coverage can be observed in Figure 6.8a-c. The left-most panel shows a clear valley between the left end of the distribution (presumably sequencing errors, as they are so rarely observed in the dataset) and the first local max-

imum (likely real data). In the middle panel, kmer coverage in PG0446-C decays more smoothly, and it is far less obvious as to where the lower threshold should be placed<sup>8</sup>. In the rightmost panel, all novel kmers are shown, conditional to being present or absent in the PacBio assembly of the same sample. Our automatically calculated threshold is clearly set too high, as it is slicing through the middle of the coverage distribution for novel kmers recapitulated by the PacBio dataset.

Furthermore, the rightmost panel shows a number of coverage outliers in the set of novel kmers that are not present in the PacBio dataset. While their source is not immediately apparent, it is clear they have a large contribution to the set of novel kmers we examine; 1,057 kmers present in the Illumina dataset but absent in the PacBio dataset were found to be high coverage outliers.



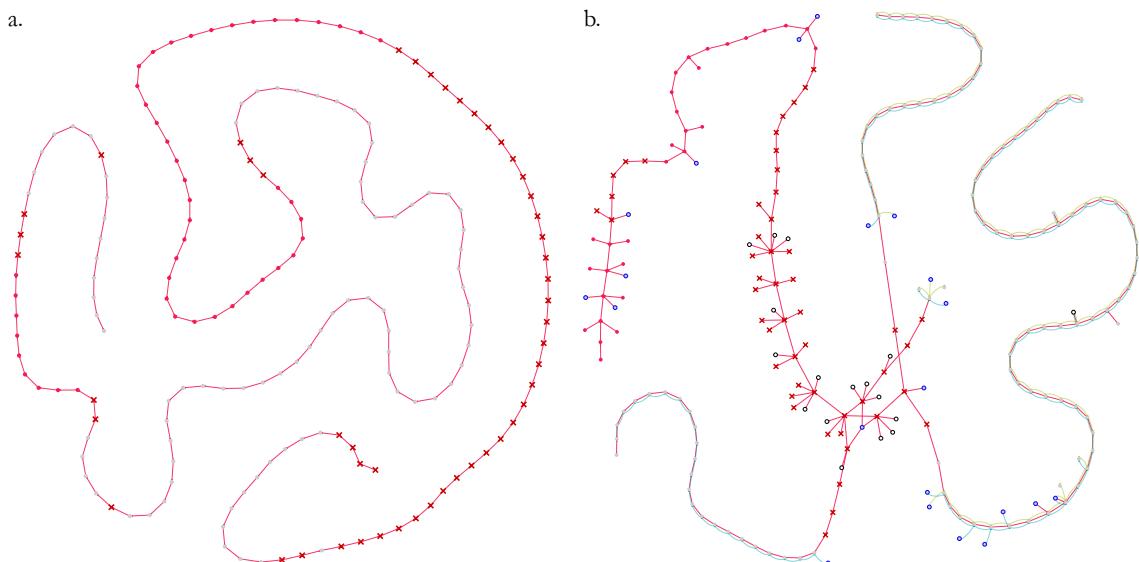
**Figure 5.8:** a. Kmer coverage in a 3D7xHB3 sample, with calculated lower threshold shown in red. b. Kmer coverage in the 803xGB4 sample, PG0446-C, with calculated lower threshold shown in red. c. Kmer coverage distributions for all novel kmers in PG0446-C, conditional on the kmer being present or absent in the PacBio assembly. Calculated lower threshold from panel b shown in red.

We investigated other potentially erroneous novel kmers: putative novel kmers absent from the PacBio assembly and with coverage between 10 $\times$  and 74 $\times$ . We discovered many of these novel kmers exist in branches that either never connect with the graphs of the parents (we refer to these as "orphan" branches, Figure 6.9a), or connect suspiciously amidst a number of putatively novel kmers rejected by the contamination checks (we refer to these as "bushy-tailed" branches, Figure 6.9b). Both appear to be symptoms of unrecognized contamination, owing to the fact that the BLAST database is not (and can never be) complete. In attempting to remove any contribution to the graphs from non-target sources, it is insufficient to discard only the kmers that appear in the BLAST database.

<sup>8</sup>It is worth mentioning that the PG0446-C sample, sequenced on more modern Illumina HiSeq 2000 platforms, likely enjoys a much lower sequencing error rate than the Illumina GAII used for PG0055-C, which contributes to our difficulty in automatically finding a reasonable coverage threshold.

Sequencing centers will always be sequencing new organisms, and the contents of the BLAST database will necessarily lag behind. Discarding orphan branches is straightforward, but incompletely treats the problem; the bushy-tailed branches erroneously connect with the parental graphs and must be removed as well.

Finally, we discovered a substantial source of erroneous novel kmers stemming from "overcleaning", an issue wherein some kmers representing true genomic sequence are mistaken for sequencing error and removed from the graph via the assembler's error-cleaning or error-correcting process. When this occurs in the parents but not the child (often due to coverage fluctuations), a kmer can appear to be "novel". To mitigate this issue, we inspect the child's cleaned graph and the parents' dirty graphs. However, a region of low coverage can also be flanked by regions of *no* coverage; there are many kmers that are likely present in the parental genomes, but unobserved by chance.



**Figure 5.9:** Local subgraphs in the Illumina data for PG0446-C near novel kmers that are absent in the corresponding PacBio assembly. Red circles denote "trusted" novel kmers (those that passed our initial coverage and contamination checks). Red crosses indicate "untrusted" novel kmers (those that passed our initial coverage check but failed the contamination check). a. An "orphan" branch: a series of novel kmers not connected to the parental graphs. b. A "bushy-tailed" branch: a series of novel kmers that appear to connect to everything, including the parental graphs, by chance.

To resolve these issues, we implemented a filtering solution for novel kmers in four parts. First, we implemented a manual procedure for specifying coverage limits, selecting a lower limit of 10 $x$  and an upper limit of 74 $x$ . Next, we implemented software to explore the trio graph starting at confident novel kmers rejected by the contamination filter using our condition-limited depth first search software. Explored branches containing novel

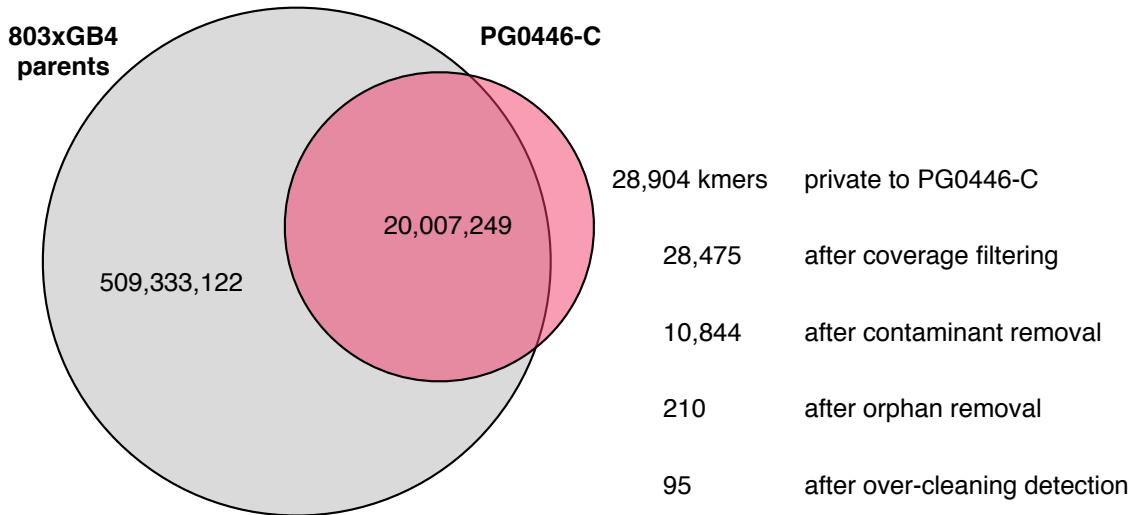
kmers that are on the same branch as rejected kmers are similarly tagged for rejection. Third, we explore the trio graph starting with remaining confident novel kmers. If the explored subgraph does not connect with the parental graphs in any way, the kmers in the branch are marked for rejection and removed from further consideration. Finally, we examine contigs with "overcleaned" novel kmers (i.e. any kmer that would be considered novel by comparing to the cleaned parental graphs, but is subsequently denied this label after examining the dirty parental graphs). Novel kmers found on the same contig are considered tainted and removed from consideration. Any putatively novel kmer surviving this battery of tests is considered "filtered".

The results of our novel kmer filtering are shown in Figure 6.10. 95 kmers survive our battery of filters to be considered truly novel sequence in the genome of the PG0446-C child. We called DNM<sub>s</sub> in the Illumina data using our graph-based calling software and discovered three events: two SNPs (47 kmers each) and a single kmer occurring in a repetitive region of a telomere; the precise nature of this single-kmer event is not clear. The PacBio dataset contains 51 novel kmers, 48 of which overlap our calls (one SNP and the unknown event). The other 47 kmers from the second SNP are not present in the PacBio assembly. However, manual inspection reveals this SNP to be polymorphic, possibly indicating a *de novo* mutation that has occurred in the sample during mitosis that has not yet reached fixation in the sequenced population of cells. It is likely that the event (shown in Figure ??) is a true variant, absent in the PacBio assembly as the Celera assembler is forced to make a choice between which allele to retain in the haploid assembly. The presence of the alternate allele in the uncorrected PacBio reads strongly suggests this is event is real and its absence from the assembly is an artifact of the assembler's bubble-popping procedure. The remaining 3 kmers from the PacBio dataset are not called in the Illumina data as they are low coverage (all at 1x coverage, all low complexity sequence, possibly representing recurrent sequencing errors in both the PacBio and Illumina data).

Based on the kmer recovery results listed above, our sensitivity to novel kmers is between 94% and 100% (depending on whether the 3 missed kmers are considered truly novel kmers or sequencing errors), and specificity is greater than 99%. Both SNPs and the unknown third event are recovered successfully. The two SNPs are shown in Figures 6.11 (A to G, 13 : 2,032,381) and 6.12 (C to T, 14 : 1,396,035, a non-synonymous substitution resulting in a T to I amino acid change). Figure ?? shows the third, unknown event.

### 5.2.2 Comparison to reference-based analysis

We sought to determine our relative ability to detect DNM<sub>s</sub> accurately compared to that of the reference-based analysis. As the release version of the MalariaGen callset purposefully



**Figure 5.10:** The results of filtering kmers private to the PG0446-C child

excluded *de novo* mutations (attempting to minimize Mendelian error rates to ensure high confidence in the inherited variation callset), we set about processing the Illumina data from the PG0446-C trio (PG0443-C (803), PG0050-CX2 (GB4), and PG0446-C) ourselves. Reads were aligned with `bwa mem` to the 3D7 reference genome, release 9.0 from PlasmoDB. PCR duplicates were marked with the `MarkDuplicates` program from the Picard suite; these marked reads were subsequently ignored in downstream processing. A list of genomic regions with reads appearing to span indels were discovered using the GATK's `RealignerTargetCreator` module (supplemented by MalariaGen's 803xGB4 calls as additional candidate regions to consider). We subsequently ran the GATK's `IndelRealigner` to perform the local realignments on these candidate regions. We recalibrated base quality scores using the GATK's `BaseRecalibrator` tool, once again supplying the MalariaGen calls as sites to ignore when computing the data error model. Variants were called across the PG0443-C, PG0050-CX2, and PG0446-C samples simultaneously using the GATK's `HaplotypeCaller` module, which performs local *de novo* assembly to determine the haplotype sequence at so-called "active sites", windows of the genome detected to harbor some sort of variation. For each approach, we specified a ploidy of 1. SNPs and indels were filtered separately using the GATK's `VariantRecalibrator` tool, supplying the MalariaGen calls as training data. We set the desired truth sensitivity to 99% (i.e. requesting that the recalibration tool learn filter thresholds such that at least 99% of the MalariaGen calls were recapitulated). Finally, we isolated putative DNM s by selecting sites confidently called in all three samples, where the genotype of the child differed from that of mother and father, requiring confident genotypes in all three samples (i.e.  $GQ > 90$ ), and sufficient allele depth in all three samples (i.e.  $DP > 20$ ).

**Table 5.6:** Callset metrics in the PG0446-C sample of the trio

	All	In MalariaGen	Not in MalariaGen	Core	Accessory
SNPs					
<i>all</i>	28,613	5,742	22,871	13,700	14,913
<i>de novo</i>	128	0	128	7	121
Insertions					
<i>all</i>	15,163	4,543	10,620	12,540	2,623
<i>de novo</i>	38	0	38	8	30
Deletions					
<i>all</i>	17,762	5,160	12,602	15,123	2,639
<i>de novo</i>	30	0	25	5	25
MNPs					
<i>all</i>	144	0	144	65	79
<i>de novo</i>	0	0	0	0	0

Callset metrics are presented in Table 6.6. Note that while MalariaGen chose to include calls only in the so-called "core" region of the genome (comprising 20.7 Mbp of sequence), we have included the accessory genome in our callset as well (the remaining 2.5 Mbp of genomic sequence spanning telomeric, subtelomeric, pericentromeric, and other hypervariable loci). For a fairer comparison, we have partitioned the calls into the core and accessory regions. Furthermore, in addition to the monomorphic sites one expects to see in a haploid genome for a *de novo* variant that occurs during meiosis or in one of the gametocytes, the trio contains thousands of polymorphic sites (23,004 sites where the reference allele and alternate allele have non-zero coverage, 4,364 with reference and alternate allele coverage greater than 10x). Both the accessory genome and polymorphic sites are easily removed. However, given that our graph-based approach is theoretically able to access the accessory genome and that we saw at least one polymorphic site in our graph-based *de novo* mutation callset, we chose not to exclude these sites at this stage.

We identified 196 potential *de novo* variants in the PG0443-C sample using the reference-based `HaplotypeCaller` approach and the filters described above. This is two orders of magnitude greater than the number of DNM s we found in the PacBio data. As expected, much of this putative variation appears in the accessory compartments of the genome, owing to the massive divergence between the reference and sampled haplotypes. However, even when we restrict our analysis to the core genome, we still find an order of magnitude more events than we expect.

We sought to establish the veracity of any of these putative *de novo* events. Assuming the child's underlying haplotype is the reference haplotype plus the variants discovered in that sample, we expected to find kmers spanning the DNM s to be present in the

PacBio assembly, present in the clean graph of the child, and absent in the dirty graphs of the parents. Revisiting Algorithm 1 from Chapter 1, we combinatorically generated kmers spanning all *de novo* variants and any nearby variants (including variants that were filtered out) that would affect the local haplotype. 30,360 such kmers were generated, 3,740 of which are present in our PacBio draft reference for the child. 3,547 ( $\approx 95\%$ ) of these kmers are present in the Illumina data for the child as well. 3,500 of these are present in the dirty graphs of the parents, suggesting that all associated events (195/196) are false positives.

The remaining 47 kmers represent a single SNP: the clearly homozygous SNP on chromosome 13 discussed in the previous section. This is the only event recapitulated between the PacBio dataset and these calls. However, we note that in selecting our coverage thresholds, we benefitted from prior knowledge. The coverage in the 803 parent is approximately  $30x$ , while coverage in the GB4 parent and the child are in excess of  $60x$ ; our depth filtering threshold was specifically chosen to recover this validated variant. The SNP is shown in Figure 6.14; the PG0443-C (803) panel shows the drop in coverage in the downstream intergenic region beyond PF3D7\_1350600. In this region, sequence complexity drops sharply, dominated by runs of As and Ts. Sequencing error may be accumulating in reads sampled from this region such that they fail to align back, thus contributing to the coverage falloff. Raising the coverage threshold would of course remove more false-positives, but there is no *a priori* reason to choose a threshold of  $20x$  versus  $30x$  (especially when average coverage in the 803xGB4 samples is around  $200x \pm 100x$ ).

The polymorphic variant on chromosome 14 is not present in the reference-based callset, owing to the fact that we instructed `HaplotypeCaller` to assume a ploidy of 1. If we genotype this site alone without the ploidy specification, we can recover the event. However, removing the ploidy specification does not mean allowing any ratio of reference to non-reference alleles at a putative variant site. Instead, the software simply defaults to a ploidy of 2, which is not necessarily a correct assumption to make for our data. The ploidy setting merely enables the caller to adjust its allele balance expectations, and revising it upwards increases the chance that the caller will accept sequencing error as variation. Thus, removing the ploidy setting would necessarily increase the false-positive rate as well.

We visually inspected the alignments spanning the false *de novo* events using IGV. Many of these sites were seemingly polymorphic as well, in close proximity to one another, and in known high-diversity regions of the genome. Figure 6.15 depicts one such example of false-positives on chromosome 2. It is possible to begin adding heuristic filters

to remove these events (e.g. rejecting events on allele balance, inter-marker distance, and the genomic compartment in which they are discovered). However, there are two very good reasons not to do so.

First, consider the underlying cause of these artifacts. The myriad inconsistencies between the Illumina reads for PG0446-C, the PacBio reads for the same sample, and the presence of many mapping quality 0 reads, strongly suggests misalignment. The true haplotype from which these reads are sampled are clearly not in the reference genome, but are similar enough that many reads map anyway, and the precise placement is a function of read length and repetitiveness of the sampled haplotype. When we align reads from this region in the child to the PacBio reference for the child, we find that most map to chromosome 1, not chromosome 2. Filters can only accomplish one thing: reject potential false-positives. However, filters can do nothing to address the root issue: the reads were sampled from one region of the child's genome and aligned to a sample too genetically divergent in these loci to serve as a useful platform for comparison. Application of such filters would necessarily require sacrificing any ability to say something meaningful about enormous diverse regions of the genome.

Second, consider what these variants in a haploid genome must represent: *de novo* mutations that have occurred while the parasites have been in culture and have not reached fixation in the sample. These events necessarily must have occurred during mitosis, as mutations incurred during meiosis or present in the gametocytes would appear in every read spanning the site. Filtering any events based on allele balance would necessarily mean discarding every potential mitotic *de novo* mutation<sup>9</sup>.

### 5.3 *De novo mutations in a single 3D7xHB3 sample*

#### 5.3.1 *List of mutations*

A single validation sample is limited in its ability to inform us on the efficacy of the graphical variant calling approach, particularly as it apparently lacks an NAHR or other complex event for us to inspect. We thus turned our attention to a single sample from the 3D7xHB3 cross: PG0063-C. This sample is known to harbor an NAHR event between two *var* genes: *PF3D7\_0100100* (situated in the 5' subtelomere of chromosome 1), and *PF3D7\_0223500* (the 3' subtelomere of chromosome 2). Their validated presence in PG0063-C makes this sample a particularly useful test sample for examination.

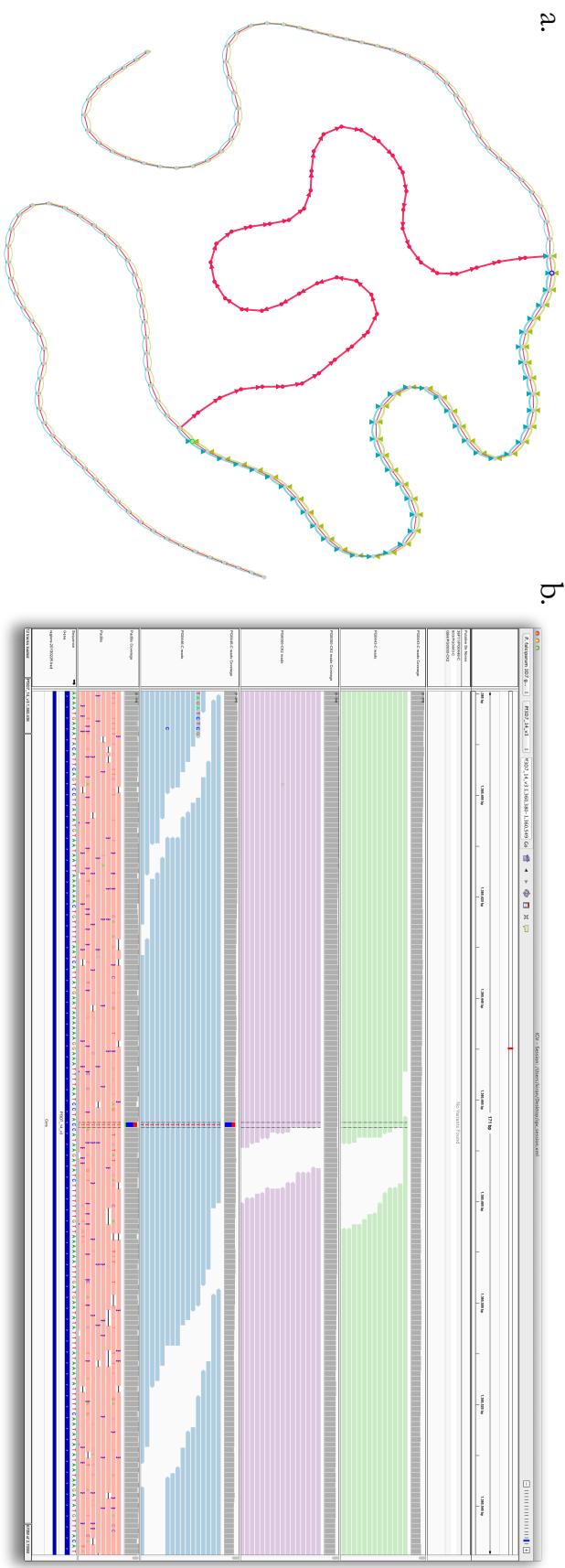
---

<sup>9</sup>In a haploid genome, every true variant presenting as seemingly polymorphic must be a mitotic event, but as some mutations could have reached fixation in the sample, not every mitotic event will necessarily present as polymorphic.

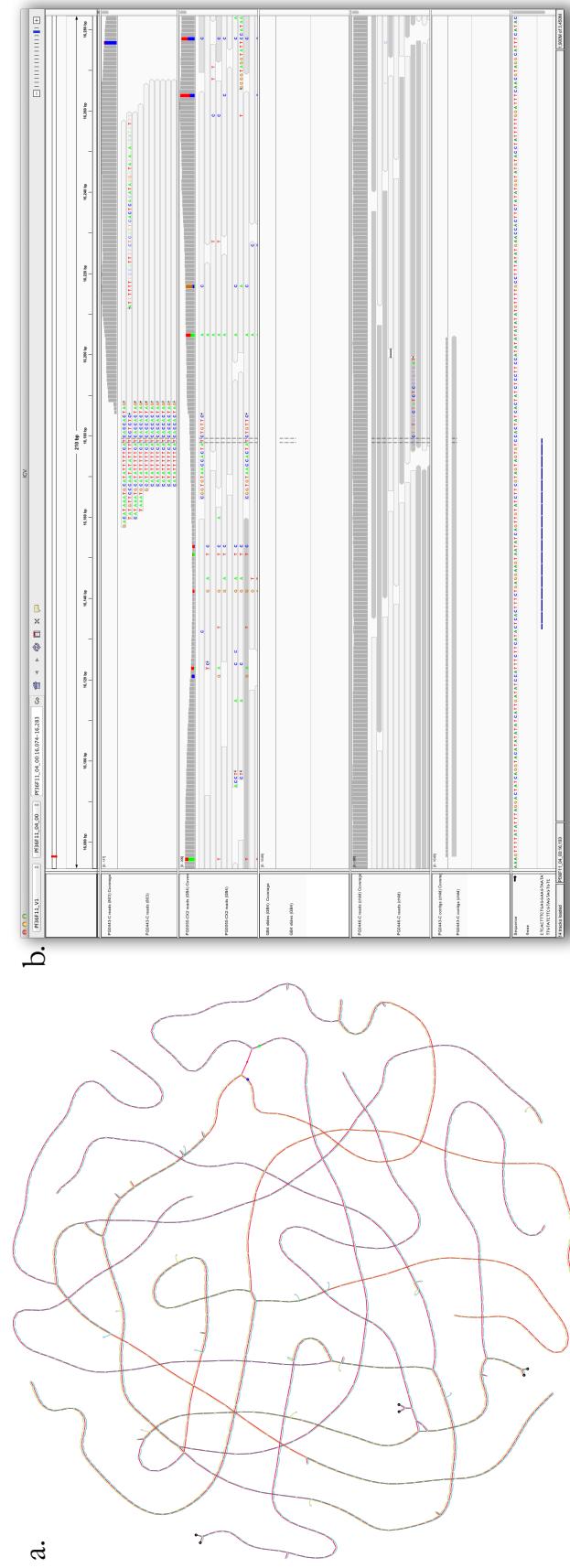
Applying our novel kmer identification software (and the new filters described above), we identified 314 novel kmers corresponding to 77 putative events. Post-calling filtration brought this list down to 7 events, described in Table 6.7. These events are annotated with the locus, the haplotypic background of the variant, variant type, closest gene (and the associated product), and whether the variant falls within the MalariaGen variant calling exclusion mask. The variants can be seen in their genomic context in Figure 6.16.



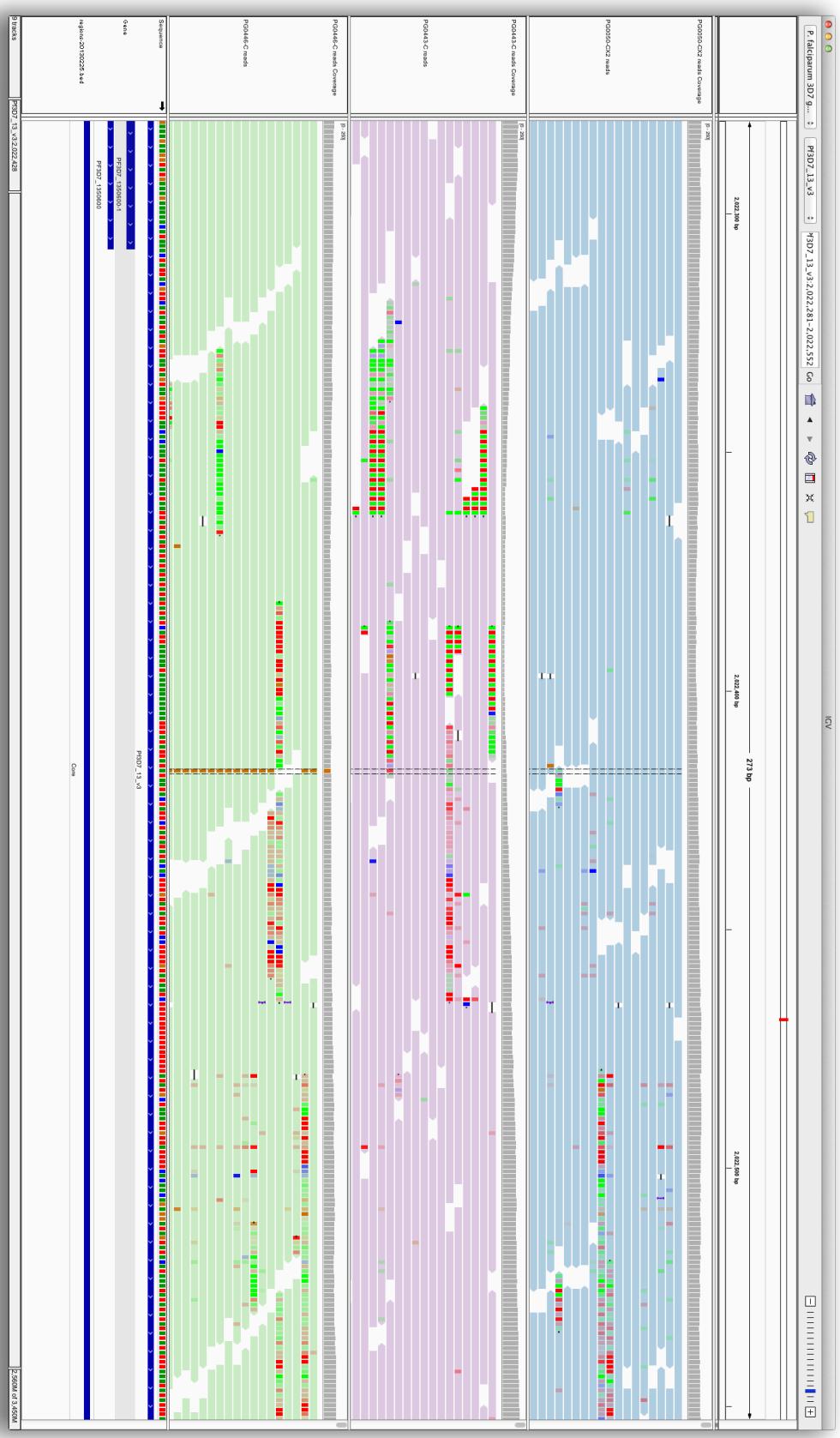
**Figure 5.11:** IGV screenshot of an A to G SNP, showing reads and assembly information for the trio, aligned to the PacBio PG0446-C assembly. Top panel: 803. Middle two: GB4 reads and PacBio assembly (sliced to facilitate alignment). Lower two: PG0446-C reads and contig containing the variant in question from the a panel.



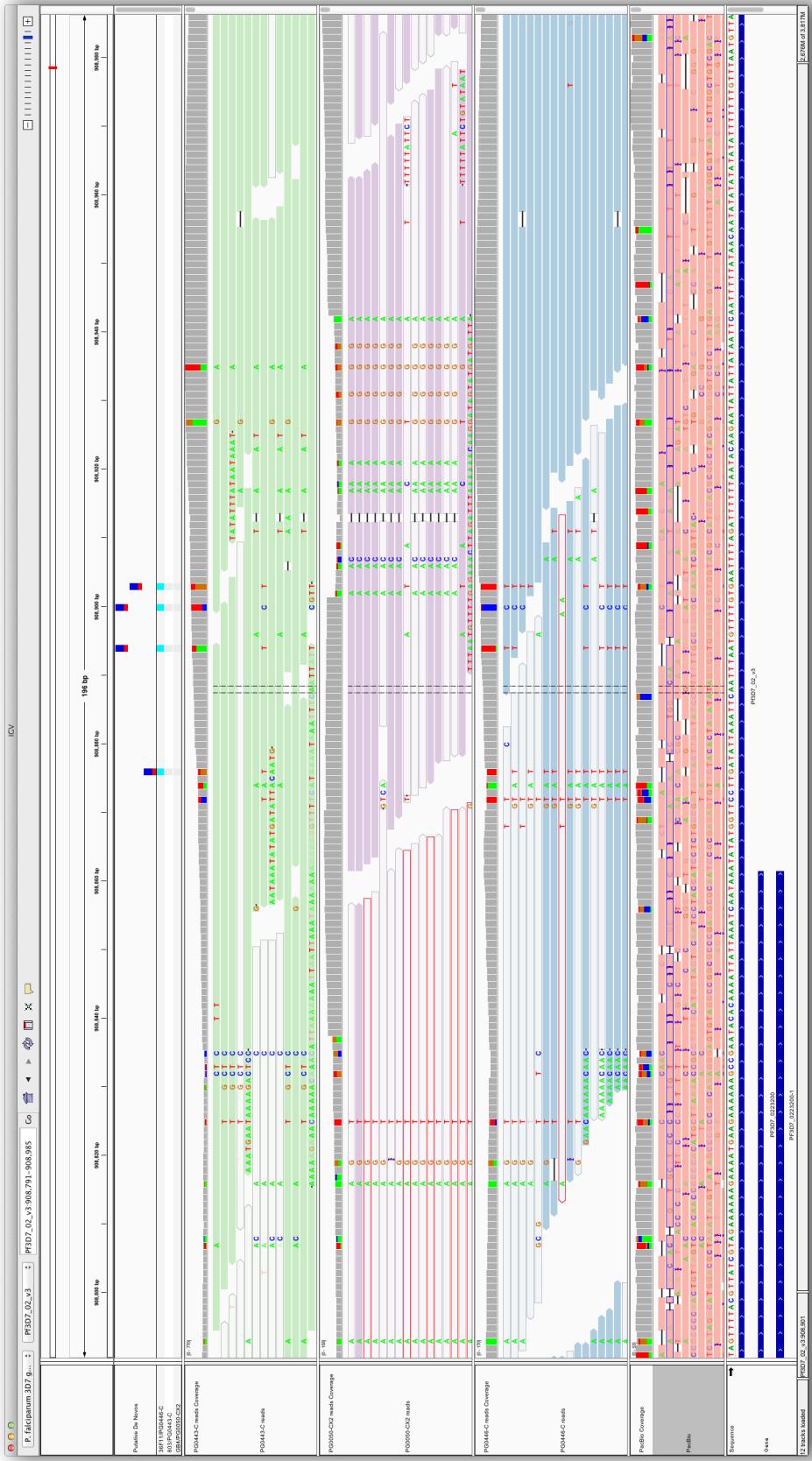
**Figure 5.12:** A C to T SNP that has likely not reached fixation in the sequenced population of ostensibly clonal parasites. a. Local subgraph at the site, wherein the child's graph contains paths that traverse the series of novel kmers as well as the parental kmers, indicating polymorphic status. b. IGV screenshot of the site showing reads and assembly information for the trio, aligned to the 3D7 reference genome. Top panel: positions of the called variants in the reference-based analysis. Second panel: PGo443-C (803). Third: PGo050-CX2 (GB4). Fourth: PGo446-C (child). Fifth: Uncorrected PacBio reads from PGo446-C. Bottom: gene model track from PlasmoDB 9.0. Stacked barplots above tracks indicate the proportion of reads supporting each allele.



**Figure 5.13:** A strange event involving a single novel kmer. a. Local subgraph at the site; the novel kmer in question is depicted as a filled red vertex in the right side of the image. b. IGV screenshot of the site showing reads and assembly information for the trio, aligned to the PacBio PG0446-C assembly.



**Figure 5.14:** A validated *de novo* SNP, recovered in the child amidst a great deal of sequencing error. Top panel: PGoo443-C (803). Middle panel: PGoo50-CX2 (GB4). Lower panel: PGoo446-C (child).



**Figure 5.15:** False-positive *de novo* variants in the 3' subtelomeric region of chromosome 2. Top panel: positions of the called variants in the reference-based analysis. Second panel: PG0443-C (803). Third: PG0050-CX2 (GB4). Fourth: PG0446-C (child). Fifth: Uncorrected PacBio reads from PG0446-C. Bottom: gene model track from PlasmodDB 9.0. Stacked barplots above tracks indicate the proportion of reads supporting each allele. Reads with ambiguous alignments are displayed in a lighter shade.

**Table 5.7:** *De novo* variants in 3D7xHB3 progeny, PGoo63-C

	locus	background	event	closest gene	product	within mask
1 (a)	1:27,780	3D7	SNP	PF3D7_0100100	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (b)	1:27,782	3D7	MNP	PF3D7_0100100	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (c)	1:27,854	3D7	MNP	PF3D7_0100100	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (d)	1:29,441;2:923,083	3D7	NAHR	PF3D7_0100100;PF3D7_0223500	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (e)	2:923,083;8:21,877	3D7	NAHR	PF3D7_0223500;PF3D7_0800100	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (f)	8:21,877;1:30,087	3D7	NAHR	PF3D7_0800100;PF3D7_0100100	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (g)	2:925,756;1:27,374	3D7	unknown	PF3D7_0100100;PF3D7_0223500	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (h)	2:919,850	3D7	SNP	PF3D7_0223500	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
2	2:394,194	HB3	unknown	PF3D7_0209600	transporter	no
3	4:568,395	3D7	SNP	PF3D7_0412700	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
4	4:568,401	3D7	SNP	PF3D7_0412700	PfEMP1 (var)	yes

There are several noteworthy features of Table 6.7 and Figure 6.16. First, we discover a variety of event types, including SNPs (depicted in the plot with large circles), indels (triangles), multi-nucleotide polymorphisms (squares), and NAHR events (diamonds). Few events could not be typed (small circles).

Second, we are able to localize all mutational events within the parental genomes, even if the precise nature of the event could not be ascertained. Here, we benefit from aligning the parental sequences rather than the child's sequence or short 76 bp reads. The parental sequences are often longer than a read length, and should obviously match the parental genomes more closely. This provides the alignment software more context and less variation with which to determine an appropriate home for the mutation.

Third, we are able to identify interchromosomal exchanges, including the known NAHR event between PF3D7\_0100100 on the 5' end of chromosome 1 and PF3D7\_0223500 on the 3' end of chromosome 2.<sup>108</sup> Curiously, there is another apparent interchromosomal exchange involving these two *var* genes and one on chromosomes 8. No such recombination is reported in the literature, and the event is supported by a very short contig aligned to chromosome 8 (< 50 bp). While it is conceivable that the NAHR machinery may switch templates to potentially involve content from a third chromosome, it is more plausible that the recombination process gave rise to a short region of low-complexity sequence that happens to occur elsewhere in the genome.

Fourth, we are able to detect mutations that occur in regions of the reference genome typically ignored in reference-based analyses. MalariaGen deliberately excluded a number of regions from processing, including repetitive regions (often telomeric, centromeric, or pericentromeric regions) as short reads could often not be aligned in long repetitive regions with confidence. It also excluded hypervariable regions (typically subtelomeric) as population diversity was too high to yield confident results in the reference-based analysis. As we are comparing each sample to a parental graph rather than a reference sequence that is an undetermined number of generations removed, our graphical approach can reconstruct and localize these events.

Fifth, our calls in this sample appear overwhelmingly concentrated in or near antigenic genes (8/9). Such a skew is unusual, especially given the fact that our algorithm is hypothesis-free and is not biased towards processing any particular region of the genome.

Sixth, the call rate is reasonably low; 9 events in this sample total. However, the first several events in the table appear to take place in the same *var* genes. Presumably, these events are all part of the single NAHR event. Counted together, the revised *de novo* mutation count is 4. Both are consistent with the expectation from the validation data that *de novo* mutations should be rare.

Subtelomeric regions (and the antigenic genes contained within) are known to be high in repetitive sequence. To visualize the potential relationship between sequence content and variant location, we examined a number of different sequence properties. Shown in Figure 6.16 above each parental assembly track is one of these metrics: the sequence compression ratio. Many of our DNM calls appear to follow closely with spikes in the local sequence compressibility measure. Quite often these spikes correspond with being in a masked repetitive region.

### 5.3.2 *Manual examination of all de novo mutations*

To establish the veracity of these calls, we manually examined all events in Table 6.7 in IGV and our custom graph viewing software.

#### 5.3.2.1 *Event 1 (a-h): NAHR*

The first event in Table 6.7 appears to be an NAHR event. Unfortunately, short reads are insufficient to capture the entire event in a single contig. Instead, we see pieces of the chromosomal exchange manifest as a series of SNPs, MNPs, and longer sequences that co-localize disparate regions of the genome onto a single contig.

The first three variants (1a – c: a SNP and two MNPs), are depicted in Figure 6.17. Upon initial inspection, it is not immediately obvious that the child's reads are sampled from the maternal or paternal haplotypes at all. Many apparent variants from the HB<sub>3</sub> parent are not present in the child. Several loci appear to be polymorphic. It is tempting to conclude that the results are indicative of sequencing error or myriad mutational events sustained in mitosis. However, given the repetitive nature of the locus, the presence of ambiguously aligned reads (shown in translucent colors), and reads with several mismatches, it is more likely that many reads sampled from similar haplotypes are simply misaligned to the sole copy in the reference sequence.

The local subgraph for these events, shown in Figure 6.18, exhibits a complicated structure containing several tendrils to homologous (but irrelevant) regions of the genome. Despite this complexity, two bubble motifs (drawn with thicker lines) can clearly be observed, encapsulating the first SNP/MNP<sup>10</sup> and second MNP. Inspection of individual vertices in the event reveals all kmers to be of nominal coverage ( $> 40x$ ), and the subgraph itself is devoid of any suspicious kmers (contaminants, exceedingly low-coverage sequence, or dirty kmers) that would be suggestive of error.

The next four events capture the NAHR event itself and are displayed in Figure 6.19. The graphical view shows a very simple structure, unmarred by indications of sequencing

---

<sup>10</sup>As these events are separated by less than a kmer length, they present as a single bubble.

error. Starting from the upper right, the child and 3D7 assemblies track along chromosome 1 until the child's assembly forks off, apparently passing through a few kmers from chromosome 8, rejoining at chromosome 2. Meanwhile, the 3D7 genome continues to track along chromosome 1 until it rejoins a region of the child's assembly (towards the bottom of the image). Here, 3D7 and the child fork again, with the child's assembly connecting again to chromosome 2. The IGV panels show the reads aligned to these regions of the 3D7 reference genome. In the *b* panel (showing the 5' end of chromosome 1), the reads appear to be sampled largely from the 3D7 parent until an abrupt change midway through the track (denoted by the red bar). Similarly, the *c* panel shows a region on chromosome 2 that supports the 3D7 haplotype over a window substantially longer than a read length (300 bp).

The last mutation seemingly associated with the NAHR event is a single SNP; the context is shown in Figure 6.20. A naive analysis would not assign *de novo* status to such an event as there appears to be some evidence for this allele in the HB3 parent. However, the left and right sections of the HB3 reads flanking the putative variant exhibit an extraordinary number of mismatches and are clipped off in the alignment. A small number of reads have mapping quality 0, indicating that the aligner had no confidence in their placement. While the 3D7 parent and the child are covered over this region to  $> 150x$ , the HB3 sample is only covered to  $20x$ , with many apparent holes in the coverage across the 200 bp region shown. Finally, the child's alignments are very clean across this region: no mismatches, no clipped reads, and consistent coverage. It is likely that the HB3 alignments are in error - a homologous region from another *var* gene have landed here because the proper haplotype is not represented in the reference. Our graphical method detects the mutation on the correct haplotypic background and calls it accordingly.

### 5.3.2.2 Event 2: unknown

Event 2 is an unknown event, seemingly localized to the 5' telomere of chromosome 2. However, examination of the subgraph (Figure 6.21) reveals the event in question likely stems from a graphical "tangle": a region of the graph where long, uninterrupted, singly-connected regions of the graph collapse into a messy structure wherein every vertex appears to connect to many others. The IGV screenshot for this region (Figure 6.22) shows a number of errorful reads spanning a homopolymer region. If these results are due to a recurrent error by the sequencer (sometimes skipping one, two, or many bases), they may occur slightly differently between samples and often enough to produce enough kmers to overcome the novelty coverage thresholds. This would give rise to a stretch of novel kmers near the low-complexity region that fails to resolve into a *de novo* variant.

One can conceive of a few simple checks to remove these events from our callset (e.g. walking the graph within a certain radius to discover potential nearby tangles). However, such regions may also be biologically interesting, potentially giving rise to small indels induced by DNA repair over those low-complexity sequences. Unclassified events are not harmful to us, as they will not count in measures of SNP, MNP, indel, or NAHR event mutation rates. They simply eat up novel kmers without assigning any identity to the kmers. For these reasons, we have not made strong efforts to filter them out.

### 5.3.2.3 Events 3 and 4: two SNPs

Figure 6.23 show the last events in this sample, two SNPs set 5 bp apart, and reveal an interesting limitation of our graphical approach. While our alignments of the parental sequence suggest these events occur on chromosome 4, no evidence for the events are found at that locus. A BLAST search reveals the proper home (barring a single nucleotide) to be on chromosome 1, within the PF3D7\_0100100 *var* gene - the same gene involved in the NAHR event described above. This locus is shown in Figure ???. The misplacement of these events are likely due to an error in the reference sequence. A single nucleotide error in the reference sequence prevents us from finding the true home of the kmers spanning the error. By chance, those aberrant kmer exist elsewhere in the genome: a *var* gene on chromosome 4. This misleads us into choosing the home on chromosome 1 instead. Thus, while the events are likely to be real, our placement is erroneous.

### 5.3.3 Rejected events

Post-calling filters rejected nine putative *de novo* events. These events were rejected for a variety of reasons: either internal use of dirty kmers exceeded a maximum threshold of 10% (5), the novel kmers were found at the extremities of a graph with no apparent connection to any other part of the genome (2), or the contig failed to align to any part of the genome (2). Most rejected events were of an "unknown" event type (no label could be reasonably assigned to the putative variant). One was a potential recombination event, but upon inspection of the data in IGV, a recombination event is not readily apparent.

Events lacking alignments do not visualize well; there is nothing to display in IGV and the graph itself is non-descript (potentially an unrecognized contaminant). An event with dirty kmers and an event with novel kmers without connection to the rest of the graph are shown in Figure 6.25. Notice that these filters are clearly not orthogonal; had the event with dirty kmers remained in consideration, it would have been flagged as a disconnected event as well.

#### 5.3.4 Novel kmer accounting

Figure 6.26 details the cumulative usage of novel kmers in the PGoo63-C sample. Of the 314 novel kmers detected, 154 were discarded as part of events suspected not to be true mutational events. The remaining 160 are present in mutational events passing filters. 156/160 (97.5%) of novel kmers could be assigned to a definable mutational type.

### 5.4 *De novo mutations in all crosses and samples*

#### 5.4.1 Novel kmer use

We applied our software to determine the number of novel kmers in all samples and all crosses. These per-sample counts are shown in Figure 6.27. Counts are largely consistent across samples and crosses, typically ranging from a few hundred to a few thousand novel kmers. Notably, the 803xGB4 samples have substantially more novel kmers than the other crosses. While the median number of novel kmers per sample in the 3D7xHB3, HB3xDD2, and 7G8xGB4 crosses are 340, 278, and 173 respectively, the median count in the 803xGB4 cross is 1,650 with a very large variance. Given that we've seen the larger-than-expected assembly lengths and a tremendous amount of data contamination, it seems likely that this excess is due to incomplete mitigation of those factors via our filtration process. Rather than the samples harboring a vast amount of *de novo* mutation activity, we expect to find a large fraction of calls in these samples to be unclassifiable.

Next, we applied our DNM calling software to all samples. To see how many of the novel kmers were explained by variants passing filters, unknown events passing filters, or events failing filters, we superimposed the variant calls' novel kmer usage atop the total number of novel kmers per sample. As evident in Figure 6.28, there is substantial variation between samples. As predicted, many of the 803xGB4 variants are unclassified. The median fraction of kmers explained by definable variants passing filters is a mere 29%, but when events failing filters are removed from consideration, this number jumps to 70% of novel kmers explained.

#### 5.4.2 Variants per sample and cross

Within each sample, we removed allelic variants appearing within the same gene as an NAHR event since, as we saw in the previous section, partial recovery of NAHR events can lead to erroneous accounting of the true mutation rates. This rejects 211 additional events, leaving us with 7,193 that pass filters.

The monomorphic and polymorphic variants per sample and cross are summarized in Tables 6.8 and 6.9. Behavior is largely consistent between samples and crosses. Typically,

**Table 5.8:** Monomorphic variants and rates of occurrence per cross and per sample

	3D7xHB3	HB3xDD2	7G8xGB4	803xGB4
Samples	20	36	26	33
SNP	26 (1.37 ± 1.07)	45 (0.97 ± 1.43)	77 (1.05 ± 1.38)	187 (1.34 ± 1.42)
Insertions	3 (0.00 ± 0.00)	15 (0.38 ± 0.61)	13 (0.00 ± 0.00)	33 (0.52 ± 0.69)
<i>STR expansion</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	8 (0.00 ± 0.00)	8 (0.00 ± 0.00)	25 (0.45 ± 0.51)
<i>Tandem duplication</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	2 (0.00 ± 0.00)	3 (0.00 ± 0.00)	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Other</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	5 (0.00 ± 0.00)	2 (0.00 ± 0.00)	7 (0.00 ± 0.00)
Deletions	5 (0.26 ± 0.45)	35 (1.06 ± 1.14)	39 (0.66 ± 0.73)	41 (0.63 ± 0.67)
<i>STR contraction</i>	4 (0.00 ± 0.00)	13 (0.39 ± 0.61)	18 (0.28 ± 0.55)	17 (0.42 ± 0.66)
<i>Other</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	22 (0.43 ± 0.68)	21 (0.41 ± 0.58)	24 (0.44 ± 0.56)
MNP	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	17 (0.31 ± 0.59)	15 (0.00 ± 0.00)	50 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Inversion</i>	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Other</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	17 (0.31 ± 0.59)	15 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)
NAHR	6 (0.00 ± 0.00)	13 (0.00 ± 0.00)	4 (0.00 ± 0.00)	15 (0.00 ± 0.00)
Recombination	6 (0.00 ± 0.00)	32 (0.00 ± 0.00)	19 (0.42 ± 0.58)	59 (0.54 ± 0.58)
unknown	21 (0.00 ± 0.00)	828 (0.00 ± 0.00)	1548 (0.00 ± 0.00)	1513 (0.00 ± 0.00)

each sample harbors only one or two monomorphic variants (presumably accumulated prior to or during meiosis), and fewer polymorphic variants (presumably accumulated during mitosis). SNPs are the most common variant, followed by deletion events. Insertions and multinucleotide polymorphisms occur rarely. We detect no inversions.

At first glance, the 803xGB4 cross seems to harbor an unusual amount of NAHR activity. However, we believe skepticism is warranted for this type of variant in this cross. The key to detecting NAHR events is determining that many kmers co-localize on the same contig in the child but originate from different chromosomes in the parent. With a poor 803 parental assembly constructed from short Illumina reads, many events may span multiple parental contigs but be part of the same chromosome. A possible solution would be to align these parental contigs to the 3D7 reference and apply heuristics, rejecting any event where different contigs involved in the event align to the same chromosome. However, this solution is not necessarily workable. The assembled contigs are short, and the divergence between 803 and 3D7 is very high, particularly in the subtelomeric regions where true events almost certainly originate. Therefore, alignment of the parental contigs to the 3D7 reference is not expected to solve the problem. We have initiated an effort to have the 803 parent sequenced on PacBio instruments. At of this writing, such data is not expected to be available for several months.

**Table 5.9:** Polymorphic variants and rates of occurrence per cross and per sample

	<i>3D7xHB3</i>	<i>HB3xDD2</i>	<i>7G8xGB4</i>	<i>803xGB4</i>
Samples	20	36	26	33
SNP	11 (0.00 ± 0.00)	96 (0.38 ± 0.73)	149 (0.62 ± 1.14)	207 (1.66 ± 2.02)
Insertions	2 (0.00 ± 0.00)	16 (0.00 ± 0.00)	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	35 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>STR expansion</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	30 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Tandem duplication</i>	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	2 (0.00 ± 0.00)	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	4 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Other</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	14 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)
Deletions	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	17 (0.00 ± 0.00)	10 (0.00 ± 0.00)	214 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>STR contraction</i>	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	7 (0.00 ± 0.00)	8 (0.00 ± 0.00)	71 (0.17 ± 0.38)
<i>Other</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	10 (0.00 ± 0.00)	2 (0.00 ± 0.00)	143 (0.28 ± 0.59)
MNP	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	11 (0.00 ± 0.00)	34 (0.00 ± 0.00)	31 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Inversion</i>	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Other</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	34 (0.00 ± 0.00)	31 (0.00 ± 0.00)
NAHR	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)
Recombination	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	2 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)

#### 5.4.3 Manual examination of every event in the *3D7xHB3* cross

To estimate a false discovery rate, we manually examined all 83 monomorphic and polymorphic events in the *3D7xHB3* cross using our graph visualization software and IGV. 50/83 events appear to have clear support in both visualizations. The vast majority of these events are so-called bubble-motif variants, with the exception of the NAHR event in PG0063-C and an unknown event (a misclassification - an event is called in the correct location, but upon closer inspection, appears to be two biallelic SNPs in close proximity, confusing the calling software). Another 12 events had uncertain validation status; one was a putative NAHR event, another was a recombination event, two were polymorphic variants, and the remaining 8 could not be typed. Finally, 25 events were clear false-positives owing to various issues (e.g. proximity to a repetitive region or otherwise appearing artifactual). The bulk of such events could not be typed (12) or were non-bubble-motif (7). It was rare for bubble-motif variants to manifest as false-positives; occurring for a single insertion and 5 SNPs. In the case of the SNPs, all false-positives appeared as a result of misclassifying an inherited event as *de novo* due to the mutations' proximity to another event - usually a polymorphic variant. The polymorphic event makes it appear that the haplotypic background of the variant is different from the true background which contains the SNP. Thus, when our caller goes to examine the evidence, it finds novel kmers due to the polymorphic event, finds the inherited mutation in close proximity, misassociates the two, and calls the variant.

Ignoring untyped events and pessimistically assuming that any event with uncertain

validation status was false, we estimate our FDR to be 18/68, or approximately 26%. However, we should expect that NAHR and recombination events carry a much higher false-positive rate and drive the bulk of this estimate. After removing these events from consideration, we find our FDR is 9/54, or approximately 16%.

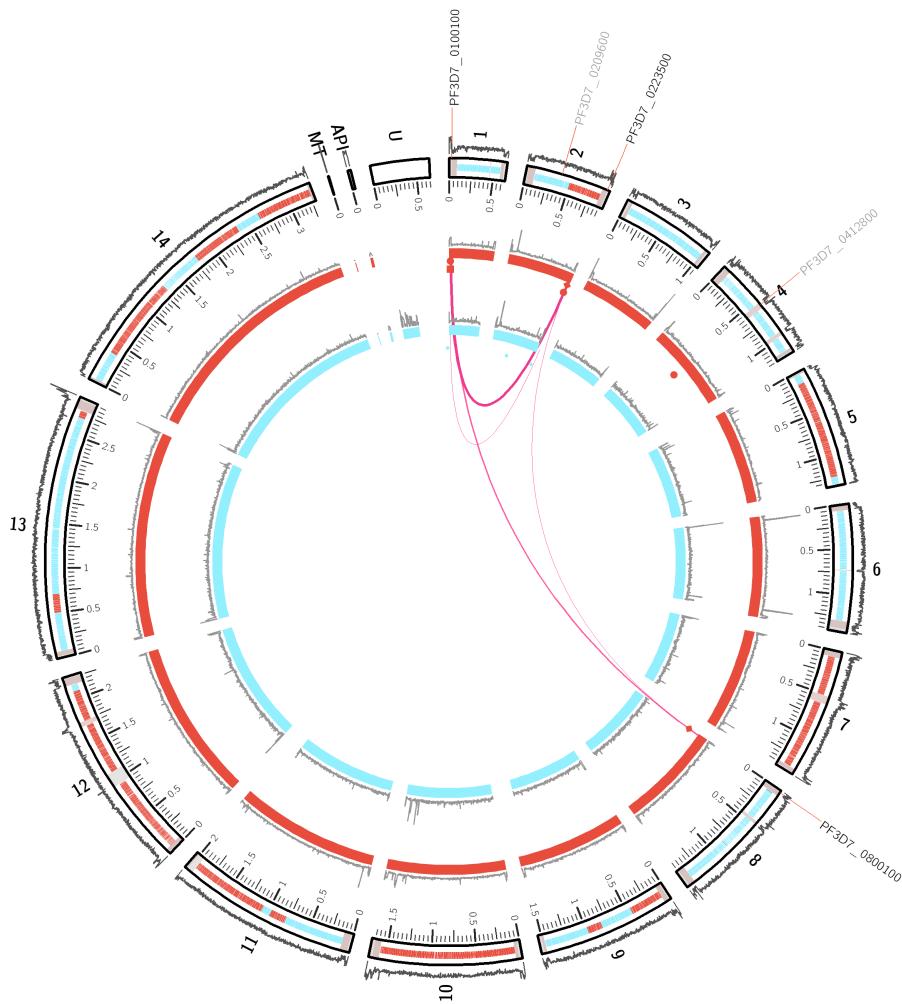
#### 5.4.4 Recovery of published *var* gene recombinations

The underlying dataset for our study was partially available to Claessens *et al.* at the time of their study. In their reference-based work, Claessens *et al.* identified many *var* gene recombinations involving exon 1, including subtelomeric members and centrally-located members of the gene family. As core *var* gene recombinations have not been reported in the past, we sought to confirm these events with our reference-free methods. The calls from Claessens *et al.* and our study are summarized in Table 6.10. Of the 12 calls they make in the shared 3D7xHB3 and HB3xDD2 samples, a single event is recapitulated by our graphical method: the well-known PGoo63-C event. 6 more of their events find no visual support in our reference-free kmer accounting method, which would otherwise indicate some sort of structural variant activity (even it is unable to prove that the event occurred between two specific genes in question). 3 more events do show some signs of NAHR activity, but not between the genes listed by Claessens *et al.*. No recombinations between core *var* genes validate visually.

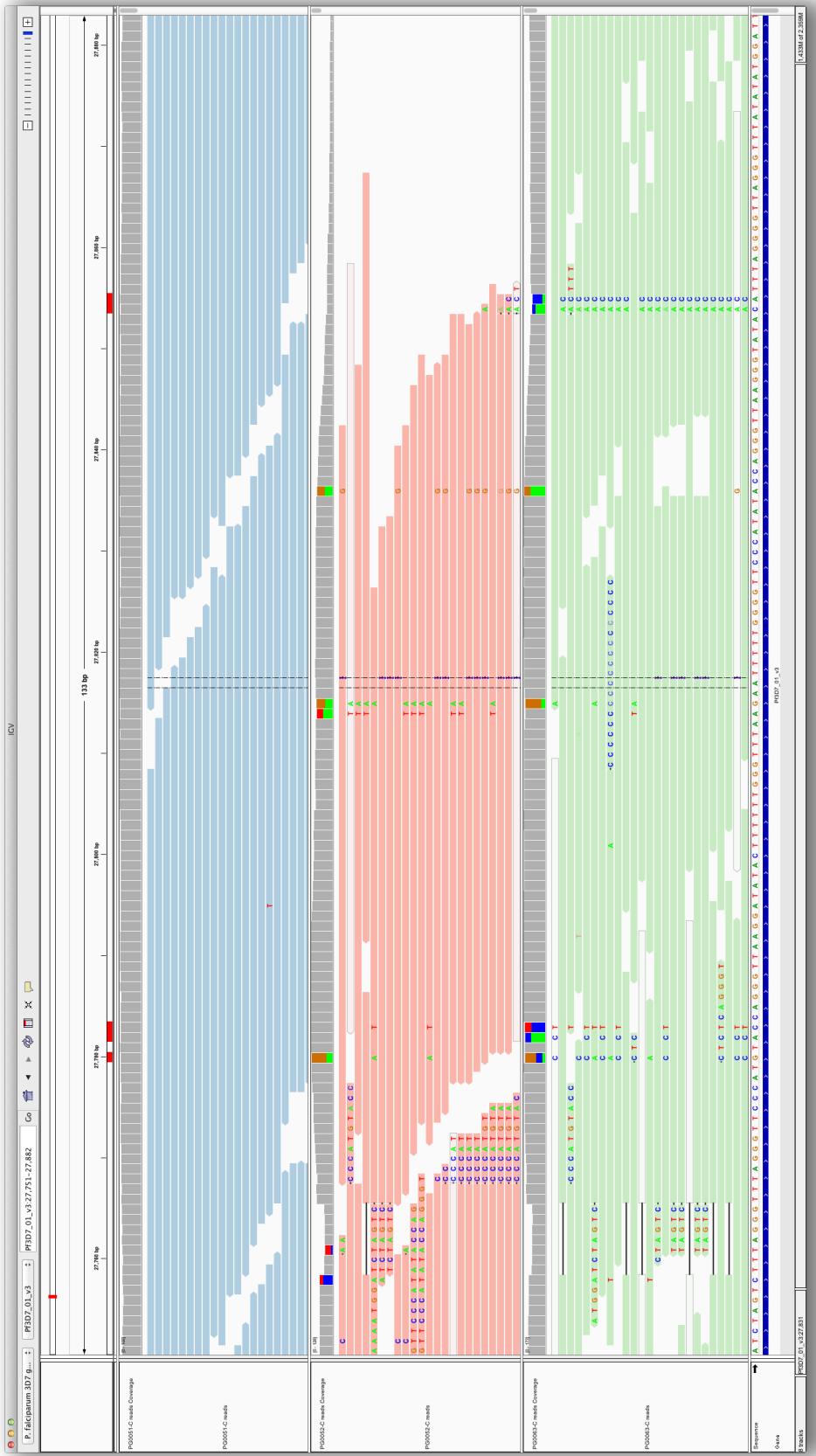
In contrast, examining the 3D7xHB3 and HB3xDD2 crosses, we find 5 events, all of which are supported by the kmer recovery diagnostic plots. Figure 6.29 shows an example of a seemingly false-positive core *var* gene recombination (a) and a true event (b).

**Table 5.10:** NAHR events in Claessens *et al.* and this study

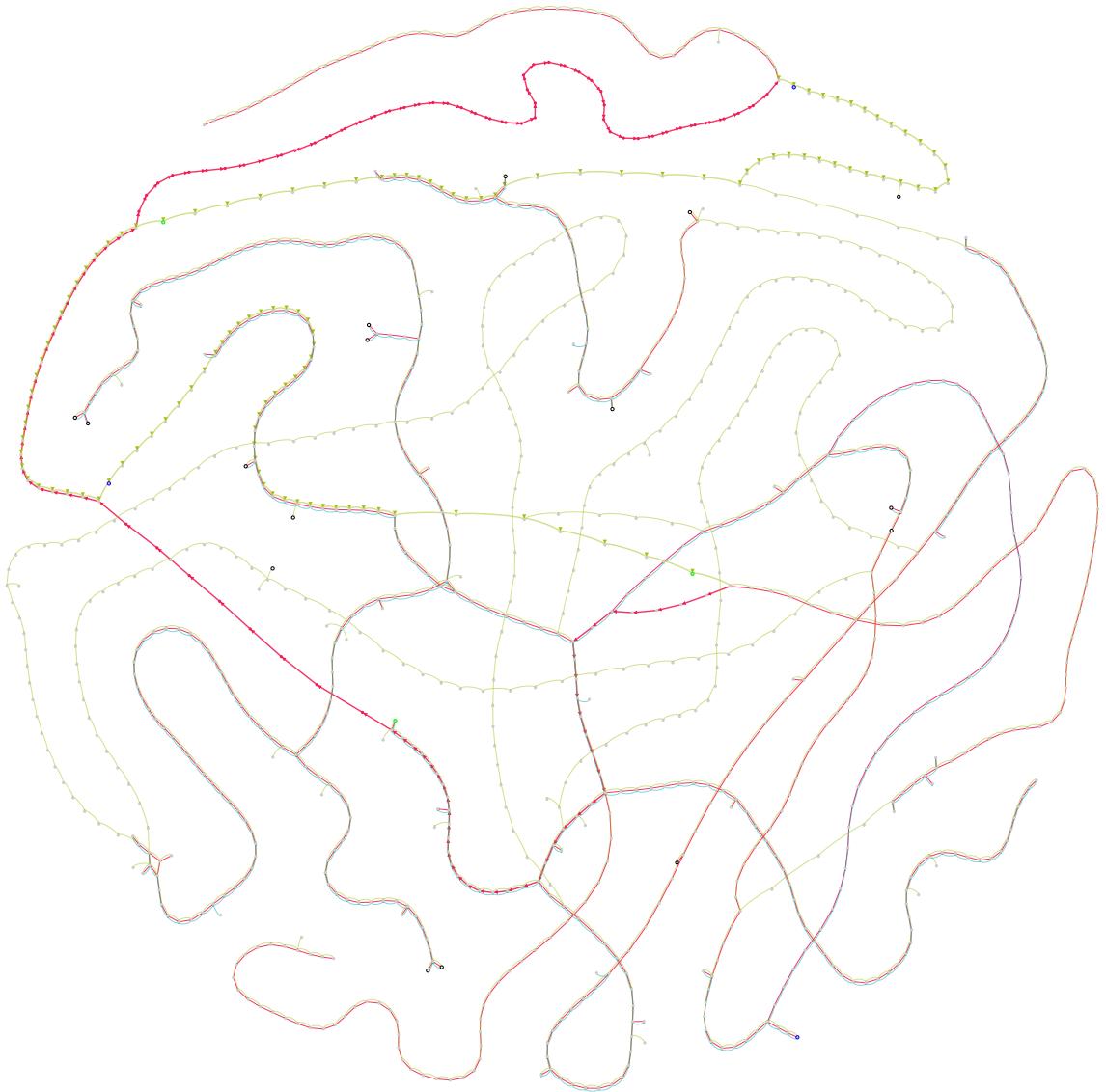
Sample	Cross	Called in Claessens <i>et al.</i>	Called in this study	Support in kmer recovery
PG0015-C	HB3xDD2	n	y	y
PG0018-C	HB3xDD2	n	y	y
PG0020-C	HB3xDD2	y	n	n
PG0025-C	HB3xDD2	n	y	n
PG0030-C	HB3xDD2	y	n	n
PG0034-C	HB3xDD2	y	n	y
PG0035-Cx	HB3xDD2	n	y	n
PG0036-C	HB3xDD2	y	n	wrong genes
PG0038-C	HB3xDD2	y	n	y
PG0044-C	HB3xDD2	y	n	n
PG0054-C	3D7xHB3	y	n	n
PG0055-C	3D7xHB3	n	y	y
PG0058-C	3D7xHB3	y	n	wrong gene
PG0063-C	3D7xHB3	y	y	y
PG0067-C	3D7xHB3	n	y	n
PG0068-C	3D7xHB3	y	n	n
PG0069-C	3D7xHB3	y	n	n
PG0070-C	3D7xHB3	n	y	n
PG0071-C	3D7xHB3	n	y	y
PG0072-C	3D7xHB3	y	n	wrong gene
PG0079-CW	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0082-C	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0085-C	7G8xGB4	y	y	NA
PG0087-C	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0088-C	7G8xGB4	y	y	NA
PG0095-C	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0100-CW	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0103-CW	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0105-CW	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0107-C	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0112-C	7G8xGB4	NA	y	NA
PG0113-C	7G8xGB4	NA	y	NA
PG0444-C	803xGB4	NA	y	NA
PG0456-C	803xGB4	NA	y	NA
PG0459-C	803xGB4	NA	y	NA
PG0468-C	803xGB4	NA	y	NA
PG0469-C	803xGB4	NA	y	NA



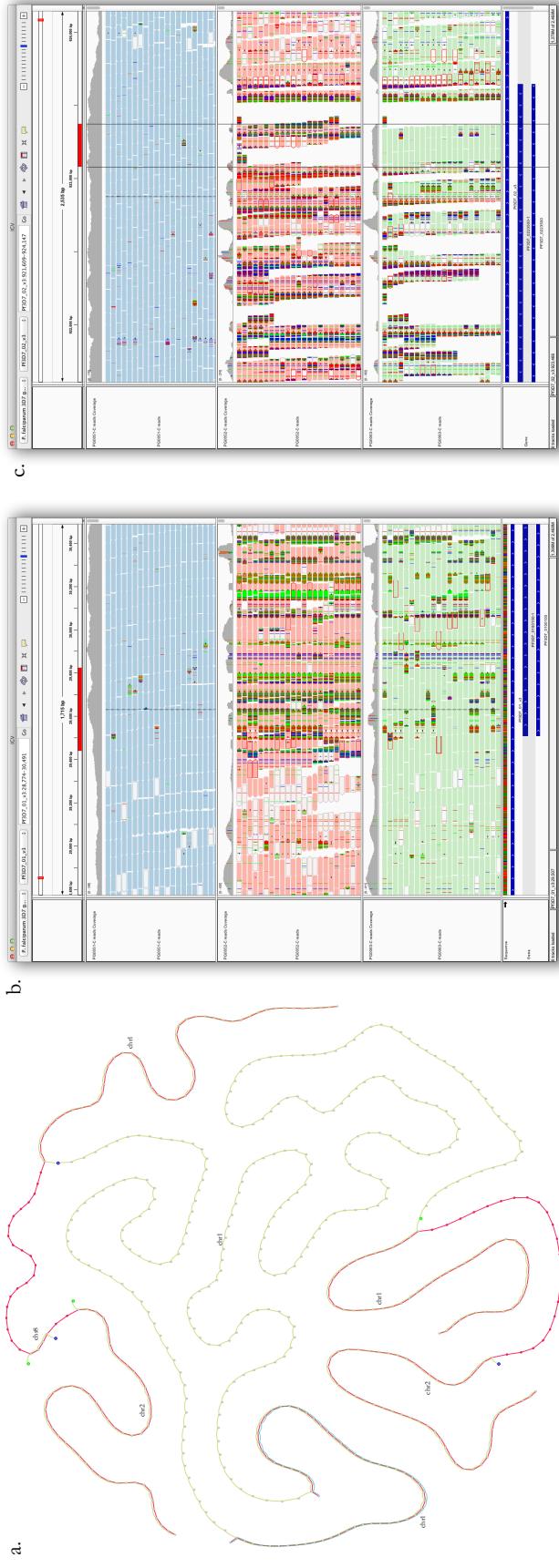
**Figure 5.16:** Circos visualization of all *de novo* mutations in PGoo63-C, positioned on the reference sequence (outer ring), aligned maternal assembly (middle), and aligned paternal assembly (inner). Unplaced parental contigs are concatenated and placed in the "U" pseudochromosome. Each parental ring is annotated with a sequence compressibility score for every 2,500 bp shown above their ideograms, while the reference ring is annotated with mean read coverage per 2,500 bp. Within the reference ideogram, all reference-based variant calls made in this sample from the MalariaGen project are shown, color-coded to reflect their parentage. Regions that were masked out of MalariaGen's variant calling process are shown as grey bars. Variants are shown as glyphs below the parental ideograms, shape-coded for type (small circle: unknown, large circle: SNP, triangle: indel, square: MNP, diamond: NAHR event). The color and positioning of the glyph reflects the haplotypic background upon which the event occurred. Interchromosomal structural variation and gene-conversion events are additionally denoted as arcs linking the relevant parts of the genome. The closest gene to the event is reported in black if the mutation falls within the gene and as grey if it falls outside the gene.



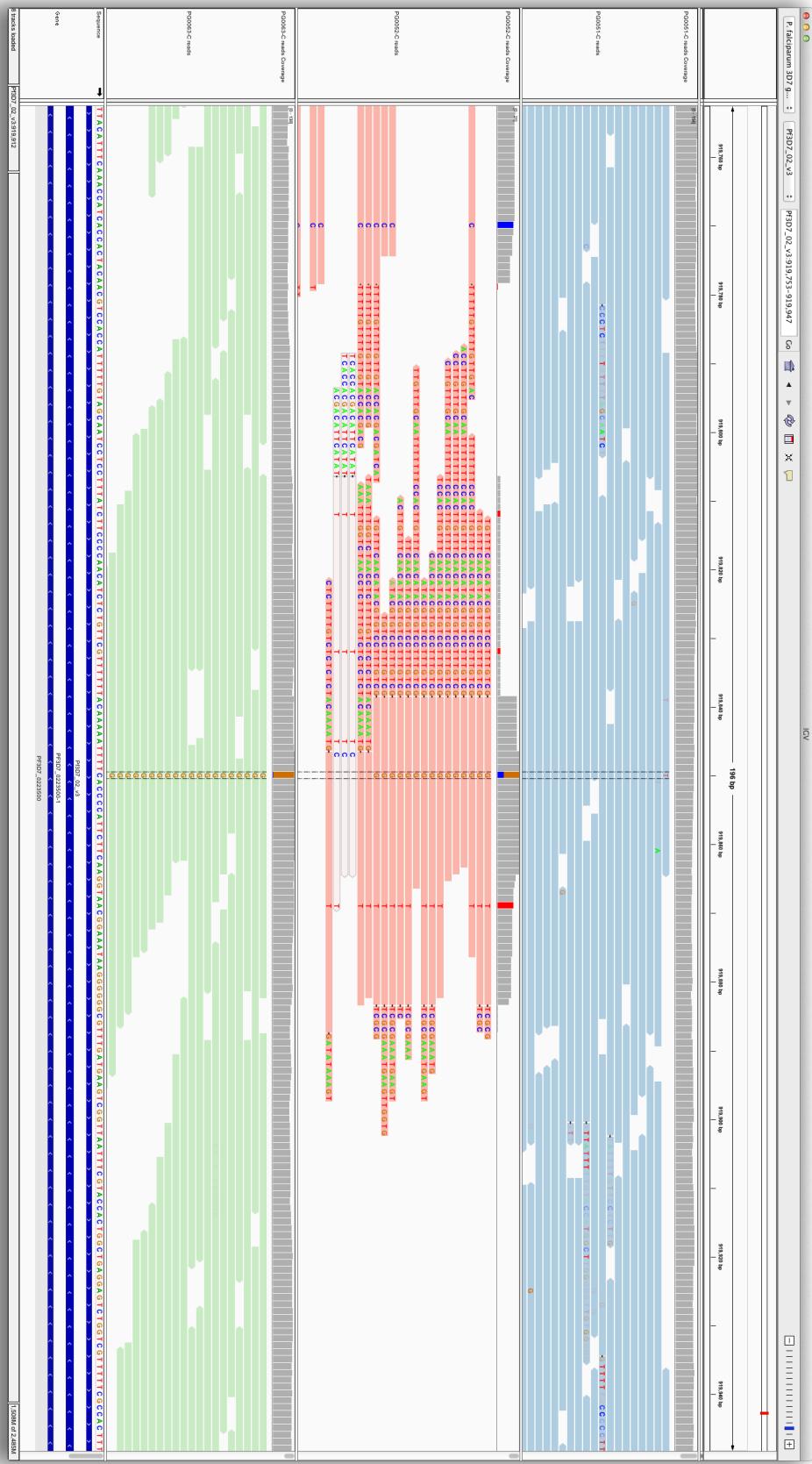
**Figure 5.17:** IGV screenshot of SNP and two MNPs: three apparent *de novo* mutations within a much larger NAHR event. Top panel: 3D7 parent. Middle panel: HB<sub>3</sub> parent. Lower panel: PG0063-C child. Variant positions are shown as red blocks at the top of the three panels below the genome position track. Stacked barplots above variant positions indicate the proportion of bases supporting an alternate allele to the reference.



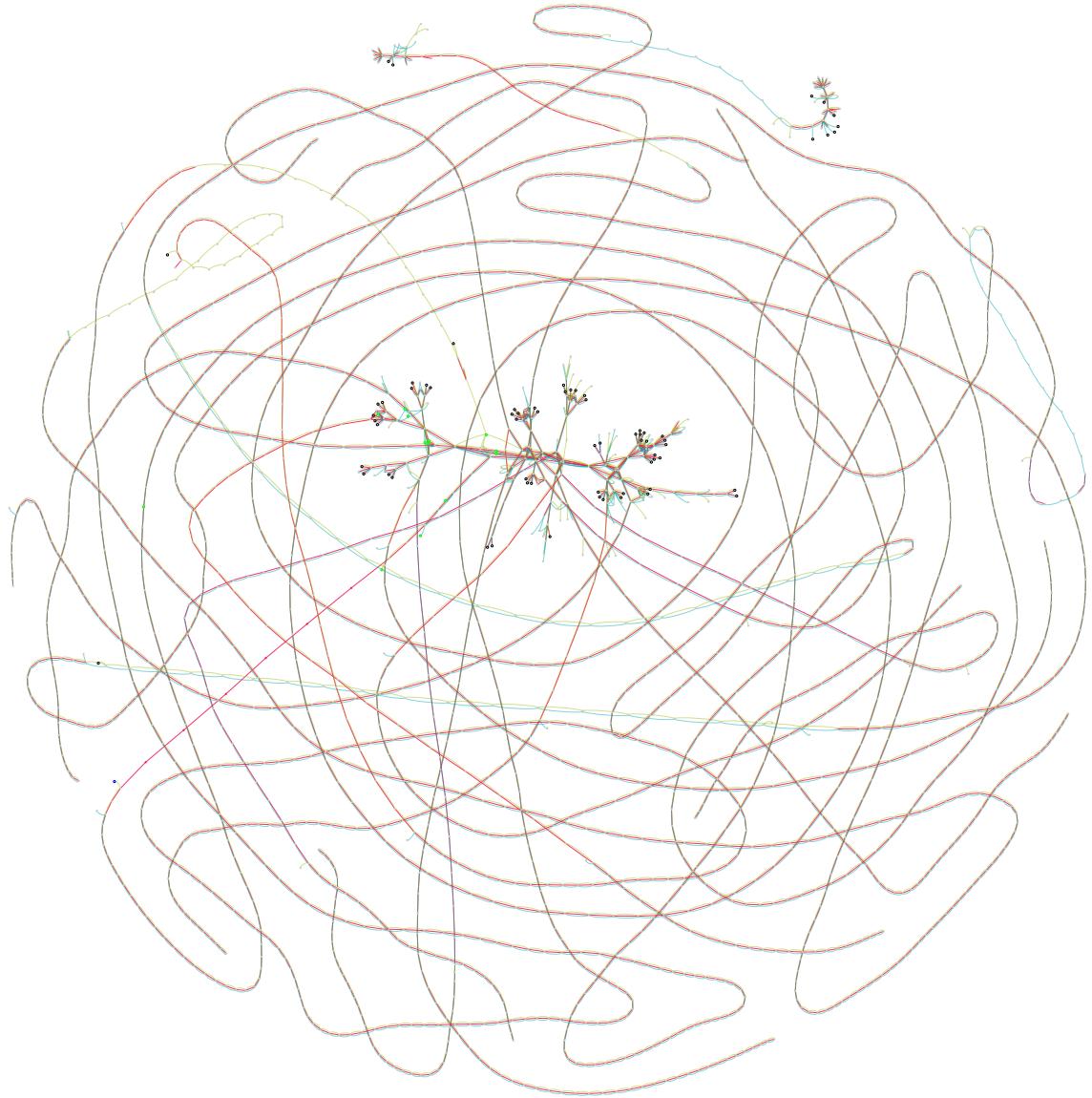
**Figure 5.18:** IGV screenshot of SNP and two MNPs: three apparent *de novo* mutations within a much larger NAHR event. Top panel: 3D7 parent. Middle panel: HB3 parent. Lower panel: PGoo63-C child. Variant positions are shown as red blocks at the top of the three panels below the genome position track. Stacked barplots above variant positions indicate the proportion of bases supporting an alternate allele to the reference.



**Figure 5.19:** A NAHR event. a. Graphical view of the exchange; chromosome of origin specified for various regions. b. IGV screenshot for 3D7 (top), HB<sub>3</sub> (middle), and PGoo63-C (child) on the chromosome 1 region of the event. c. IGV screenshot of the chromosome 2 region of the event.



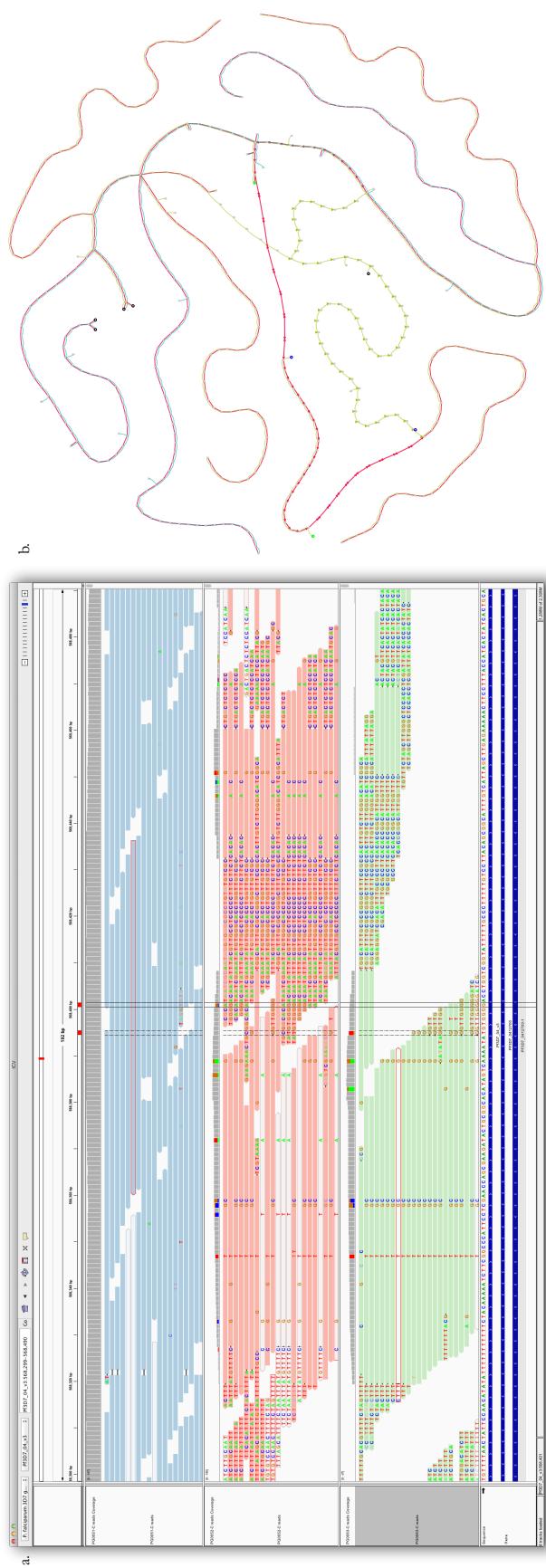
**Figure 5.20:** A *de novo* SNP in a *var* on the 3D7 haplotypic background. Top panel: 3D7. Middle: HB3. Lower: PG0063-C child.



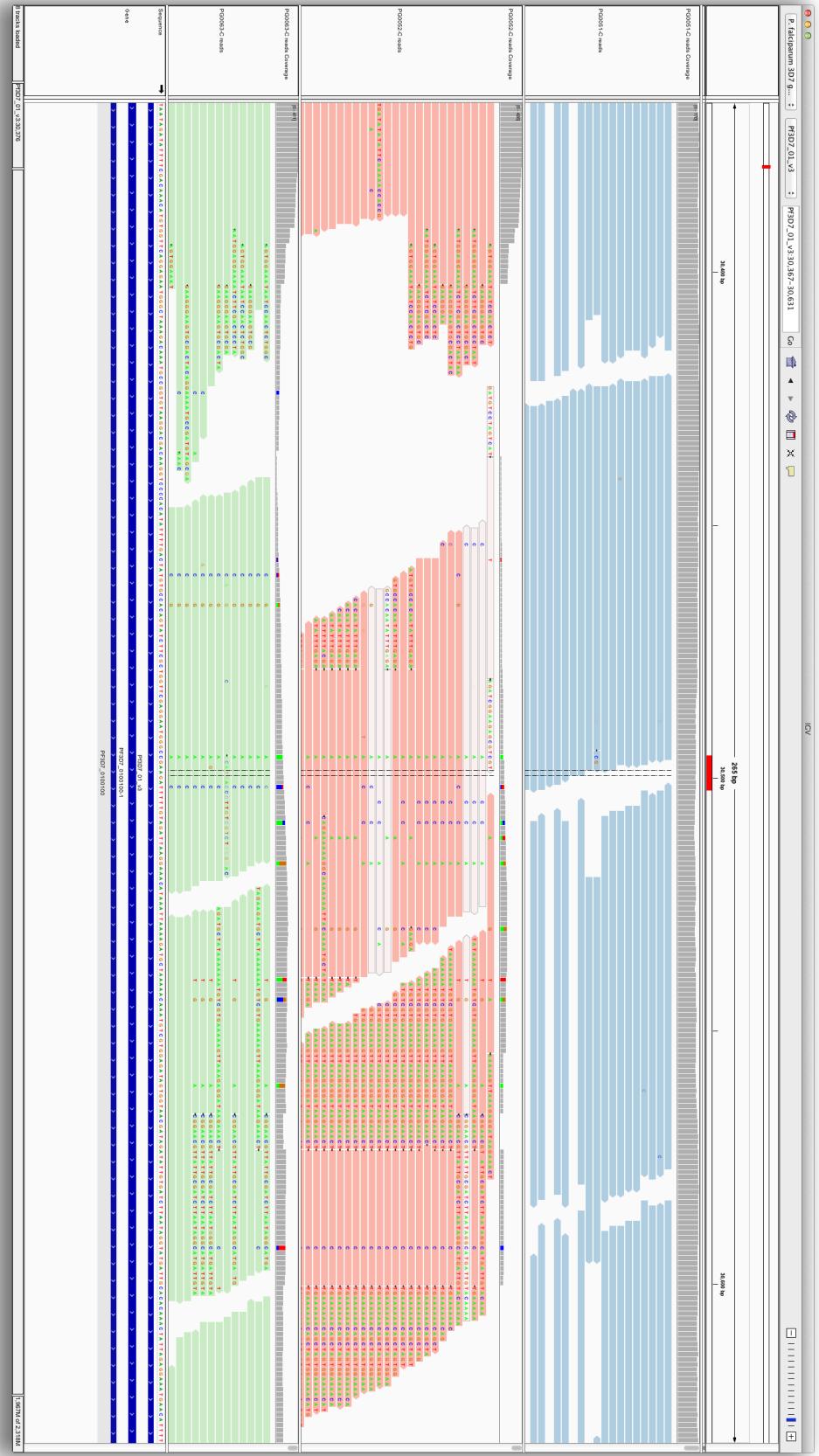
**Figure 5.21:** A graph "tangle": a region of the graph where the in/out degree of vertices within a small radius sharply increases, resulting from attempting to traverse a low-complexity region of the genome.

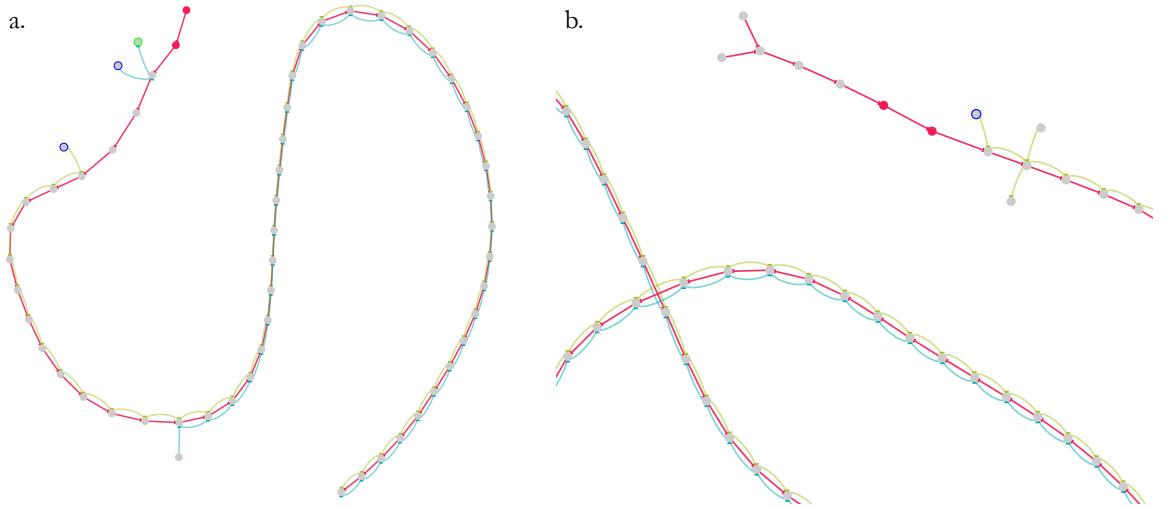


**Figure 5.22:** A low-complexity region of the genome containing many reads with many apparent errors.

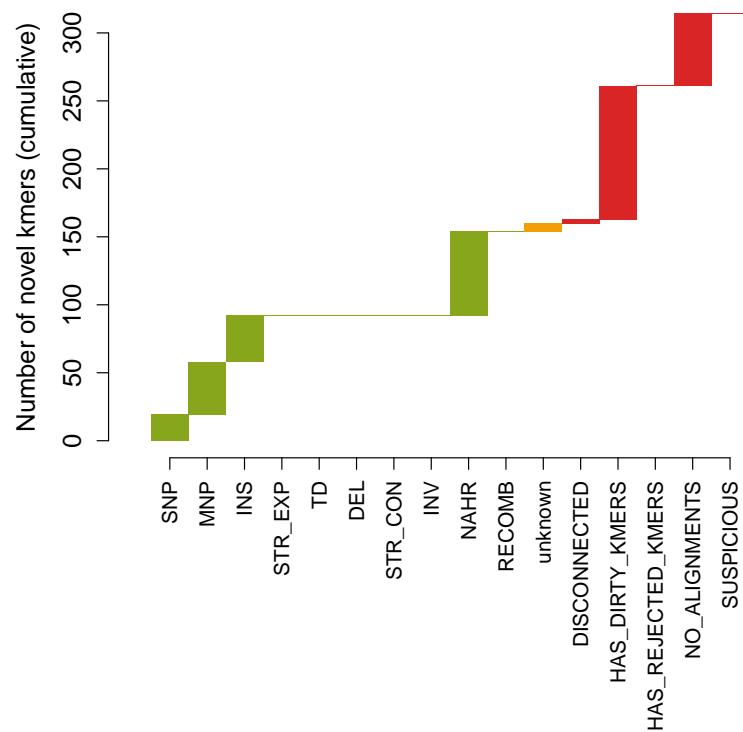


**Figure 5.23:** Two SNPs, non-obvious from the alignments, but apparent in graph. a. IGV screenshot of two *de novo* SNPs in a *var* gene.  
 b. Graphical view of the two SNPs.

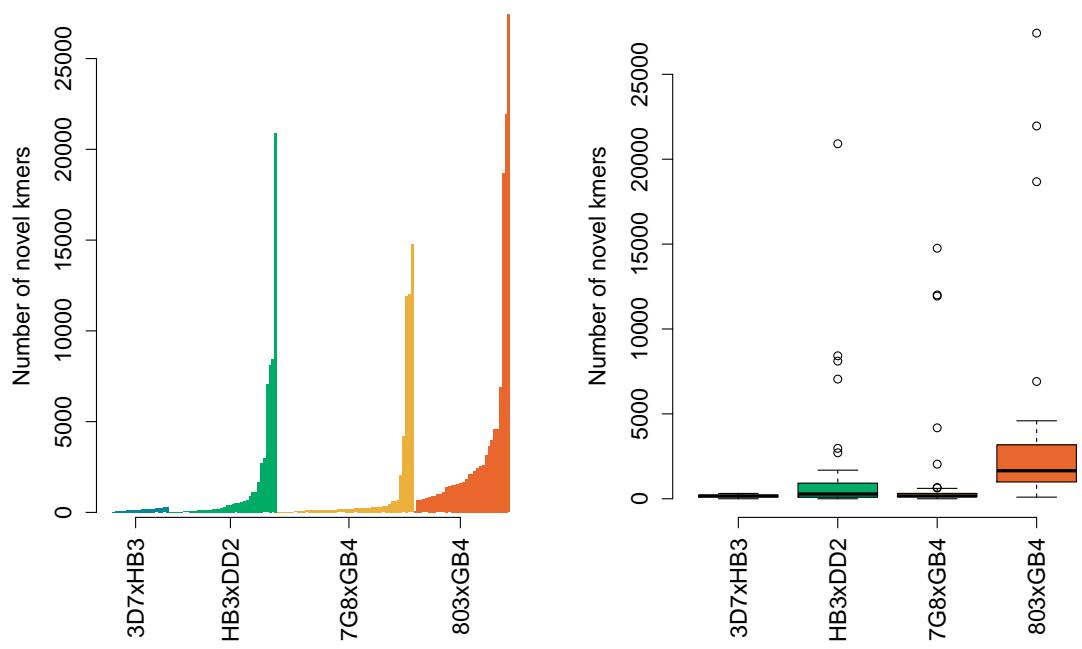




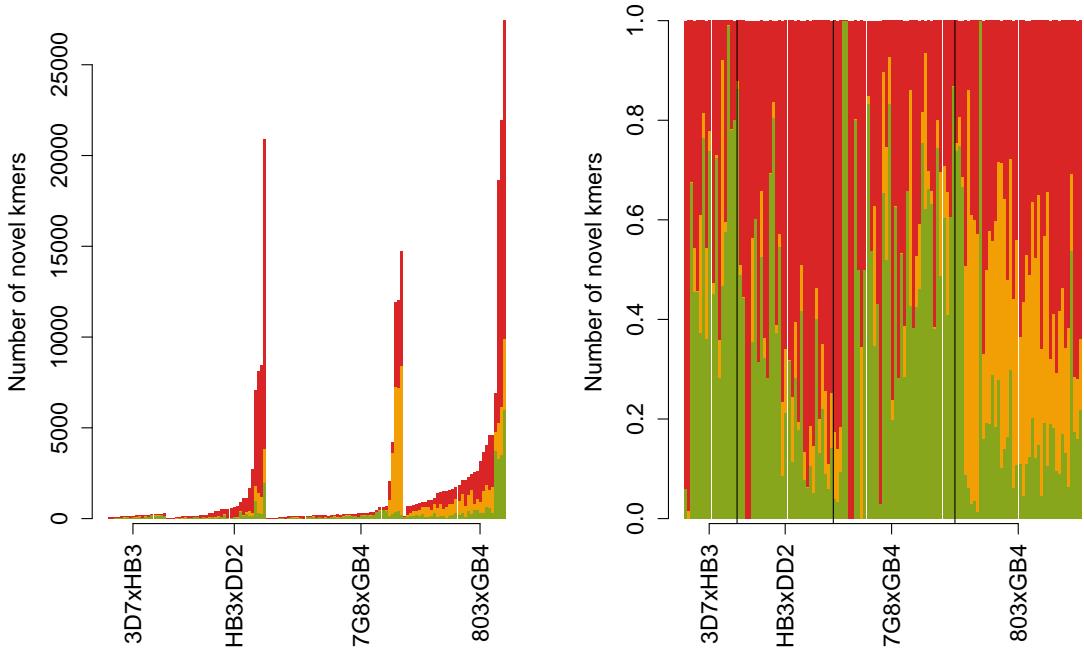
**Figure 5.25:** Graph motifs for discarded events. a. Disconnected events: novel kmers that fail to link back to the genome. b. "Dirty" events: the dirty kmers (shown in grey with red edges) make up more than 10% of the novel kmers in the region.



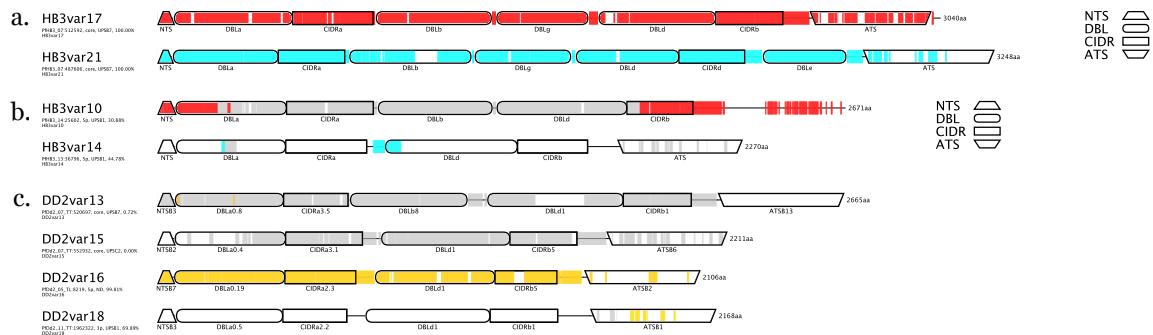
**Figure 5.26:** Cumulative accounting of novel kmers and the mutation types to which they correspond. Events passing filters are depicted in green. Those failing filters are in red.



**Figure 5.27:** Novel kmers per sample and cross. Left: number of novel kmers in each sample, after filtering. Right: distribution of novel kmers per sample in each cross.



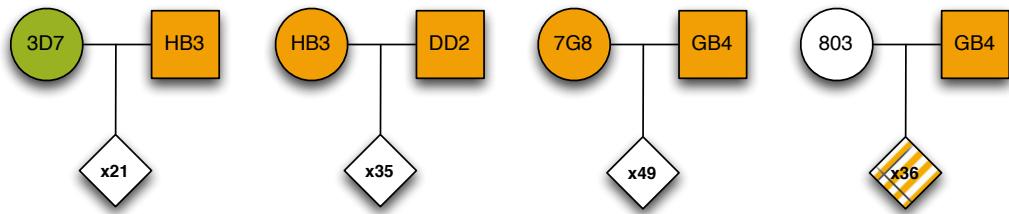
**Figure 5.28:** Novel kmer usage by variants per sample and cross. Left: novel kmers used in variants (green), in unknown events (orange), and events failing filters (red). Right: fraction of novel kmers used by variants (green), unknown events (orange), and events failing filters (red).



**Figure 5.29:** Recovery of diagnostic kmers in 3D7 and HB3 *var* genes. White regions indicate kmers that were not diagnostic. Vertical grey indicates a diagnostic kmer that absent in the progeny, while vertical colored lines indicate the kmer's presence. a. Two genes in PGoo20-C purported to have an NAHR event in Claessens *et al.*, but exhibiting no kmer loss indicative of an NAHR event. b. Two genes in PGoo34-C with missing diagnostic kmers, possibly indicative of an NAHR event. c. Two genes (DD2var13 and DD2var18) which exhibit very slight recovery or loss of diagnostic kmers towards their terminal ends.



## 6 *Plasmodium falciparum*



**Figure 6.1:** Relationships for samples in four *P. falciparum* crosses, with the number of QC-passing Illumina datasets for progeny shown. Green and orange shading indicates the availability of finished and draft quality reference genomes, respectively. Orange stripes denote the availability of a draft reference genome for a single progeny, used as validation for *de novo* events. Gender assignments for the parents are arbitrary, intended only to simplify discussion.

IN THE PREVIOUS CHAPTER, WE DEMONSTRATED OUR *de novo* MUTATION DETECTION software on simulated crossings of *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria parasites. We now apply our work to real samples: short-read Illumina data on nearly 150 isolates taken from four separate crossings of six parasites.

No comprehensive catalog of *de novo* variation in these crosses currently exists. To date, the focus on the 3D7xHB3, HB3xDD2, 7G8xGB4 and 803xGB4 datasets has primarily been on discovering the genomic basis for phenotypic differences between the parents, and on characterizing novel antigenic forms in the children. However, the previous phenotypic studies have verified the presence of some large structural *de novo* variants - namely a handful of NAHR events involving antigenic genes. These known events serve as useful validation data for the most difficult form of variation for our software to detect. Furthermore, these previously observed events have occurred in low-complexity regions. These regions may confound DNA repair machinery and provide a substrate for the generation of *de novo* variation. They are typically considered outside the reach of reference-based analyses (which constrain themselves to the roughly 20 megabases of so-called "core" genome wherein divergence between multiple isolates is much lower and

**Table 6.1:** Summary of sequencing data for four *Plasmodium falciparum* crosses

	3D7xHB3	HB3xDD2	7G8xGB4	803xGB4
Samples	22	42	52	36
Samples QC+	21	35	49	36
Read length	76	76	76	100
Fragment size	$300 \pm 29$	$253 \pm 48$	$293 \pm 21$	$222 \pm 10$
Coverage	$99 \pm 38$	$121 \pm 91$	$110 \pm 40$	$205 \pm 106$
Platform	Illumina GAII	Illumina GAII	Illumina GAII	Illumina HiSeq 2000
Sequencing Date	2010	2009-2012	2010-2011	2014

short reads tend to align unambiguously<sup>81)</sup>, but may be accessible with our graph-based approach. Finally, the *P. falciparum* genome is small enough to be sequenced inexpensively on current third generation sequencing platforms, enabling high-quality reconstructions of the parental genomes and even one of the progeny. The parental samples facilitate DNM discovery, while the child sample serves as a validation dataset with which to evaluate our performance. These factors make the *P. falciparum* datasets a compelling study target.

## 6.1 Data processing

### 6.1.1 Initial data

We obtained short-read, paired-end whole genome sequence data for parent and progeny clones of the 3D7xHB3,<sup>7</sup> HB3xDD2,<sup>9</sup> 7G8xGB4,<sup>95</sup> and 803xGB4 crosses, generously provided to us by the MalariaGen project<sup>1</sup>. All samples were sequenced on Illumina platforms over the past five years using a PCR-free library preparation protocol known to reduce coverage biases associated with AT-rich templates. Avoiding PCR during library construction also removes the issue of replication errors that occur in early cycles being propagated to all subsequent copies, thus masquerading as *de novo* mutations. Across all four crosses, we obtained 152 samples prior to any quality control checks. The data is summarized in Table 6.1.

<sup>1</sup>More information, including links to the European Nucleotide Archive where the original reads are stored, can be found at <http://www.malariaegen.net/apps/pf-crosses/1.0/>. Note that while the 803xGB4 data we were provided does come to us via MalariaGen, it was provided to them (and subsequently to us) as a personal communication from Michael Krause, Rick Fairhurst *et al.* at the NIAID. It is not yet part of the public dataset.

### 6.1.2 Data processing for progeny

#### 6.1.2.1 Graph construction

We built de Bruijn graph structures from the available Illumina data for each child with McCortex's build command, using a kmer size of 47 bp and discarding bases with a Phred-scaled quality score<sup>96</sup> less than Q5. The "dirty" graph (raw graph structure before any pruning is applied) was cleaned using McCortex's clean command, allowing the software to compute cleaning thresholds automatically, and falling back to trimming contiguous regions of the graph with coverage less than 2 in the event that automatic thresholds could not be calculated. McCortex's contigs, while strictly speaking not used in our analysis, still serve a useful function in quality control checks. To generate contigs, paired-end reads were thread through the graph with the McCortex thread command and specifying a minimum fragment size of 0 bp, maximum fragment size of 400 bp, and choosing the software's (more conservative) one-way gap-filling procedure.

### 6.1.3 Data processing for parents

#### 6.1.3.1 Graph construction

Constructing the parental graphs was a bit more involved than graphs for the children as there were often additional data sources to incorporate. For five out of the six parents, we benefitted from the availability of supplementary draft assembly data from the Pf3k project. These draft assemblies were constructed using version 3.0 of the Hierarchical Genome Assembly Process (HGAP3).<sup>97</sup> Briefly, the pipeline performs error correction via the Quiver module, which aligns two-thirds of the data to the longest third, emitting the consensus base and recomputed quality score at each position. The corrected data is then assembled with a modified version of the Celera assembler,<sup>98</sup> an overlap-layout-consensus (OLC) assembler originally designed for use on long Sanger reads. While such reads were typically 500 bp in length, read lengths from PacBio RS II instruments are on average 10,000 to 14,000 bp in length, sometimes as long as 50,000 bp, two orders of magnitude longer than the reads used to assemble the finished 3D7 reference. This data

**Table 6.2:** Additional data availability for all *P. falciparum* cross parents

	3D7	HB3	DD2	7G8	GB4	803
Finished reference	x					
PacBio assembly	x	x	x	x	x	
Draft assembly		x	x	x		
Illumina data	x	x	x	x	x	x

helps in determining parental paths in the graph near variants with fewer ambiguities than Illumina data. Table 6.2 shows all additional data used in constructing parental assemblies.

Parental graph construction was performed on each parental data source separately following the same workflow used for the children’s graphs. The separate graphs were then combined into a single graph using McCortex’s join command.

For most samples, the finished or draft PacBio assemblies vastly outperform any assembly that could be produced with the Illumina data, and are an excellent basis for localizing events and determining their proximity to genes. However, as there is no high-quality sequence of the 803 genome, we were forced to construct one ourselves using the available Illumina data. After producing the cleaned graph with the McCortex workflow, we applied the software’s paired-end read threading and contig emission steps. The assembly statistics for all six genomes are presented in Table 6.3. The assembly for 803 is exceedingly poor compared to the other assemblies, as expected from short Illumina reads. That the total sequence length is more than 2.5 times larger than a typical *falciparum* parasite is artifactual and discussed further below.

#### 6.1.3.2 Transfer of gene models

We transferred gene models onto the new genomes by examining existing finished and draft reference genomes and their annotation sets, selecting each annotated exon sequence from its corresponding FASTA sequence file, and aligning it to the new genome using BWA. For 7G8, GB4, and 803, we transferred only the 3D7 annotations obtained from PlasmoDB release 26.<sup>30</sup> For DD2 and HB3, additional separate annotations exist from the Broad Institute<sup>2</sup>. These undoubtedly contain better representations of genes divergent from their 3D7 counterparts (particularly antigens). However, owing to the poor DD2 and HB3 assemblies to which they are associated, the annotations are likely to be incomplete. We therefore chose to transfer both the 3D7 and DD2 (HB3) annotations onto the new DD2 (HB3) assemblies. This has resulted in a slight over-annotation of genes in these two genomes, as shown in Table 6.3. This happens when the gene models slightly differ between 3D7 and the target (e.g. exon end definitions differ by as much as a single nucleotide), but refer to the same gene. Rather than simply choosing one definition, we permit both to remain as the PlasmoDB annotations are continuously maintained and improved, while the Broad’s annotations have not been updated since April 2014.

---

<sup>2</sup>[http://www.broadinstitute.org/annotation/genome/plasmodium\\_falciparum\\_spp/](http://www.broadinstitute.org/annotation/genome/plasmodium_falciparum_spp/)

**Table 6.3:** Statistics on all parental assemblies

	contigs	min length	max length	N50	total sequence	genes
3D7	16	5,967	3,291,936	1,687,656	23,332,831	5,777
DD2	16	6,094	3,257,617	1,661,885	22,682,339	8,284 (3D7, DD2)
7G8	17	6,094	3,311,228	1,560,458	22,832,195	5,530 (3D7)
GB4	26	7,376	3,360,747	1,565,171	23,525,386	5,576 (3D7)
HB3	28	6,094	3,378,065	1,593,993	22,812,563	7,467 (3D7, HB3)
803	148,826	47	17,610	1,042	59,118,463	4,663 (3D7)

#### 6.1.3.3 Generation of visualization resources

We use the Circos<sup>99</sup> genomic comparison tool to generate whole-genome views of DNM activity in a sample's genome or in all samples from a single cross. To prepare these visualizations, we require alignments between the contigs of a parental genome and the chromosomes of the reference. For 3D7, DD2, 7G8, GB4, and HB3, this is trivial as nearly the entirety of each chromosome has been successfully reconstructed. For those genomes, we simply lined up each assembled contig with its 3D7 counterpart (at the resolution of the image, details of a true alignment cannot be discerned). In the case of 803, we aligned each contig to the 3D7 genome using BWA to derive the mapping.

Finally, we computed a number of sequence composition and complexity metrics in tiled 2,500 bp windows using the SeqComplex tool<sup>3</sup>. The full list of metrics computed is as follows:

1. gc: GC content
2. gcs: GC skew (defined as  $(G - C) / (G + C)$ )
3. at: AT content
4. ats: AT skew (defined as  $(A - T) / (A + T)$ )
5. cpg: CpG content
6. ce: Sequence complexity by Shannon entropy<sup>100</sup>
7. cl: Sequence complexity by linguistic values<sup>101</sup>
8. cwf: Sequence complexity by Wootton and Federhen<sup>102</sup>
9. cz: Sequence compression factor (the ratio of uncompressed to compressed sequence file size, using the gzip compression utility)

<sup>3</sup><https://github.com/caballero/SeqComplex>

These metrics were computed for each parental genome except 803, whose contig lengths were too variable to consistently satisfy the 2,500 bp window requirement, making comparison with GB4 cumbersome.

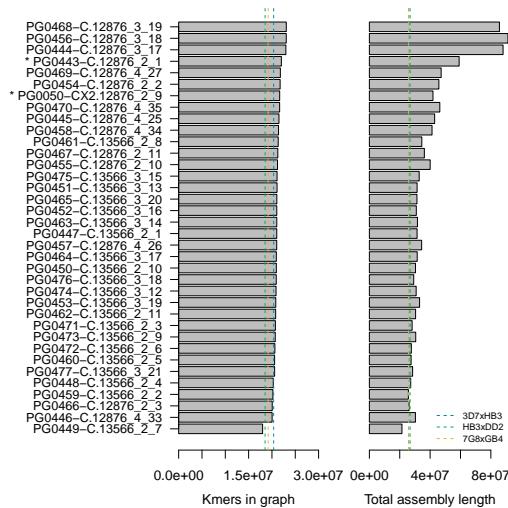
#### 6.1.4 Quality control

We examined assembly metrics on all of our samples in order to flag samples for downstream analysis rejection. We examined each sample for outlier behavior per cross in the number of unique kmers (total number of unique kmers in the graph after the automatic cleaning step - too few kmers indicate poor sequencing quality resulting in most data being thrown away) and contig N<sub>50</sub> (the weighted median length of the contigs - very short contigs may indicate high sequencing error rate). The number of samples retained for analysis is in Table 6.1.

One expects that a newly assembled *falciparum* parasite should have a similar assembly length to the 3D7 reference sequence, or at least the other assembled parasites in this dataset. While this is true for nearly all samples in the 3D7xHB3, HB3xDD2, and 7G8xGB4 crosses, many of the 803xGB4 samples, shown in Figure 6.2, appear to defy this expectation. Some (including the 803 parental sample) exhibit assembly lengths well above the 23 megabases we expect. Several samples have assemblies in excess of 40 megabases. This outcome is unchanged even when other assembly software (e.g. SGA) is applied. The source of this excess sequence is unclear, but contamination by an organism not present in the BLAST database is a plausible hypothesis. We note that during investigation of this phenomenon, an update to our BLAST database revealed a number of kmers from the *Pseudomonas* genus that had previously been considered "novel", as the kmers in question were not yet present in the database. The *Pseudomonas* genus is a family of common environmental bacterium, one of the leading causes of opportunistic human infection,<sup>103</sup> and around 6.7 Mbp in length. It is the subject of drug resistance surveillance<sup>104</sup> at many labs including the Wellcome Trust Sanger Institute, where our *falciparum* samples were processed.

For labs that routinely perform a lot of sequencing, it is common for samples from different projects to be prepared simultaneously, and/or for samples to be multiplexed to maximize the use of sequencer capacity, both of which can contribute to sample cross-contamination.<sup>105</sup> Assembly software does not typically employ contamination checks prior to assembly, instead simply processing any data provided to it. It is likely that any such contamination would have been assembled and incorporated mostly as disconnected regions of the de Bruijn graph - a series of vertices that do not connect to any other part of the *falciparum* genome. This might serve to inflate the novel kmer count if the child

sample is contaminated but the parents are not, but such regions are easily identified and discarded. Therefore, we did not treat inflated assembly size to be a QC failure.



**Figure 6.2:** Number of kmers and assembly length in the 803xGB4 samples. Vertical dashed lines indicate the mean value of the metric in other crosses.

### 6.1.5 Data processing for validation isolates

We selected a number of samples for long-read sequencing on the PacBio RS II instrument. As of this writing, two samples have been completed: PG0051-C (the 3D7 clone, useful for verifying assembly quality by comparison with the finished 3D7 reference), and PG0446-C (one of the 803xGB4 progeny). The former was provided by Susana Campino of the Kwiatkowski lab at the Wellcome Trust Sanger Institute. The latter was provided by Michael Krause and Rick Fairhurst at the Malaria Pathogenesis and Human Immunity Unit at the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease. Approximately 15  $\mu$ g of high molecular weight gDNA was provided for each isolate to the CSHL Pacific Biosciences Sequencing Service<sup>4</sup>. Sequencing libraries with an average fragment size of 20 kb were constructed for each sample and size-selected to remove fragments smaller than 7 kb and larger than 20 kb using BluePippin. Optimal loading concentration was determined by choosing a wide range for each of the first 4 SMRT cells and selecting the concentration that yielded the highest read yield for the remaining SMRT cells. The PG0051-C isolate was sequenced in late 2014 with the P5-C3 chemistry and assembled with PacBio's HGAP 2.0 software (assuming a genome size of 23 megabases). The PG0446-C isolate,

<sup>4</sup><http://cshl.edu/Research/PacBio.html>

**Table 6.4:** Assembly statistics for PacBio RS II data on PGoo51-C and PGo443-C isolates

	PGoo51-C (3D7)	PGo443-C (36F11)
Chemistry	P5-C3	P6-C4
SMRT cells	8	9
Number of reads	245,661	282,459
N <sub>50</sub> read length	12,968 bp	14,339 bp
Assembler	HGAP 2.0	HGAP 3.0
Average contig coverage	78x	94x
Polished contigs	34	33

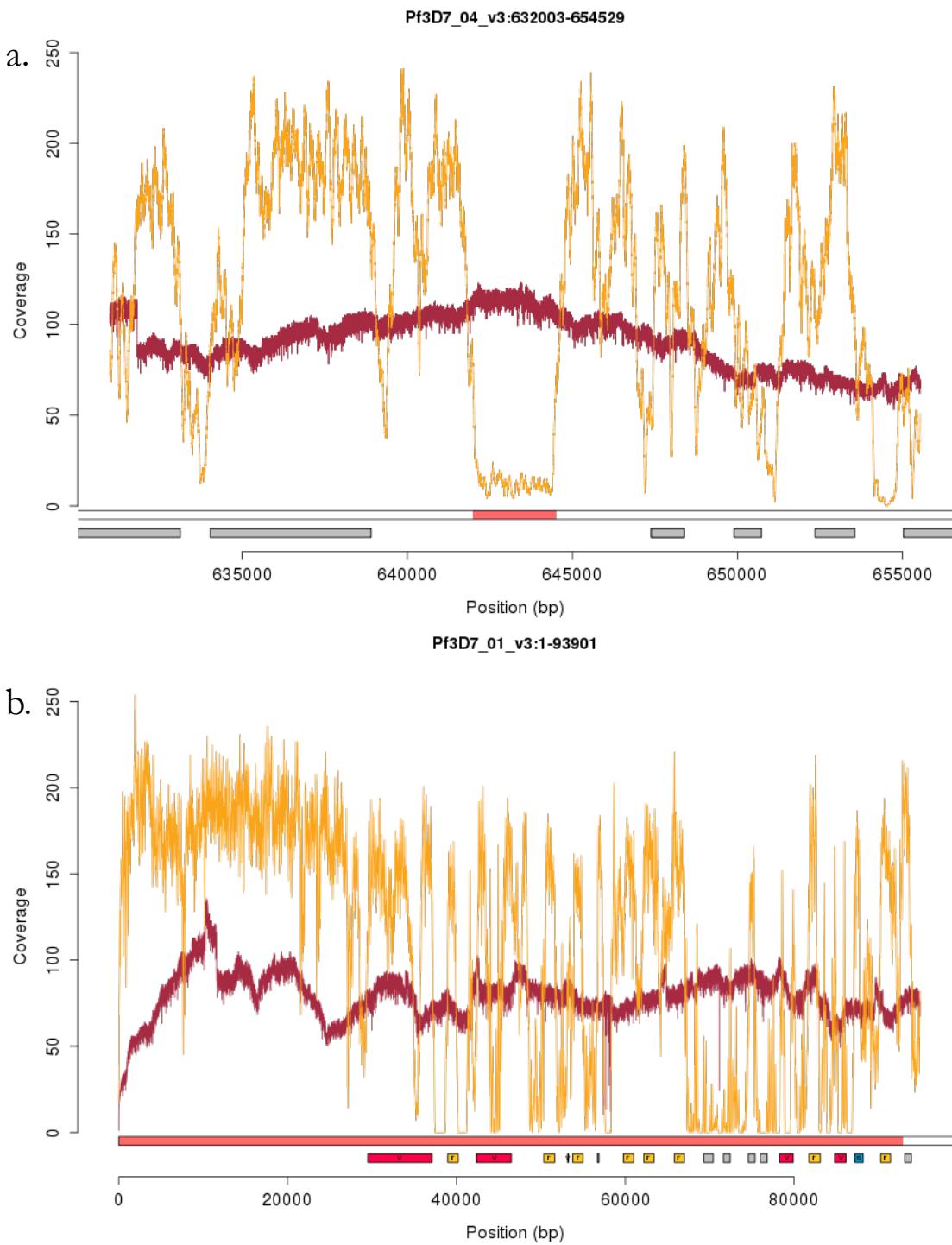
run 16 months later, was sequenced with the newer P6-C4 chemistry and HGAP 3.0 software with the same genome size parameter. Table 6.4 summarizes the sequencing and assembly results on these two isolates.

#### 6.1.5.1 Establishing assembly quality

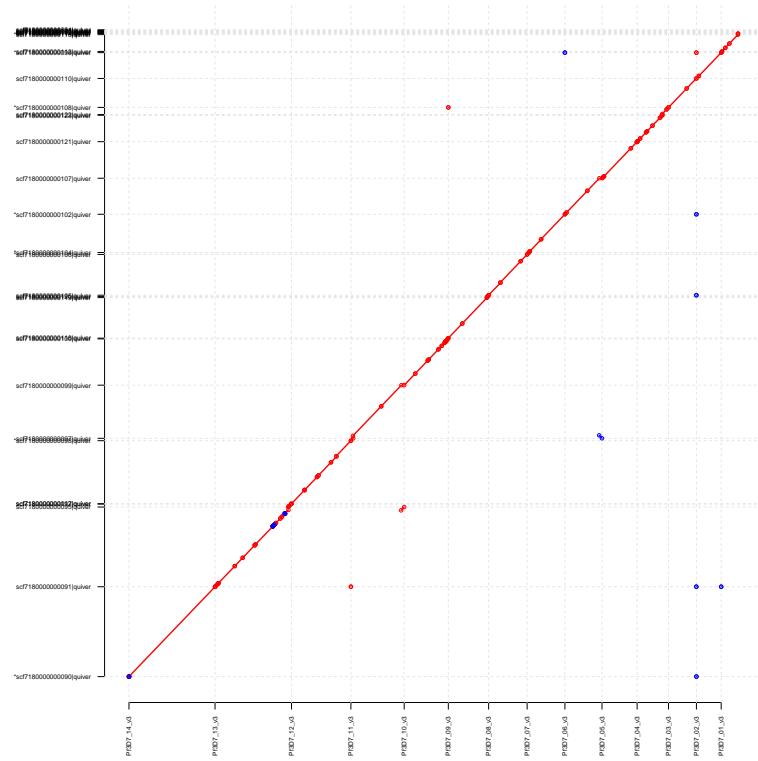
We examined genome recovery and access to massively repetitive sequence (subtelomeric and centromeric regions) that tend to be inaccessible with Illumina sequencing. PacBio reads were aligned to the finished 3D7 genome using PacBio’s `blasr` long read alignment tool<sup>5</sup>, while Illumina reads were mapped with the `bwa mem` tool. Two such regions in the Illumina and PacBio data for the PGoo51-C isolate are shown in Figure 6.3. It is evident that the PacBio coverage is roughly uniform across the entire length of the chromosome. In contrast, the Illumina coverage spikes and dips as it moves along, reaching zero coverage in many regions (especially the biologically interesting subtelomeric repetitive regions).

We compared the PacBio-produced assembly of the PGoo51-C isolate to the finished reference sequence by performing an all-by-all (contigs versus chromosomes) alignment with MUMmer.<sup>106</sup> The alignments are visualized as a multi-dotplot in Figure 6.4, an extension of a dot plot that depicts alignments as two dimensional matrices with target and query sequences on the *x* and *y* axes, aligning regions of the two sequences shaded accordingly.<sup>107</sup> Most chromosomes are assembled completely, and the overwhelming majority of the assembly appears on-diagonal (indicating successful one-to-one reconstruction). Elements appearing off-diagonal could represent misassembly. However, note that most of these off-diagonal elements occur towards the extremes of each chromosome. Given that the reference genome was constructed with Sanger reads substantially shorter than the PacBio reads, it is possible some repetitive regions have been collapsed or misplaced, contributing to this nominal error rate.

<sup>5</sup><https://github.com/PacificBiosciences/blasr>



**Figure 6.3:** Coverage for Illumina data (orange) and PacBio data (red) of the same sample: PGoo51-C (the reference isolate, 3D7). a. Coverage over the chromosome 4 centromere. b. Coverage over the 5' telomere of chromosome 1. Genes from the *var*, *rifin*, and *stevor* antigenic gene families are highlighted and identified with a "v", "r", or "s", respectively.



**Figure 6.4:** Alignment of contigs from PGoo51-C to 3D7 reference assembly

As we have sequenced DNA from the 3D7 parasite, any differences should likely reflect errors in the sequence. We therefore called SNPs between the two assemblies to find these errors. The sums are presented in Table 6.5, as well as the percent of bases per chromosome these errors represent. Overall, the SNP, insertion, and deletion rates are exceedingly low: amounting to 19,580 events in a 23 megabase genome (0.17%). The insertion rate is much higher than that of deletions and SNPs, perhaps due to the dominant insertion error mode of the PacBio sequencing instrument. All chromosomes appear reasonably similar in performance.

We examined the recovery of the 62 members of the *var* gene family by aligning their full-length genomic sequences (exons and introns) to the PGoo51-C assembly using bwa mem. All 62 *var* genes were successfully aligned to the assembly (all had mapping quality greater than 0; only 1 had mapping quality less than 60). 21 were found to map with 100% identity. The remaining have, on average, 2.46 mismatches, 1.39 insertions, and 0.63 deletions. The overwhelming majority of indels are a single nucleotide in length.

It seemed likely that many of these errors occur in intronic regions where high repetitive sequence content might contribute to misassembly. We investigated this hypothesis by aligning the exons of the *var* genes separately and enumerating errors observed in

**Table 6.5:** Apparent errors per chromosome in the PGoo51-C assembly

	SNP	INS	DEL
Pf3D7_01_v3	119 (0.02%)	763 (0.12%)	291 (0.05%)
Pf3D7_02_v3	164 (0.02%)	475 (0.05%)	162 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_03_v3	272 (0.03%)	523 (0.05%)	290 (0.03%)
Pf3D7_04_v3	141 (0.01%)	856 (0.07%)	713 (0.06%)
Pf3D7_05_v3	111 (0.01%)	531 (0.04%)	175 (0.01%)
Pf3D7_06_v3	504 (0.04%)	731 (0.05%)	180 (0.01%)
Pf3D7_07_v3	194 (0.01%)	609 (0.04%)	320 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_08_v3	134 (0.01%)	597 (0.04%)	251 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_09_v3	61 (0.00%)	713 (0.05%)	259 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_10_v3	732 (0.04%)	810 (0.05%)	308 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_11_v3	310 (0.02%)	1,008 (0.05%)	459 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_12_v3	232 (0.01%)	1,202 (0.05%)	390 (0.02%)
Pf3D7_13_v3	231 (0.01%)	1,493 (0.05%)	409 (0.01%)
Pf3D7_14_v3	152 (0.00%)	1,309 (0.04%)	396 (0.01%)
Total	3,357 (0.03%)	11,620 (0.10%)	4,603 (0.04%)

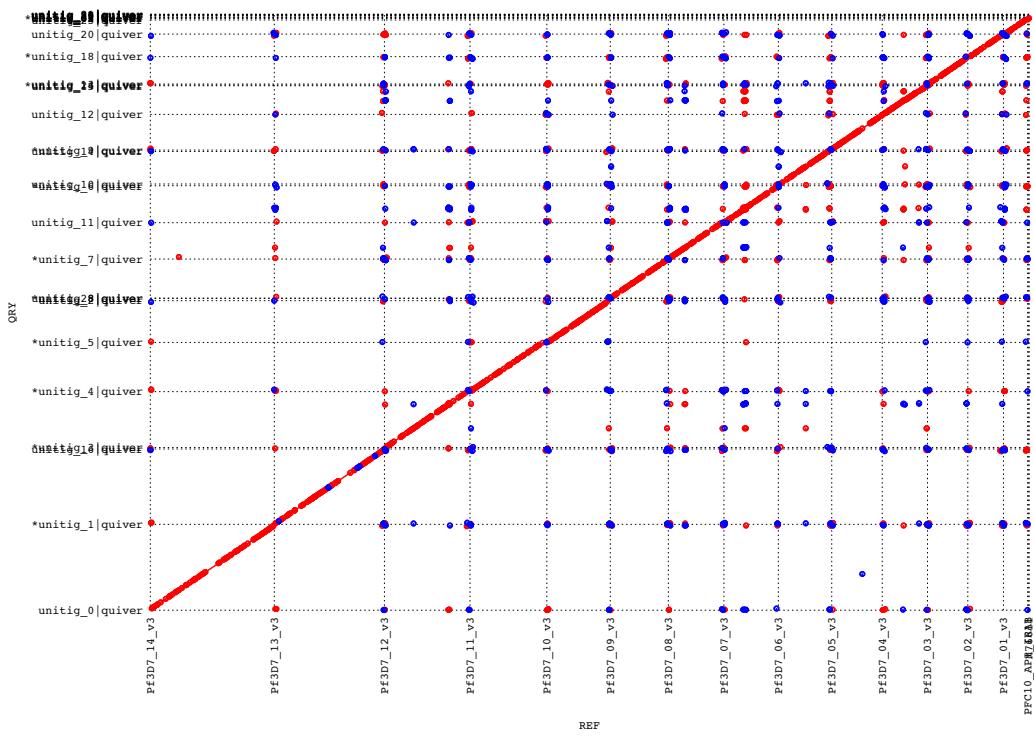
exons and introns. We ignored 11 genes with poor exon alignments (i.e. with mapping quality less than 10). 91.78% of the errors are found in intronic regions. In all cases, exon 2 of the *var* gene (the short exon) is base-for-base perfect when compared to the canonical reference.

Based on these measurements of the error rate, we estimate the quality of the PacBio assembly of the PGoo51-C (3D7) isolate to be approximately  $Q31^6$ , or less than one error per thousand bases. We note that this is a pessimistic estimate, based on the assumption that any differences between this and the reference assembly indicate errors in our assembly. In long, repetitive regions of the genome, this assumption may not be accurate.

#### 6.1.5.2 Preparing the validation isolate reference

Having established the performance of the instrument and assembler in providing a viable assembly for a *P. falciparum* isolate, we turned our attention to the validation sample from the 803xGB4 cross, PGo446-C. We aligned the isolate’s assembly to the 3D7 reference sequence using MUMmer, shown in Figure 6.5. Note that compared to the PGoo51-C isolate, the validation isolate has much more off-diagonal activity, particularly towards the telomeres. This is to be expected. While the core genome between isolates is expected to be relatively stable, tremendous immune pressure has forced the antigenic repertoire to diversify rapidly. These genes, primarily located in the subtelomeric regions, are the

<sup>6</sup> $Q = -10\log_{10}(q) = -10\log_{10}((11,620 + 4,603 + 3,357)/23,332,831)$



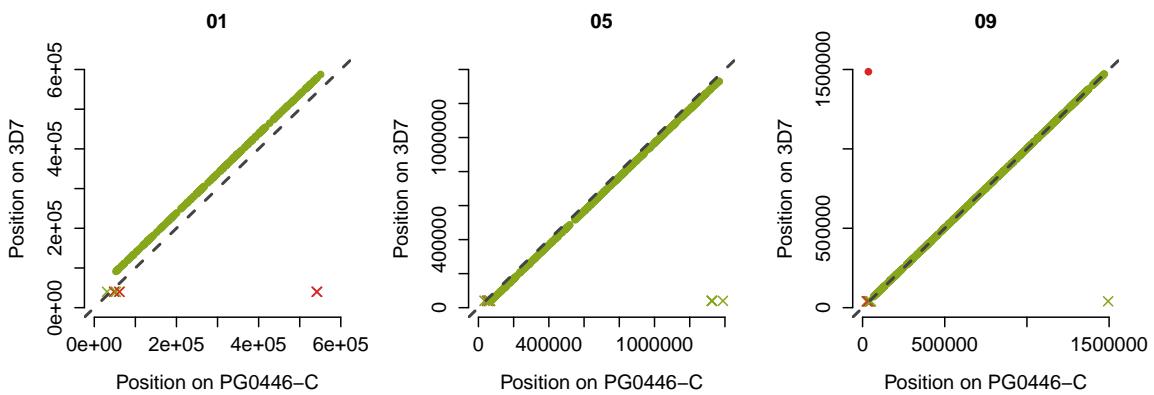
**Figure 6.5:** Alignment of contigs from PG0443-C to 3D7 reference assembly

regions that land off-diagonal, indicative of the extensive recombination and mutation history.

We relabelled and reoriented each contig as necessary based on the alignment so as to more easily establish genomic positioning of events during analysis. The assignments and orientation were further validated by transferring 3D7 gene model annotations onto the PG0446-C assembly by aligning each exon with `bwa mem`, operating under the assumption that the core genome is reasonably stable between isolates and that properly labelled and oriented contigs will yield exon alignments that match orientation and approximate positioning between the two assemblies. Figure 6.6 shows an example for chromosome 1. The vertical offset of all points is due to the fact that the assembly length of chromosome 1 in the PG0446-C assembly is longer than the reference length. Only exons towards the telomeric ends of the chromosome are misplaced, evidently originating from chromosomes other than chromosome 1. All other chromosome 1 exons are aligned with the expected position and orientation.

After chromosome identification, we observed a handful of contigs that could not be

assigned a place in the nuclear genome. After running each unplaced contig through BLAST, we discovered two long contigs (thousands of bp) and nearly perfect hits to various species in the *Pseudomonas* genus. Discovering this contamination in the PacBio assembly and the Illumina samples strongly suggests the samples are contaminated at the source, contributing to the inflated 803xGB4 assembly lengths. We removed these contigs from our assembly.



**Figure 6.6:** Placement and orientation of exons from the reference assembly mapped to the PG0446-C assembly. Chromosomes 1, 5, and 9 shown.

We verified sample identity by slicing the PacBio assembly into 1,000 bp tiles (non-overlapping), aligning each tile to the 3D7 reference genome using `bwa mem`, and genotyping sites found to be variant in the MalariaGen 803xGB4 callset using the Genome Analysis Toolkit module, `UnifiedGenotyper` (specifying the genotype likelihood model to "SNP", ploidy to 1, genotyping mode to "GENOTYPE\_GIVEN\_ALLELES", assuming default base quality scores should be  $Q30$ , and providing the 803xGB4 alleles from MalariaGen)<sup>7</sup>. Chromosome 14 is shown in Figure 6.7. Note that while the PacBio sample's crossover pattern does appear to match that of PG0446-C, samples PG0445-C, PG0453-C, and PG0457-C also share the same pattern. This common pattern is observed for these samples on all chromosomes. These samples are almost certainly clones of one another.

<sup>7</sup>This procedure, while admittedly a bit indirect, provides vastly better results than genotyping the PacBio reads directly. The assembly contains far fewer errors than the reads, even after error correction. It is also much more straightforward than processing the MUMmer variant output, which uses a different file format to VCF, making comparisons cumbersome.



**Figure 6.7:** Haplotype mosaic for chromosome 14 in the 803xGB4 cross dataset. Parental samples are identified with asterisks. For remaining samples, alleles are color-coded according to the parent from which they are apparently inherited - orange for mother (PG0443-C, the 803 isolate), blue for father (PG0050-CX2, the GB4 isolate). Missing data (sites where no genotype could be ascertained) are shown in white. Bottom axis represents variant number. Top axis represents variant position along the length of the chromosome.

## 6.2 Comparison to validation isolate

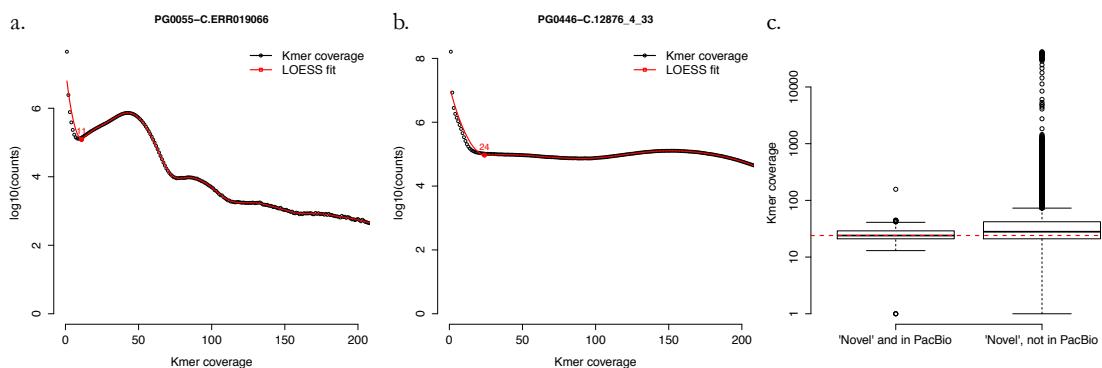
### 6.2.1 Verification of novel kmers

As we have demonstrated that the PacBio assembly of the validation isolate is high-quality, novelty found in the Illumina dataset for the same sample can be verified by examining the PacBio isolate. At the filtration levels of "all", "confident", and "trusted", initial processing of the Illumina data for 803xGB4 sample PG0446-C was found to have 28,904; 17,069; and 8,197 novel kmers, respectively. The PacBio assembly of the same sample recapitulates only 1,639; 802; and 48 novel kmers, respectively. The discrepancies can be largely attributed to three (not necessarily independent) factors: an over-aggressive lower threshold for coverage, no upper threshold, and significant data contamination.

The first two points regarding coverage can be observed in Figure 6.8a-c. The left-most panel shows a clear valley between the left end of the distribution (presumably sequencing errors, as they are so rarely observed in the dataset) and the first local max-

imum (likely real data). In the middle panel, kmer coverage in PG0446-C decays more smoothly, and it is far less obvious as to where the lower threshold should be placed<sup>8</sup>. In the rightmost panel, all novel kmers are shown, conditional to being present or absent in the PacBio assembly of the same sample. Our automatically calculated threshold is clearly set too high, as it is slicing through the middle of the coverage distribution for novel kmers recapitulated by the PacBio dataset.

Furthermore, the rightmost panel shows a number of coverage outliers in the set of novel kmers that are not present in the PacBio dataset. While their source is not immediately apparent, it is clear they have a large contribution to the set of novel kmers we examine; 1,057 kmers present in the Illumina dataset but absent in the PacBio dataset were found to be high coverage outliers.



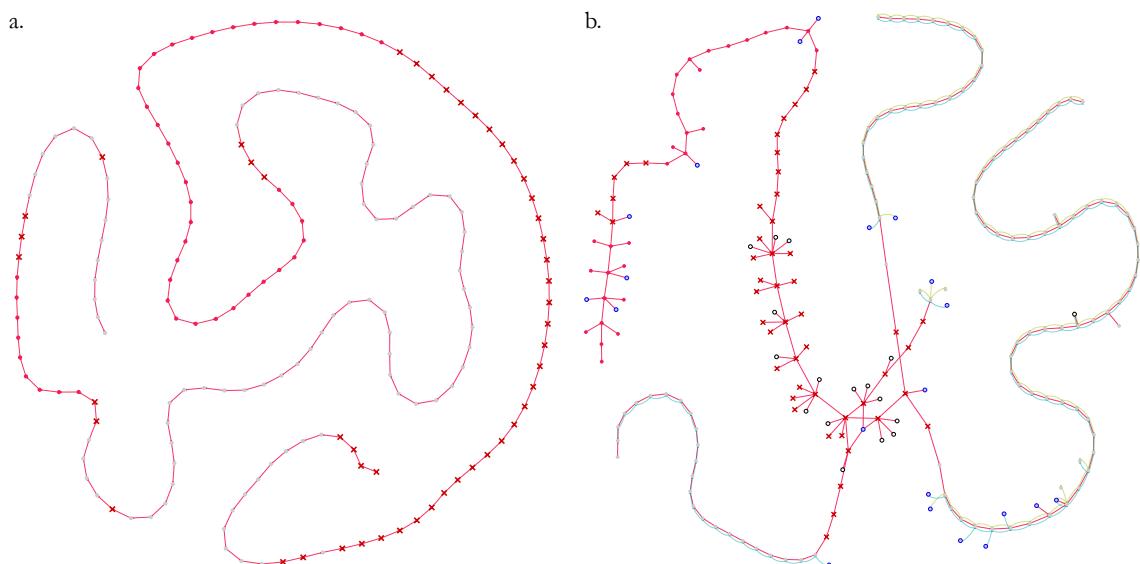
**Figure 6.8:** a. Kmer coverage in a 3D7xHB3 sample, with calculated lower threshold shown in red. b. Kmer coverage in the 803xGB4 sample, PG0446-C, with calculated lower threshold shown in red. c. Kmer coverage distributions for all novel kmers in PG0446-C, conditional on the kmer being present or absent in the PacBio assembly. Calculated lower threshold from panel b shown in red.

We investigated other potentially erroneous novel kmers: putative novel kmers absent from the PacBio assembly and with coverage between 10 $\times$  and 74 $\times$ . We discovered many of these novel kmers exist in branches that either never connect with the graphs of the parents (we refer to these as "orphan" branches, Figure 6.9a), or connect suspiciously amidst a number of putatively novel kmers rejected by the contamination checks (we refer to these as "bushy-tailed" branches, Figure 6.9b). Both appear to be symptoms of unrecognized contamination, owing to the fact that the BLAST database is not (and can never be) complete. In attempting to remove any contribution to the graphs from non-target sources, it is insufficient to discard only the kmers that appear in the BLAST database.

<sup>8</sup>It is worth mentioning that the PG0446-C sample, sequenced on more modern Illumina HiSeq 2000 platforms, likely enjoys a much lower sequencing error rate than the Illumina GAII used for PG0055-C, which contributes to our difficulty in automatically finding a reasonable coverage threshold.

Sequencing centers will always be sequencing new organisms, and the contents of the BLAST database will necessarily lag behind. Discarding orphan branches is straightforward, but incompletely treats the problem; the bushy-tailed branches erroneously connect with the parental graphs and must be removed as well.

Finally, we discovered a substantial source of erroneous novel kmers stemming from "overcleaning", an issue wherein some kmers representing true genomic sequence are mistaken for sequencing error and removed from the graph via the assembler's error-cleaning or error-correcting process. When this occurs in the parents but not the child (often due to coverage fluctuations), a kmer can appear to be "novel". To mitigate this issue, we inspect the child's cleaned graph and the parents' dirty graphs. However, a region of low coverage can also be flanked by regions of *no* coverage; there are many kmers that are likely present in the parental genomes, but unobserved by chance.



**Figure 6.9:** Local subgraphs in the Illumina data for PG0446-C near novel kmers that are absent in the corresponding PacBio assembly. Red circles denote "trusted" novel kmers (those that passed our initial coverage and contamination checks). Red crosses indicate "untrusted" novel kmers (those that passed our initial coverage check but failed the contamination check). a. An "orphan" branch: a series of novel kmers not connected to the parental graphs. b. A "bushy-tailed" branch: a series of novel kmers that appear to connect to everything, including the parental graphs, by chance.

To resolve these issues, we implemented a filtering solution for novel kmers in four parts. First, we implemented a manual procedure for specifying coverage limits, selecting a lower limit of 10 $x$  and an upper limit of 74 $x$ . Next, we implemented software to explore the trio graph starting at confident novel kmers rejected by the contamination filter using our condition-limited depth first search software. Explored branches containing novel

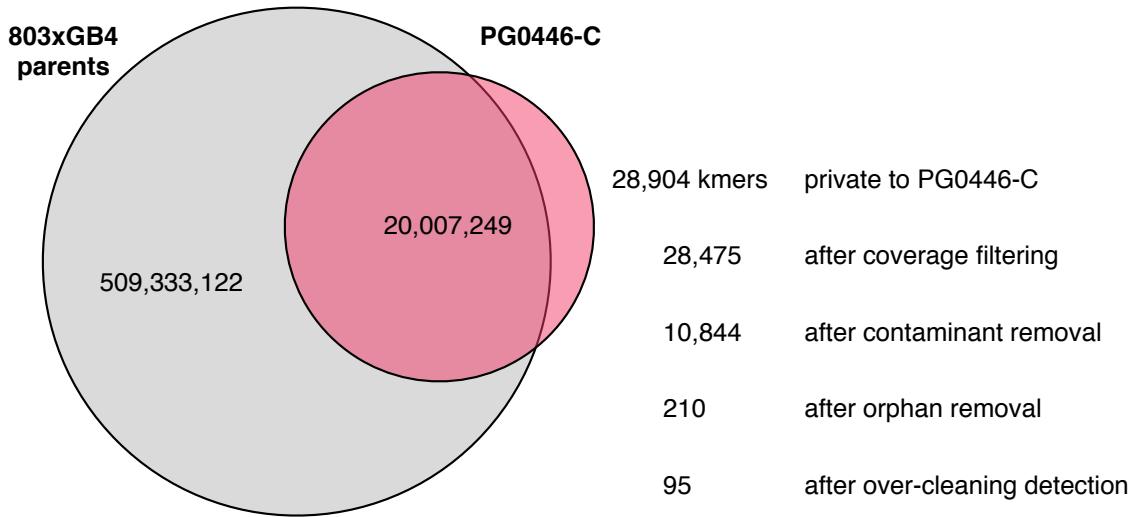
kmers that are on the same branch as rejected kmers are similarly tagged for rejection. Third, we explore the trio graph starting with remaining confident novel kmers. If the explored subgraph does not connect with the parental graphs in any way, the kmers in the branch are marked for rejection and removed from further consideration. Finally, we examine contigs with "overcleaned" novel kmers (i.e. any kmer that would be considered novel by comparing to the cleaned parental graphs, but is subsequently denied this label after examining the dirty parental graphs). Novel kmers found on the same contig are considered tainted and removed from consideration. Any putatively novel kmer surviving this battery of tests is considered "filtered".

The results of our novel kmer filtering are shown in Figure 6.10. 95 kmers survive our battery of filters to be considered truly novel sequence in the genome of the PG0446-C child. We called DNM<sub>s</sub> in the Illumina data using our graph-based calling software and discovered three events: two SNPs (47 kmers each) and a single kmer occurring in a repetitive region of a telomere; the precise nature of this single-kmer event is not clear. The PacBio dataset contains 51 novel kmers, 48 of which overlap our calls (one SNP and the unknown event). The other 47 kmers from the second SNP are not present in the PacBio assembly. However, manual inspection reveals this SNP to be polymorphic, possibly indicating a *de novo* mutation that has occurred in the sample during mitosis that has not yet reached fixation in the sequenced population of cells. It is likely that the event (shown in Figure ??) is a true variant, absent in the PacBio assembly as the Celera assembler is forced to make a choice between which allele to retain in the haploid assembly. The presence of the alternate allele in the uncorrected PacBio reads strongly suggests this is event is real and its absence from the assembly is an artifact of the assembler's bubble-popping procedure. The remaining 3 kmers from the PacBio dataset are not called in the Illumina data as they are low coverage (all at 1x coverage, all low complexity sequence, possibly representing recurrent sequencing errors in both the PacBio and Illumina data).

Based on the kmer recovery results listed above, our sensitivity to novel kmers is between 94% and 100% (depending on whether the 3 missed kmers are considered truly novel kmers or sequencing errors), and specificity is greater than 99%. Both SNPs and the unknown third event are recovered successfully. The two SNPs are shown in Figures 6.11 (A to G, 13 : 2,032,381) and 6.12 (C to T, 14 : 1,396,035, a non-synonymous substitution resulting in a T to I amino acid change). Figure ?? shows the third, unknown event.

### 6.2.2 Comparison to reference-based analysis

We sought to determine our relative ability to detect DNM<sub>s</sub> accurately compared to that of the reference-based analysis. As the release version of the MalariaGen callset purposefully



**Figure 6.10:** The results of filtering kmers private to the PG0446-C child

excluded *de novo* mutations (attempting to minimize Mendelian error rates to ensure high confidence in the inherited variation callset), we set about processing the Illumina data from the PG0446-C trio (PG0443-C (803), PG0050-CX2 (GB4), and PG0446-C) ourselves. Reads were aligned with `bwa mem` to the 3D7 reference genome, release 9.0 from PlasmoDB. PCR duplicates were marked with the `MarkDuplicates` program from the Picard suite; these marked reads were subsequently ignored in downstream processing. A list of genomic regions with reads appearing to span indels were discovered using the GATK's `RealignerTargetCreator` module (supplemented by MalariaGen's 803xGB4 calls as additional candidate regions to consider). We subsequently ran the GATK's `IndelRealigner` to perform the local realignments on these candidate regions. We recalibrated base quality scores using the GATK's `BaseRecalibrator` tool, once again supplying the MalariaGen calls as sites to ignore when computing the data error model. Variants were called across the PG0443-C, PG0050-CX2, and PG0446-C samples simultaneously using the GATK's `HaplotypeCaller` module, which performs local *de novo* assembly to determine the haplotype sequence at so-called "active sites", windows of the genome detected to harbor some sort of variation. For each approach, we specified a ploidy of 1. SNPs and indels were filtered separately using the GATK's `VariantRecalibrator` tool, supplying the MalariaGen calls as training data. We set the desired truth sensitivity to 99% (i.e. requesting that the recalibration tool learn filter thresholds such that at least 99% of the MalariaGen calls were recapitulated). Finally, we isolated putative DNM s by selecting sites confidently called in all three samples, where the genotype of the child differed from that of mother and father, requiring confident genotypes in all three samples (i.e.  $GQ > 90$ ), and sufficient allele depth in all three samples (i.e.  $DP > 20$ ).

**Table 6.6:** Callset metrics in the PG0446-C sample of the trio

	All	In MalariaGen	Not in MalariaGen	Core	Accessory
SNPs					
<i>all</i>	28,613	5,742	22,871	13,700	14,913
<i>de novo</i>	128	0	128	7	121
Insertions					
<i>all</i>	15,163	4,543	10,620	12,540	2,623
<i>de novo</i>	38	0	38	8	30
Deletions					
<i>all</i>	17,762	5,160	12,602	15,123	2,639
<i>de novo</i>	30	0	25	5	25
MNPs					
<i>all</i>	144	0	144	65	79
<i>de novo</i>	0	0	0	0	0

Callset metrics are presented in Table 6.6. Note that while MalariaGen chose to include calls only in the so-called "core" region of the genome (comprising 20.7 Mbp of sequence), we have included the accessory genome in our callset as well (the remaining 2.5 Mbp of genomic sequence spanning telomeric, subtelomeric, pericentromeric, and other hypervariable loci). For a fairer comparison, we have partitioned the calls into the core and accessory regions. Furthermore, in addition to the monomorphic sites one expects to see in a haploid genome for a *de novo* variant that occurs during meiosis or in one of the gametocytes, the trio contains thousands of polymorphic sites (23,004 sites where the reference allele and alternate allele have non-zero coverage, 4,364 with reference and alternate allele coverage greater than 10x). Both the accessory genome and polymorphic sites are easily removed. However, given that our graph-based approach is theoretically able to access the accessory genome and that we saw at least one polymorphic site in our graph-based *de novo* mutation callset, we chose not to exclude these sites at this stage.

We identified 196 potential *de novo* variants in the PG0443-C sample using the reference-based `HaplotypeCaller` approach and the filters described above. This is two orders of magnitude greater than the number of DNM s we found in the PacBio data. As expected, much of this putative variation appears in the accessory compartments of the genome, owing to the massive divergence between the reference and sampled haplotypes. However, even when we restrict our analysis to the core genome, we still find an order of magnitude more events than we expect.

We sought to establish the veracity of any of these putative *de novo* events. Assuming the child's underlying haplotype is the reference haplotype plus the variants discovered in that sample, we expected to find kmers spanning the DNM s to be present in the

PacBio assembly, present in the clean graph of the child, and absent in the dirty graphs of the parents. Revisiting Algorithm 1 from Chapter 1, we combinatorically generated kmers spanning all *de novo* variants and any nearby variants (including variants that were filtered out) that would affect the local haplotype. 30,360 such kmers were generated, 3,740 of which are present in our PacBio draft reference for the child. 3,547 ( $\approx 95\%$ ) of these kmers are present in the Illumina data for the child as well. 3,500 of these are present in the dirty graphs of the parents, suggesting that all associated events (195/196) are false positives.

The remaining 47 kmers represent a single SNP: the clearly homozygous SNP on chromosome 13 discussed in the previous section. This is the only event recapitulated between the PacBio dataset and these calls. However, we note that in selecting our coverage thresholds, we benefitted from prior knowledge. The coverage in the 803 parent is approximately  $30x$ , while coverage in the GB4 parent and the child are in excess of  $60x$ ; our depth filtering threshold was specifically chosen to recover this validated variant. The SNP is shown in Figure 6.14; the PG0443-C (803) panel shows the drop in coverage in the downstream intergenic region beyond PF3D7\_1350600. In this region, sequence complexity drops sharply, dominated by runs of As and Ts. Sequencing error may be accumulating in reads sampled from this region such that they fail to align back, thus contributing to the coverage falloff. Raising the coverage threshold would of course remove more false-positives, but there is no *a priori* reason to choose a threshold of  $20x$  versus  $30x$  (especially when average coverage in the 803xGB4 samples is around  $200x \pm 100x$ ).

The polymorphic variant on chromosome 14 is not present in the reference-based callset, owing to the fact that we instructed `HaplotypeCaller` to assume a ploidy of 1. If we genotype this site alone without the ploidy specification, we can recover the event. However, removing the ploidy specification does not mean allowing any ratio of reference to non-reference alleles at a putative variant site. Instead, the software simply defaults to a ploidy of 2, which is not necessarily a correct assumption to make for our data. The ploidy setting merely enables the caller to adjust its allele balance expectations, and revising it upwards increases the chance that the caller will accept sequencing error as variation. Thus, removing the ploidy setting would necessarily increase the false-positive rate as well.

We visually inspected the alignments spanning the false *de novo* events using IGV. Many of these sites were seemingly polymorphic as well, in close proximity to one another, and in known high-diversity regions of the genome. Figure 6.15 depicts one such example of false-positives on chromosome 2. It is possible to begin adding heuristic filters

to remove these events (e.g. rejecting events on allele balance, inter-marker distance, and the genomic compartment in which they are discovered). However, there are two very good reasons not to do so.

First, consider the underlying cause of these artifacts. The myriad inconsistencies between the Illumina reads for PG0446-C, the PacBio reads for the same sample, and the presence of many mapping quality 0 reads, strongly suggests misalignment. The true haplotype from which these reads are sampled are clearly not in the reference genome, but are similar enough that many reads map anyway, and the precise placement is a function of read length and repetitiveness of the sampled haplotype. When we align reads from this region in the child to the PacBio reference for the child, we find that most map to chromosome 1, not chromosome 2. Filters can only accomplish one thing: reject potential false-positives. However, filters can do nothing to address the root issue: the reads were sampled from one region of the child's genome and aligned to a sample too genetically divergent in these loci to serve as a useful platform for comparison. Application of such filters would necessarily require sacrificing any ability to say something meaningful about enormous diverse regions of the genome.

Second, consider what these variants in a haploid genome must represent: *de novo* mutations that have occurred while the parasites have been in culture and have not reached fixation in the sample. These events necessarily must have occurred during mitosis, as mutations incurred during meiosis or present in the gametocytes would appear in every read spanning the site. Filtering any events based on allele balance would necessarily mean discarding every potential mitotic *de novo* mutation<sup>9</sup>.

## 6.3 *De novo mutations in a single 3D7xHB3 sample*

### 6.3.1 *List of mutations*

A single validation sample is limited in its ability to inform us on the efficacy of the graphical variant calling approach, particularly as it apparently lacks an NAHR or other complex event for us to inspect. We thus turned our attention to a single sample from the 3D7xHB3 cross: PG0063-C. This sample is known to harbor an NAHR event between two *var* genes: *PF3D7\_0100100* (situated in the 5' subtelomere of chromosome 1), and *PF3D7\_0223500* (the 3' subtelomere of chromosome 2). Their validated presence in PG0063-C makes this sample a particularly useful test sample for examination.

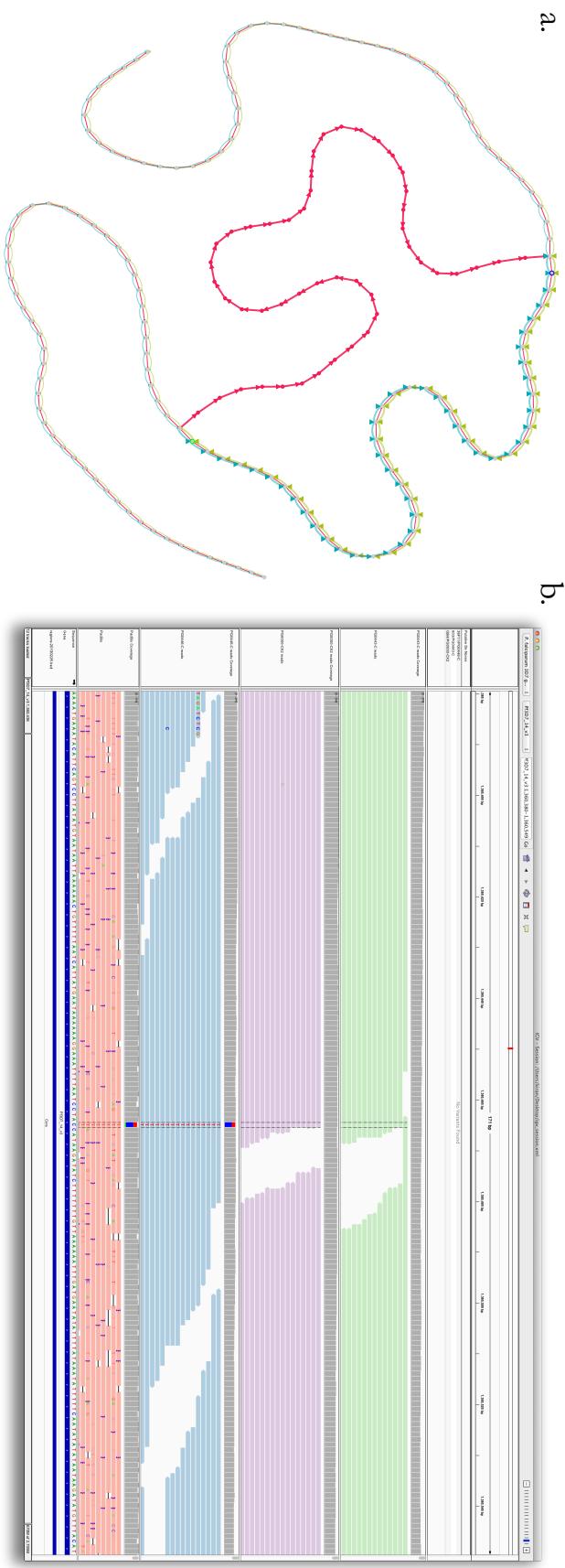
---

<sup>9</sup>In a haploid genome, every true variant presenting as seemingly polymorphic must be a mitotic event, but as some mutations could have reached fixation in the sample, not every mitotic event will necessarily present as polymorphic.

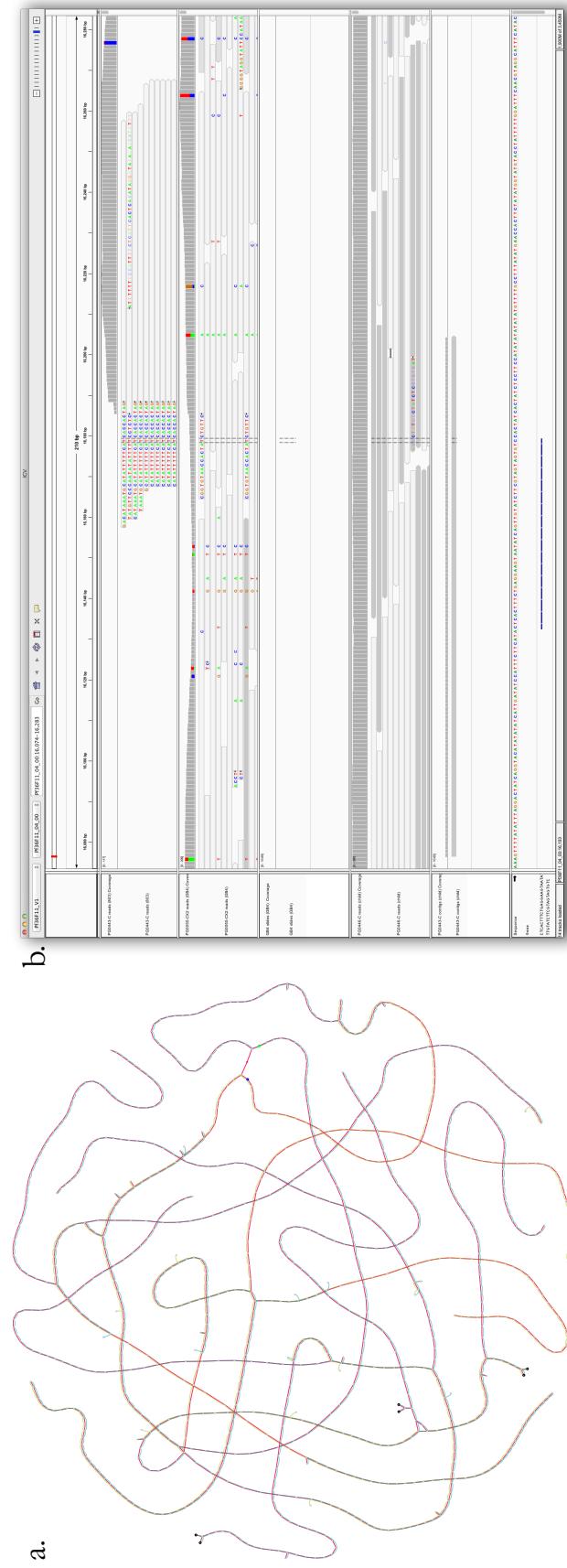
Applying our novel kmer identification software (and the new filters described above), we identified 314 novel kmers corresponding to 77 putative events. Post-calling filtration brought this list down to 7 events, described in Table 6.7. These events are annotated with the locus, the haplotypic background of the variant, variant type, closest gene (and the associated product), and whether the variant falls within the MalariaGen variant calling exclusion mask. The variants can be seen in their genomic context in Figure 6.16.



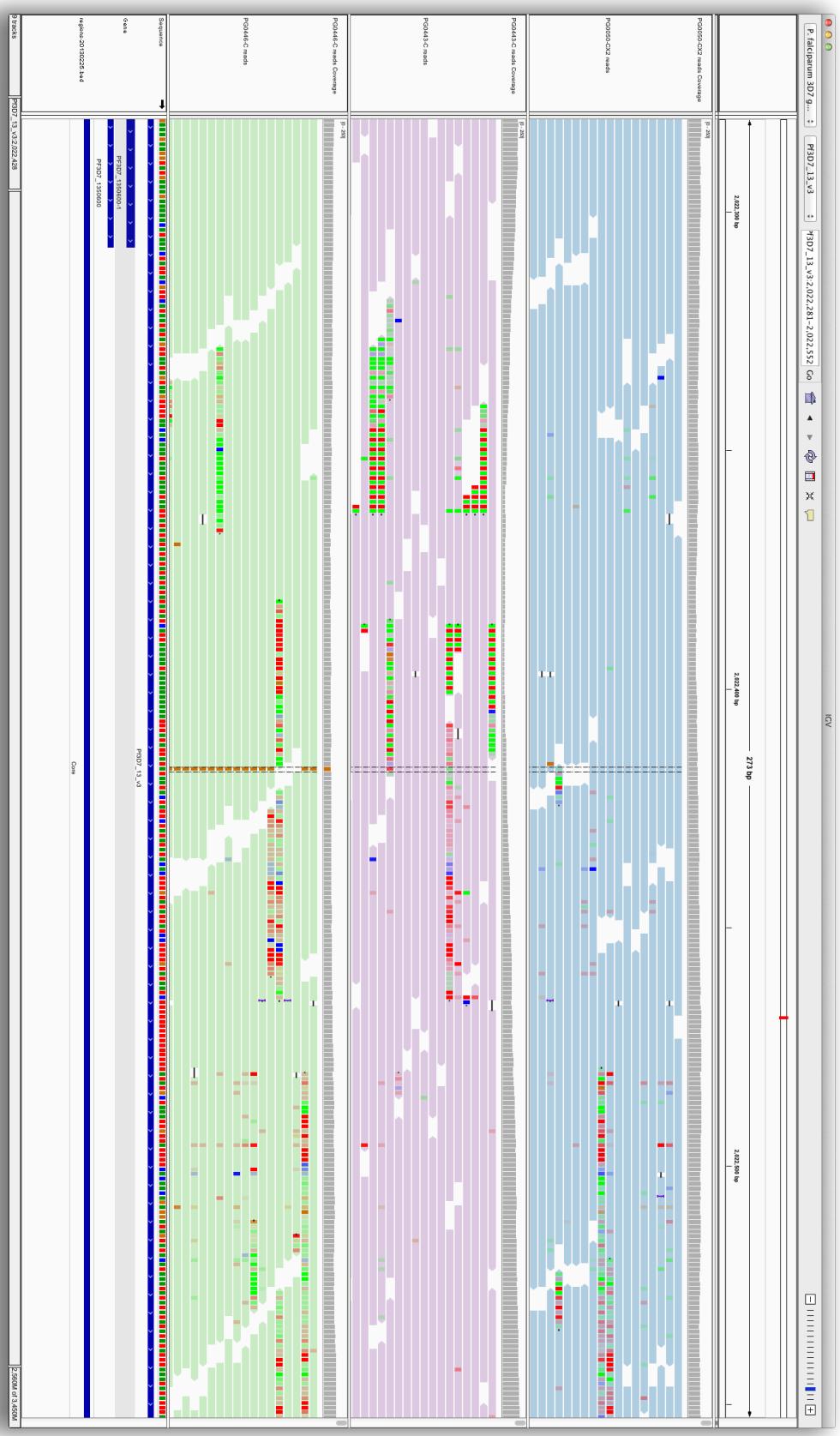
**Figure 6.11:** IGV screenshot of an A to G SNP, showing reads and assembly information for the trio, aligned to the PacBio PG0446-C assembly. Top panel: 803. Middle two: GB4 reads and PacBio assembly (sliced to facilitate alignment). Lower two: PG0446-C reads and contig containing the variant in question from the a panel.



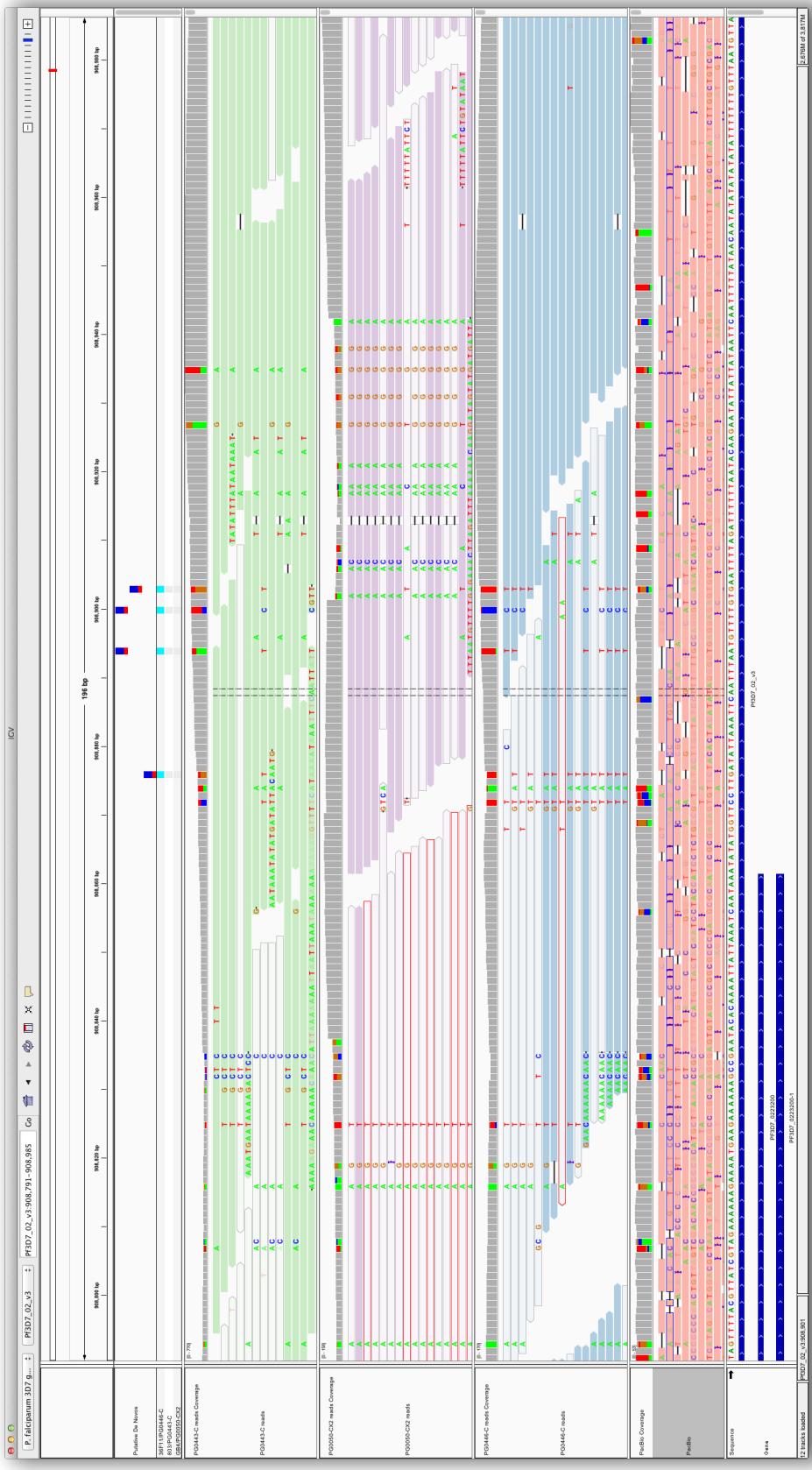
**Figure 6.12:** A C to T SNP that has likely not reached fixation in the sequenced population of ostensibly clonal parasites. a. Local subgraph at the site, wherein the child's graph contains paths that traverse the series of novel kmers as well as the parental kmers, indicating polymorphic status. b. IGV screenshot of the site showing reads and assembly information for the trio, aligned to the 3D7 reference genome. Top panel: positions of the called variants in the reference-based analysis. Second panel: PGo443-C (803). Third: PGo050-CX2 (GB4). Fourth: PGo446-C (child). Fifth: Uncorrected PacBio reads from PGo446-C. Bottom: gene model track from PlasmoDB 9.0. Stacked barplots above tracks indicate the proportion of reads supporting each allele.



**Figure 6.13:** A strange event involving a single novel kmer. a. Local subgraph at the site; the novel kmer in question is depicted as a filled red vertex in the right side of the image. b. IGV screenshot of the site showing reads and assembly information for the trio, aligned to the PacBio PG0446-C assembly.



**Figure 6.14:** A validated *de novo* SNP, recovered in the child amidst a great deal of sequencing error. Top panel: PGoo443-C (803). Middle panel: PGoo50-CX2 (GB4). Lower panel: PGoo446-C (child).



**Figure 6.15:** False-positive *de novo* variants in the 3' subtelomeric region of chromosome 2. Top panel: positions of the called variants in the reference-based analysis. Second panel: PG0443-C (803). Third: PG0050-CX2 (GB4). Fourth: PG0446-C (child). Fifth: Uncorrected PacBio reads from PG0446-C. Bottom: gene model track from PlasmoDB 9.0. Stacked barplots above tracks indicate the proportion of reads supporting each allele. Reads with ambiguous alignments are displayed in a lighter shade.

**Table 6.7:** *De novo* variants in 3D7xHB3 progeny, PGoo63-C

	locus	background	event	closest gene	product	within mask
1 (a)	1:27,780	3D7	SNP	PF3D7_0100100	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (b)	1:27,782	3D7	MNP	PF3D7_0100100	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (c)	1:27,854	3D7	MNP	PF3D7_0100100	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (d)	1:29,441;2:923,083	3D7	NAHR	PF3D7_0100100;PF3D7_0223500	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (e)	2:923,083;8:21,877	3D7	NAHR	PF3D7_0223500;PF3D7_0800100	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (f)	8:21,877;1:30,087	3D7	NAHR	PF3D7_0800100;PF3D7_0100100	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (g)	2:925,756;1:27,374	3D7	unknown	PF3D7_0100100;PF3D7_0223500	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
1 (h)	2:919,850	3D7	SNP	PF3D7_0223500	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
2	2:394,194	HB3	unknown	PF3D7_0209600	transporter	no
3	4:568,395	3D7	SNP	PF3D7_0412700	PfEMP1 (var)	yes
4	4:568,401	3D7	SNP	PF3D7_0412700	PfEMP1 (var)	yes

There are several noteworthy features of Table 6.7 and Figure 6.16. First, we discover a variety of event types, including SNPs (depicted in the plot with large circles), indels (triangles), multi-nucleotide polymorphisms (squares), and NAHR events (diamonds). Few events could not be typed (small circles).

Second, we are able to localize all mutational events within the parental genomes, even if the precise nature of the event could not be ascertained. Here, we benefit from aligning the parental sequences rather than the child's sequence or short 76 bp reads. The parental sequences are often longer than a read length, and should obviously match the parental genomes more closely. This provides the alignment software more context and less variation with which to determine an appropriate home for the mutation.

Third, we are able to identify interchromosomal exchanges, including the known NAHR event between PF3D7\_0100100 on the 5' end of chromosome 1 and PF3D7\_0223500 on the 3' end of chromosome 2.<sup>108</sup> Curiously, there is another apparent interchromosomal exchange involving these two *var* genes and one on chromosomes 8. No such recombination is reported in the literature, and the event is supported by a very short contig aligned to chromosome 8 (< 50 bp). While it is conceivable that the NAHR machinery may switch templates to potentially involve content from a third chromosome, it is more plausible that the recombination process gave rise to a short region of low-complexity sequence that happens to occur elsewhere in the genome.

Fourth, we are able to detect mutations that occur in regions of the reference genome typically ignored in reference-based analyses. MalariaGen deliberately excluded a number of regions from processing, including repetitive regions (often telomeric, centromeric, or pericentromeric regions) as short reads could often not be aligned in long repetitive regions with confidence. It also excluded hypervariable regions (typically subtelomeric) as population diversity was too high to yield confident results in the reference-based analysis. As we are comparing each sample to a parental graph rather than a reference sequence that is an undetermined number of generations removed, our graphical approach can reconstruct and localize these events.

Fifth, our calls in this sample appear overwhelmingly concentrated in or near antigenic genes (8/9). Such a skew is unusual, especially given the fact that our algorithm is hypothesis-free and is not biased towards processing any particular region of the genome.

Sixth, the call rate is reasonably low; 9 events in this sample total. However, the first several events in the table appear to take place in the same *var* genes. Presumably, these events are all part of the single NAHR event. Counted together, the revised *de novo* mutation count is 4. Both are consistent with the expectation from the validation data that *de novo* mutations should be rare.

Subtelomeric regions (and the antigenic genes contained within) are known to be high in repetitive sequence. To visualize the potential relationship between sequence content and variant location, we examined a number of different sequence properties. Shown in Figure 6.16 above each parental assembly track is one of these metrics: the sequence compression ratio. Many of our DNM calls appear to follow closely with spikes in the local sequence compressibility measure. Quite often these spikes correspond with being in a masked repetitive region.

### 6.3.2 *Manual examination of all de novo mutations*

To establish the veracity of these calls, we manually examined all events in Table 6.7 in IGV and our custom graph viewing software.

#### 6.3.2.1 *Event 1 (a-h): NAHR*

The first event in Table 6.7 appears to be an NAHR event. Unfortunately, short reads are insufficient to capture the entire event in a single contig. Instead, we see pieces of the chromosomal exchange manifest as a series of SNPs, MNPs, and longer sequences that co-localize disparate regions of the genome onto a single contig.

The first three variants (1a – c: a SNP and two MNPs), are depicted in Figure 6.17. Upon initial inspection, it is not immediately obvious that the child's reads are sampled from the maternal or paternal haplotypes at all. Many apparent variants from the HB<sub>3</sub> parent are not present in the child. Several loci appear to be polymorphic. It is tempting to conclude that the results are indicative of sequencing error or myriad mutational events sustained in mitosis. However, given the repetitive nature of the locus, the presence of ambiguously aligned reads (shown in translucent colors), and reads with several mismatches, it is more likely that many reads sampled from similar haplotypes are simply misaligned to the sole copy in the reference sequence.

The local subgraph for these events, shown in Figure 6.18, exhibits a complicated structure containing several tendrils to homologous (but irrelevant) regions of the genome. Despite this complexity, two bubble motifs (drawn with thicker lines) can clearly be observed, encapsulating the first SNP/MNP<sup>10</sup> and second MNP. Inspection of individual vertices in the event reveals all kmers to be of nominal coverage ( $> 40x$ ), and the subgraph itself is devoid of any suspicious kmers (contaminants, exceedingly low-coverage sequence, or dirty kmers) that would be suggestive of error.

The next four events capture the NAHR event itself and are displayed in Figure 6.19. The graphical view shows a very simple structure, unmarred by indications of sequencing

---

<sup>10</sup>As these events are separated by less than a kmer length, they present as a single bubble.

error. Starting from the upper right, the child and 3D7 assemblies track along chromosome 1 until the child's assembly forks off, apparently passing through a few kmers from chromosome 8, rejoining at chromosome 2. Meanwhile, the 3D7 genome continues to track along chromosome 1 until it rejoins a region of the child's assembly (towards the bottom of the image). Here, 3D7 and the child fork again, with the child's assembly connecting again to chromosome 2. The IGV panels show the reads aligned to these regions of the 3D7 reference genome. In the *b* panel (showing the 5' end of chromosome 1), the reads appear to be sampled largely from the 3D7 parent until an abrupt change midway through the track (denoted by the red bar). Similarly, the *c* panel shows a region on chromosome 2 that supports the 3D7 haplotype over a window substantially longer than a read length (300 bp).

The last mutation seemingly associated with the NAHR event is a single SNP; the context is shown in Figure 6.20. A naive analysis would not assign *de novo* status to such an event as there appears to be some evidence for this allele in the HB3 parent. However, the left and right sections of the HB3 reads flanking the putative variant exhibit an extraordinary number of mismatches and are clipped off in the alignment. A small number of reads have mapping quality 0, indicating that the aligner had no confidence in their placement. While the 3D7 parent and the child are covered over this region to  $> 150x$ , the HB3 sample is only covered to  $20x$ , with many apparent holes in the coverage across the 200 bp region shown. Finally, the child's alignments are very clean across this region: no mismatches, no clipped reads, and consistent coverage. It is likely that the HB3 alignments are in error - a homologous region from another *var* gene have landed here because the proper haplotype is not represented in the reference. Our graphical method detects the mutation on the correct haplotypic background and calls it accordingly.

#### 6.3.2.2 Event 2: unknown

Event 2 is an unknown event, seemingly localized to the 5' telomere of chromosome 2. However, examination of the subgraph (Figure 6.21) reveals the event in question likely stems from a graphical "tangle": a region of the graph where long, uninterrupted, singly-connected regions of the graph collapse into a messy structure wherein every vertex appears to connect to many others. The IGV screenshot for this region (Figure 6.22) shows a number of errorful reads spanning a homopolymer region. If these results are due to a recurrent error by the sequencer (sometimes skipping one, two, or many bases), they may occur slightly differently between samples and often enough to produce enough kmers to overcome the novelty coverage thresholds. This would give rise to a stretch of novel kmers near the low-complexity region that fails to resolve into a *de novo* variant.

One can conceive of a few simple checks to remove these events from our callset (e.g. walking the graph within a certain radius to discover potential nearby tangles). However, such regions may also be biologically interesting, potentially giving rise to small indels induced by DNA repair over those low-complexity sequences. Unclassified events are not harmful to us, as they will not count in measures of SNP, MNP, indel, or NAHR event mutation rates. They simply eat up novel kmers without assigning any identity to the kmers. For these reasons, we have not made strong efforts to filter them out.

### 6.3.2.3 Events 3 and 4: two SNPs

Figure 6.23 show the last events in this sample, two SNPs set 5 bp apart, and reveal an interesting limitation of our graphical approach. While our alignments of the parental sequence suggest these events occur on chromosome 4, no evidence for the events are found at that locus. A BLAST search reveals the proper home (barring a single nucleotide) to be on chromosome 1, within the PF3D7\_0100100 *var* gene - the same gene involved in the NAHR event described above. This locus is shown in Figure ???. The misplacement of these events are likely due to an error in the reference sequence. A single nucleotide error in the reference sequence prevents us from finding the true home of the kmers spanning the error. By chance, those aberrant kmer exist elsewhere in the genome: a *var* gene on chromosome 4. This misleads us into choosing the home on chromosome 1 instead. Thus, while the events are likely to be real, our placement is erroneous.

### 6.3.3 Rejected events

Post-calling filters rejected nine putative *de novo* events. These events were rejected for a variety of reasons: either internal use of dirty kmers exceeded a maximum threshold of 10% (5), the novel kmers were found at the extremities of a graph with no apparent connection to any other part of the genome (2), or the contig failed to align to any part of the genome (2). Most rejected events were of an "unknown" event type (no label could be reasonably assigned to the putative variant). One was a potential recombination event, but upon inspection of the data in IGV, a recombination event is not readily apparent.

Events lacking alignments do not visualize well; there is nothing to display in IGV and the graph itself is non-descript (potentially an unrecognized contaminant). An event with dirty kmers and an event with novel kmers without connection to the rest of the graph are shown in Figure 6.25. Notice that these filters are clearly not orthogonal; had the event with dirty kmers remained in consideration, it would have been flagged as a disconnected event as well.

#### 6.3.4 Novel kmer accounting

Figure 6.26 details the cumulative usage of novel kmers in the PGoo63-C sample. Of the 314 novel kmers detected, 154 were discarded as part of events suspected not to be true mutational events. The remaining 160 are present in mutational events passing filters. 156/160 (97.5%) of novel kmers could be assigned to a definable mutational type.

### 6.4 *De novo mutations in all crosses and samples*

#### 6.4.1 Novel kmer use

We applied our software to determine the number of novel kmers in all samples and all crosses. These per-sample counts are shown in Figure 6.27. Counts are largely consistent across samples and crosses, typically ranging from a few hundred to a few thousand novel kmers. Notably, the 803xGB4 samples have substantially more novel kmers than the other crosses. While the median number of novel kmers per sample in the 3D7xHB3, HB3xDD2, and 7G8xGB4 crosses are 340, 278, and 173 respectively, the median count in the 803xGB4 cross is 1,650 with a very large variance. Given that we've seen the larger-than-expected assembly lengths and a tremendous amount of data contamination, it seems likely that this excess is due to incomplete mitigation of those factors via our filtration process. Rather than the samples harboring a vast amount of *de novo* mutation activity, we expect to find a large fraction of calls in these samples to be unclassifiable.

Next, we applied our DNM calling software to all samples. To see how many of the novel kmers were explained by variants passing filters, unknown events passing filters, or events failing filters, we superimposed the variant calls' novel kmer usage atop the total number of novel kmers per sample. As evident in Figure 6.28, there is substantial variation between samples. As predicted, many of the 803xGB4 variants are unclassified. The median fraction of kmers explained by definable variants passing filters is a mere 29%, but when events failing filters are removed from consideration, this number jumps to 70% of novel kmers explained.

#### 6.4.2 Variants per sample and cross

Within each sample, we removed allelic variants appearing within the same gene as an NAHR event since, as we saw in the previous section, partial recovery of NAHR events can lead to erroneous accounting of the true mutation rates. This rejects 211 additional events, leaving us with 7,193 that pass filters.

The monomorphic and polymorphic variants per sample and cross are summarized in Tables 6.8 and 6.9. Behavior is largely consistent between samples and crosses. Typically,

**Table 6.8:** Monomorphic variants and rates of occurrence per cross and per sample

	3D7xHB3	HB3xDD2	7G8xGB4	803xGB4
Samples	20	36	26	33
SNP	26 (1.37 ± 1.07)	45 (0.97 ± 1.43)	77 (1.05 ± 1.38)	187 (1.34 ± 1.42)
Insertions	3 (0.00 ± 0.00)	15 (0.38 ± 0.61)	13 (0.00 ± 0.00)	33 (0.52 ± 0.69)
<i>STR expansion</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	8 (0.00 ± 0.00)	8 (0.00 ± 0.00)	25 (0.45 ± 0.51)
<i>Tandem duplication</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	2 (0.00 ± 0.00)	3 (0.00 ± 0.00)	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Other</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	5 (0.00 ± 0.00)	2 (0.00 ± 0.00)	7 (0.00 ± 0.00)
Deletions	5 (0.26 ± 0.45)	35 (1.06 ± 1.14)	39 (0.66 ± 0.73)	41 (0.63 ± 0.67)
<i>STR contraction</i>	4 (0.00 ± 0.00)	13 (0.39 ± 0.61)	18 (0.28 ± 0.55)	17 (0.42 ± 0.66)
<i>Other</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	22 (0.43 ± 0.68)	21 (0.41 ± 0.58)	24 (0.44 ± 0.56)
MNP	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	17 (0.31 ± 0.59)	15 (0.00 ± 0.00)	50 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Inversion</i>	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Other</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	17 (0.31 ± 0.59)	15 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)
NAHR	6 (0.00 ± 0.00)	13 (0.00 ± 0.00)	4 (0.00 ± 0.00)	15 (0.00 ± 0.00)
Recombination	6 (0.00 ± 0.00)	32 (0.00 ± 0.00)	19 (0.42 ± 0.58)	59 (0.54 ± 0.58)
unknown	21 (0.00 ± 0.00)	828 (0.00 ± 0.00)	1548 (0.00 ± 0.00)	1513 (0.00 ± 0.00)

each sample harbors only one or two monomorphic variants (presumably accumulated prior to or during meiosis), and fewer polymorphic variants (presumably accumulated during mitosis). SNPs are the most common variant, followed by deletion events. Insertions and multinucleotide polymorphisms occur rarely. We detect no inversions.

At first glance, the 803xGB4 cross seems to harbor an unusual amount of NAHR activity. However, we believe skepticism is warranted for this type of variant in this cross. The key to detecting NAHR events is determining that many kmers co-localize on the same contig in the child but originate from different chromosomes in the parent. With a poor 803 parental assembly constructed from short Illumina reads, many events may span multiple parental contigs but be part of the same chromosome. A possible solution would be to align these parental contigs to the 3D7 reference and apply heuristics, rejecting any event where different contigs involved in the event align to the same chromosome. However, this solution is not necessarily workable. The assembled contigs are short, and the divergence between 803 and 3D7 is very high, particularly in the subtelomeric regions where true events almost certainly originate. Therefore, alignment of the parental contigs to the 3D7 reference is not expected to solve the problem. We have initiated an effort to have the 803 parent sequenced on PacBio instruments. At of this writing, such data is not expected to be available for several months.

**Table 6.9:** Polymorphic variants and rates of occurrence per cross and per sample

	<i>3D7xHB3</i>	<i>HB3xDD2</i>	<i>7G8xGB4</i>	<i>803xGB4</i>
Samples	20	36	26	33
SNP	11 (0.00 ± 0.00)	96 (0.38 ± 0.73)	149 (0.62 ± 1.14)	207 (1.66 ± 2.02)
Insertions	2 (0.00 ± 0.00)	16 (0.00 ± 0.00)	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	35 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>STR expansion</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	30 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Tandem duplication</i>	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	2 (0.00 ± 0.00)	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	4 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Other</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	14 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)
Deletions	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	17 (0.00 ± 0.00)	10 (0.00 ± 0.00)	214 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>STR contraction</i>	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	7 (0.00 ± 0.00)	8 (0.00 ± 0.00)	71 (0.17 ± 0.38)
<i>Other</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	10 (0.00 ± 0.00)	2 (0.00 ± 0.00)	143 (0.28 ± 0.59)
MNP	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	11 (0.00 ± 0.00)	34 (0.00 ± 0.00)	31 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Inversion</i>	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)
<i>Other</i>	1 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	34 (0.00 ± 0.00)	31 (0.00 ± 0.00)
NAHR	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)
Recombination	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)	2 (0.00 ± 0.00)	0 (0.00 ± 0.00)

#### 6.4.3 Manual examination of every event in the *3D7xHB3* cross

To estimate a false discovery rate, we manually examined all 83 monomorphic and polymorphic events in the *3D7xHB3* cross using our graph visualization software and IGV. 50/83 events appear to have clear support in both visualizations. The vast majority of these events are so-called bubble-motif variants, with the exception of the NAHR event in PG0063-C and an unknown event (a misclassification - an event is called in the correct location, but upon closer inspection, appears to be two biallelic SNPs in close proximity, confusing the calling software). Another 12 events had uncertain validation status; one was a putative NAHR event, another was a recombination event, two were polymorphic variants, and the remaining 8 could not be typed. Finally, 25 events were clear false-positives owing to various issues (e.g. proximity to a repetitive region or otherwise appearing artifactual). The bulk of such events could not be typed (12) or were non-bubble-motif (7). It was rare for bubble-motif variants to manifest as false-positives; occurring for a single insertion and 5 SNPs. In the case of the SNPs, all false-positives appeared as a result of misclassifying an inherited event as *de novo* due to the mutations' proximity to another event - usually a polymorphic variant. The polymorphic event makes it appear that the haplotypic background of the variant is different from the true background which contains the SNP. Thus, when our caller goes to examine the evidence, it finds novel kmers due to the polymorphic event, finds the inherited mutation in close proximity, misassociates the two, and calls the variant.

Ignoring untyped events and pessimistically assuming that any event with uncertain

validation status was false, we estimate our FDR to be 18/68, or approximately 26%. However, we should expect that NAHR and recombination events carry a much higher false-positive rate and drive the bulk of this estimate. After removing these events from consideration, we find our FDR is 9/54, or approximately 16%.

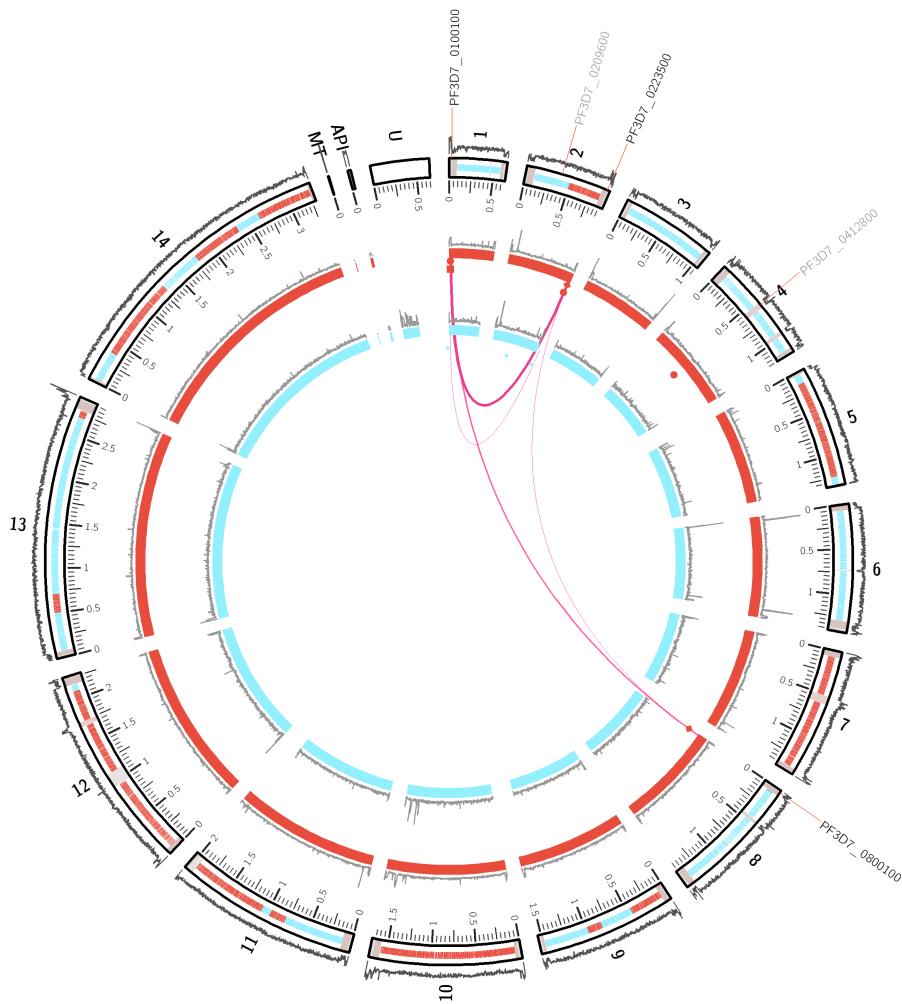
#### 6.4.4 Recovery of published *var* gene recombinations

The underlying dataset for our study was partially available to Claessens *et al.* at the time of their study. In their reference-based work, Claessens *et al.* identified many *var* gene recombinations involving exon 1, including subtelomeric members and centrally-located members of the gene family. As core *var* gene recombinations have not been reported in the past, we sought to confirm these events with our reference-free methods. The calls from Claessens *et al.* and our study are summarized in Table 6.10. Of the 12 calls they make in the shared 3D7xHB3 and HB3xDD2 samples, a single event is recapitulated by our graphical method: the well-known PGoo63-C event. 6 more of their events find no visual support in our reference-free kmer accounting method, which would otherwise indicate some sort of structural variant activity (even it is unable to prove that the event occurred between two specific genes in question). 3 more events do show some signs of NAHR activity, but not between the genes listed by Claessens *et al.*. No recombinations between core *var* genes validate visually.

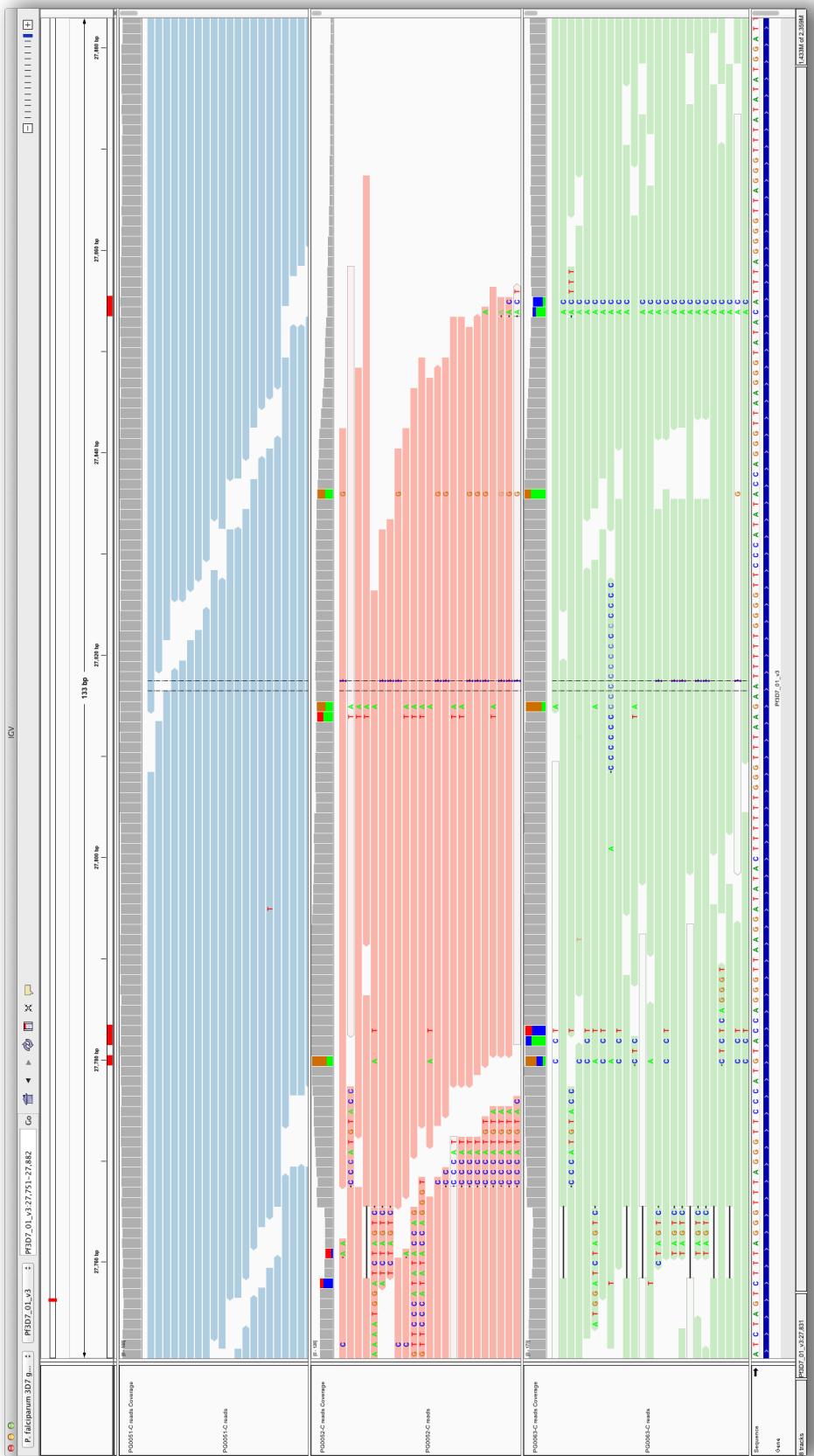
In contrast, examining the 3D7xHB3 and HB3xDD2 crosses, we find 5 events, all of which are supported by the kmer recovery diagnostic plots. Figure 6.29 shows an example of a seemingly false-positive core *var* gene recombination (a) and a true event (b).

**Table 6.10:** NAHR events in Claessens *et al.* and this study

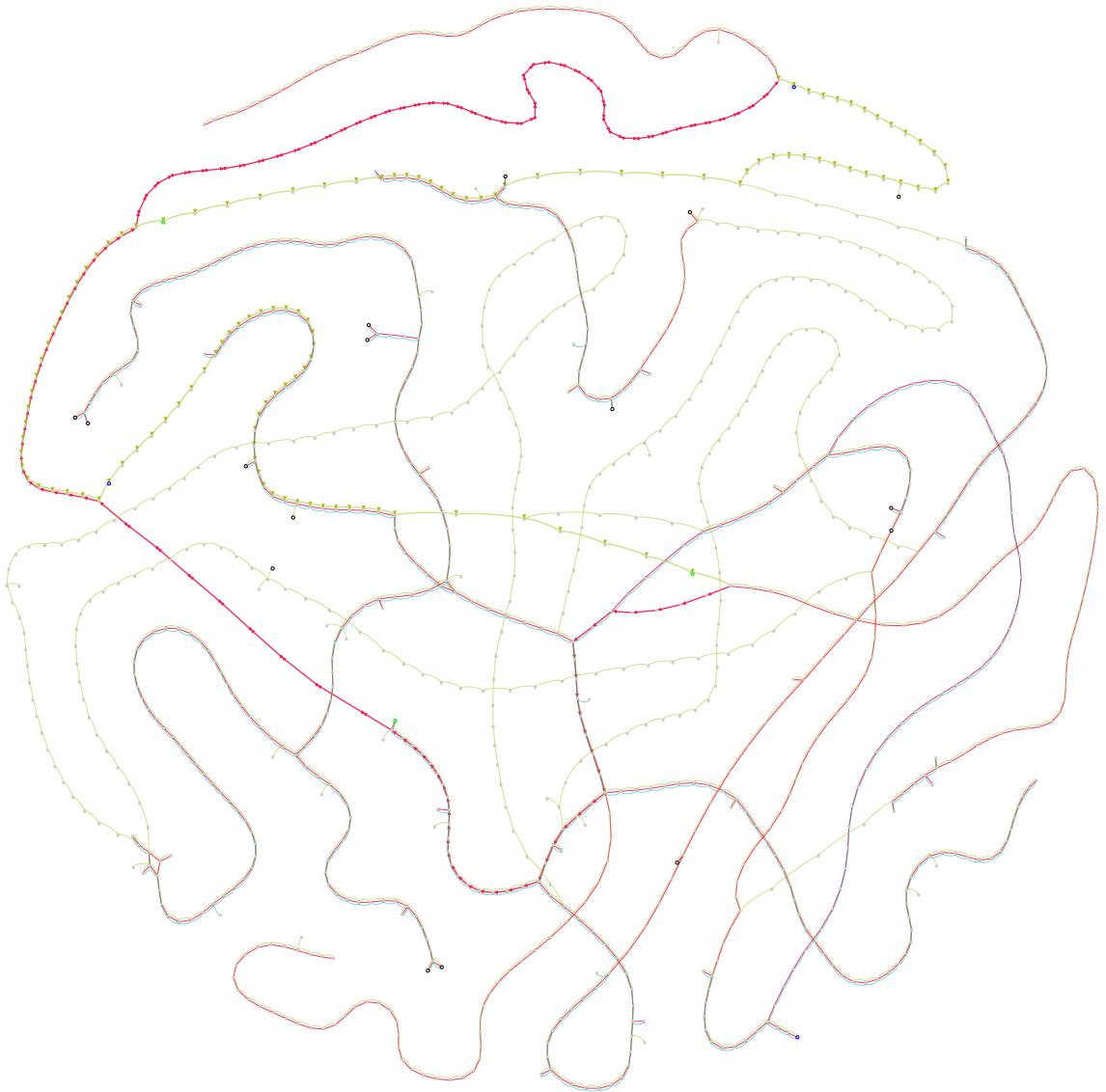
Sample	Cross	Called in Claessens <i>et al.</i>	Called in this study	Support in kmer recovery
PG0015-C	HB3xDD2	n	y	y
PG0018-C	HB3xDD2	n	y	y
PG0020-C	HB3xDD2	y	n	n
PG0025-C	HB3xDD2	n	y	n
PG0030-C	HB3xDD2	y	n	n
PG0034-C	HB3xDD2	y	n	y
PG0035-Cx	HB3xDD2	n	y	n
PG0036-C	HB3xDD2	y	n	wrong genes
PG0038-C	HB3xDD2	y	n	y
PG0044-C	HB3xDD2	y	n	n
PG0054-C	3D7xHB3	y	n	n
PG0055-C	3D7xHB3	n	y	y
PG0058-C	3D7xHB3	y	n	wrong gene
PG0063-C	3D7xHB3	y	y	y
PG0067-C	3D7xHB3	n	y	n
PG0068-C	3D7xHB3	y	n	n
PG0069-C	3D7xHB3	y	n	n
PG0070-C	3D7xHB3	n	y	n
PG0071-C	3D7xHB3	n	y	y
PG0072-C	3D7xHB3	y	n	wrong gene
PG0079-CW	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0082-C	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0085-C	7G8xGB4	y	y	NA
PG0087-C	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0088-C	7G8xGB4	y	y	NA
PG0095-C	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0100-CW	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0103-CW	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0105-CW	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0107-C	7G8xGB4	y	n	NA
PG0112-C	7G8xGB4	NA	y	NA
PG0113-C	7G8xGB4	NA	y	NA
PG0444-C	803xGB4	NA	y	NA
PG0456-C	803xGB4	NA	y	NA
PG0459-C	803xGB4	NA	y	NA
PG0468-C	803xGB4	NA	y	NA
PG0469-C	803xGB4	NA	y	NA



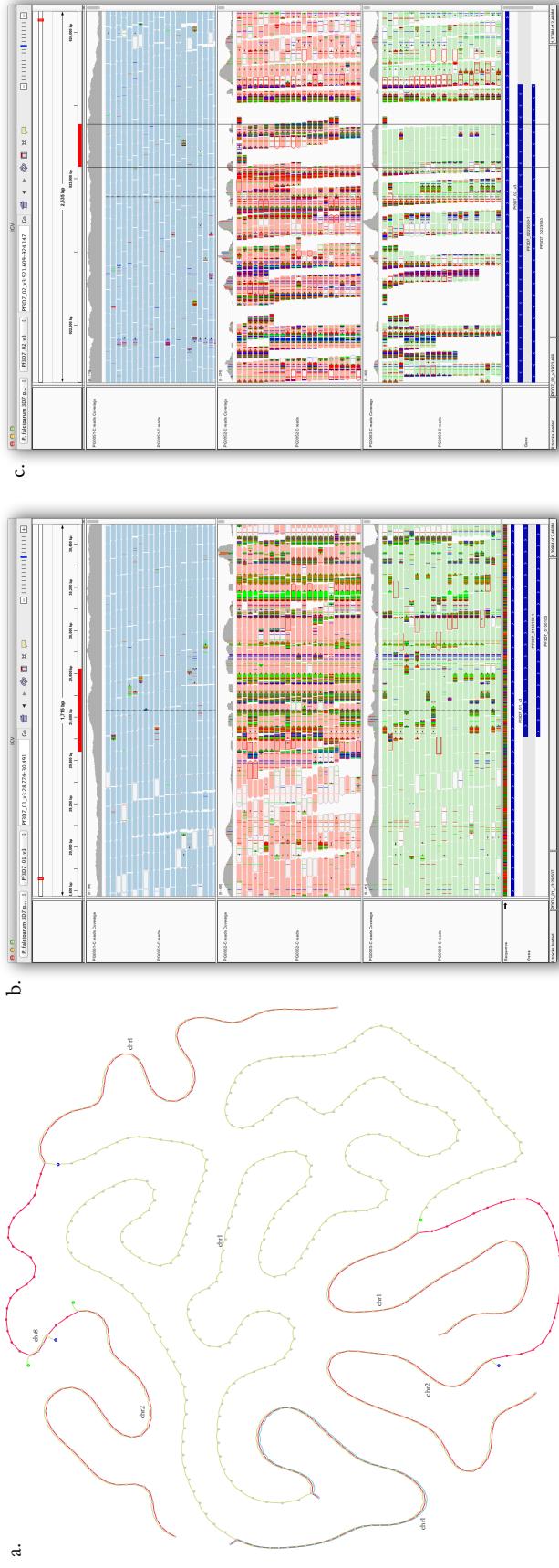
**Figure 6.16:** Circos visualization of all *de novo* mutations in PGoo63-C, positioned on the reference sequence (outer ring), aligned maternal assembly (middle), and aligned paternal assembly (inner). Unplaced parental contigs are concatenated and placed in the "U" pseudochromosome. Each parental ring is annotated with a sequence compressibility score for every 2,500 bp shown above their ideograms, while the reference ring is annotated with mean read coverage per 2,500 bp. Within the reference ideogram, all reference-based variant calls made in this sample from the MalariaGen project are shown, color-coded to reflect their parentage. Regions that were masked out of MalariaGen's variant calling process are shown as grey bars. Variants are shown as glyphs below the parental ideograms, shape-coded for type (small circle: unknown, large circle: SNP, triangle: indel, square: MNP, diamond: NAHR event). The color and positioning of the glyph reflects the haplotypic background upon which the event occurred. Interchromosomal structural variation and gene-conversion events are additionally denoted as arcs linking the relevant parts of the genome. The closest gene to the event is reported in black if the mutation falls within the gene and as grey if it falls outside the gene.



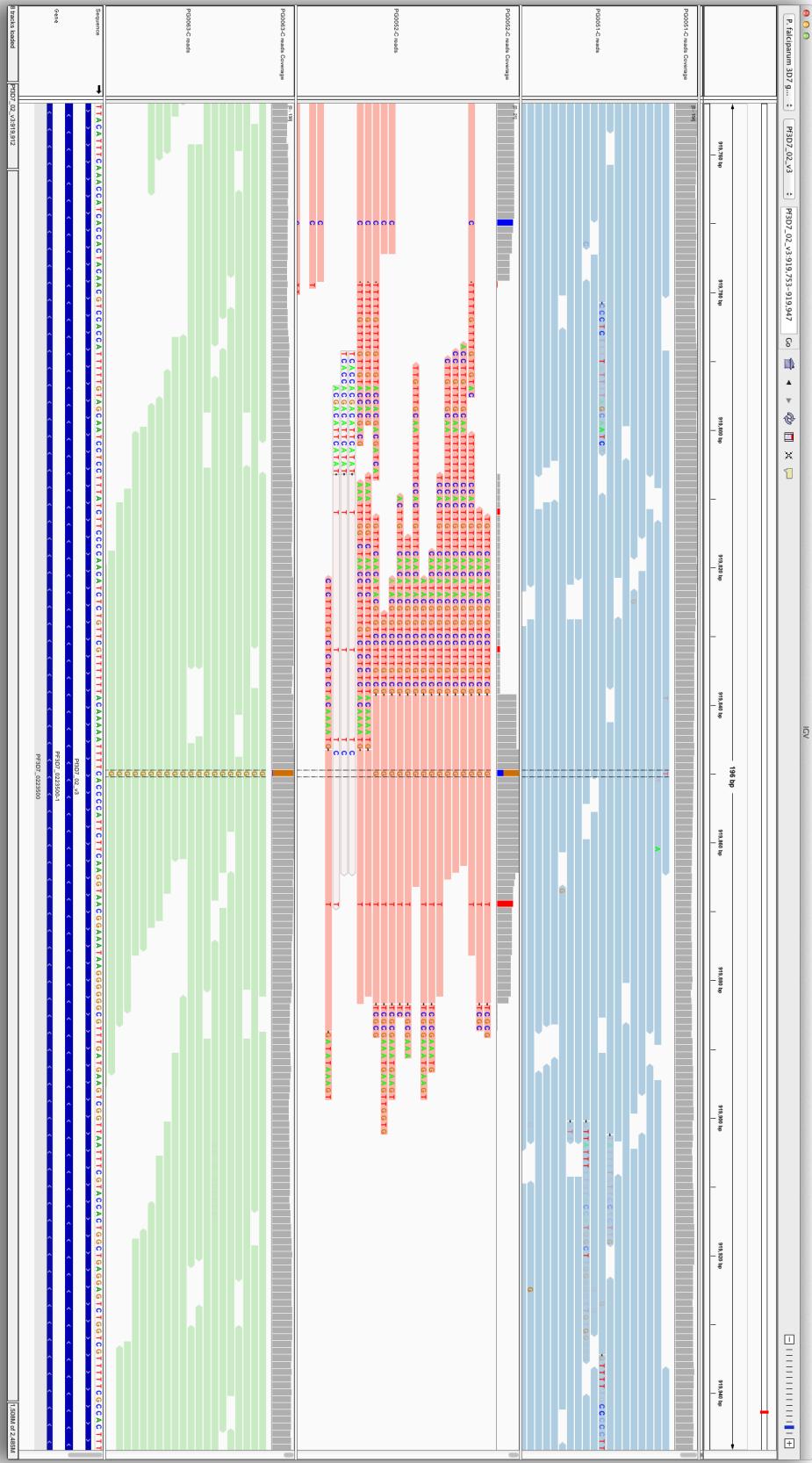
**Figure 6.17:** IGV screenshot of SNP and two MNPs: three apparent *de novo* mutations within a much larger NAHR event. Top panel: 3D7 parent. Middle panel: HB<sub>3</sub> parent. Lower panel: PG0063-C child. Variant positions are shown as red blocks at the top of the three panels below the genome position track. Stacked barplots above variant positions indicate the proportion of bases supporting an alternate allele to the reference.



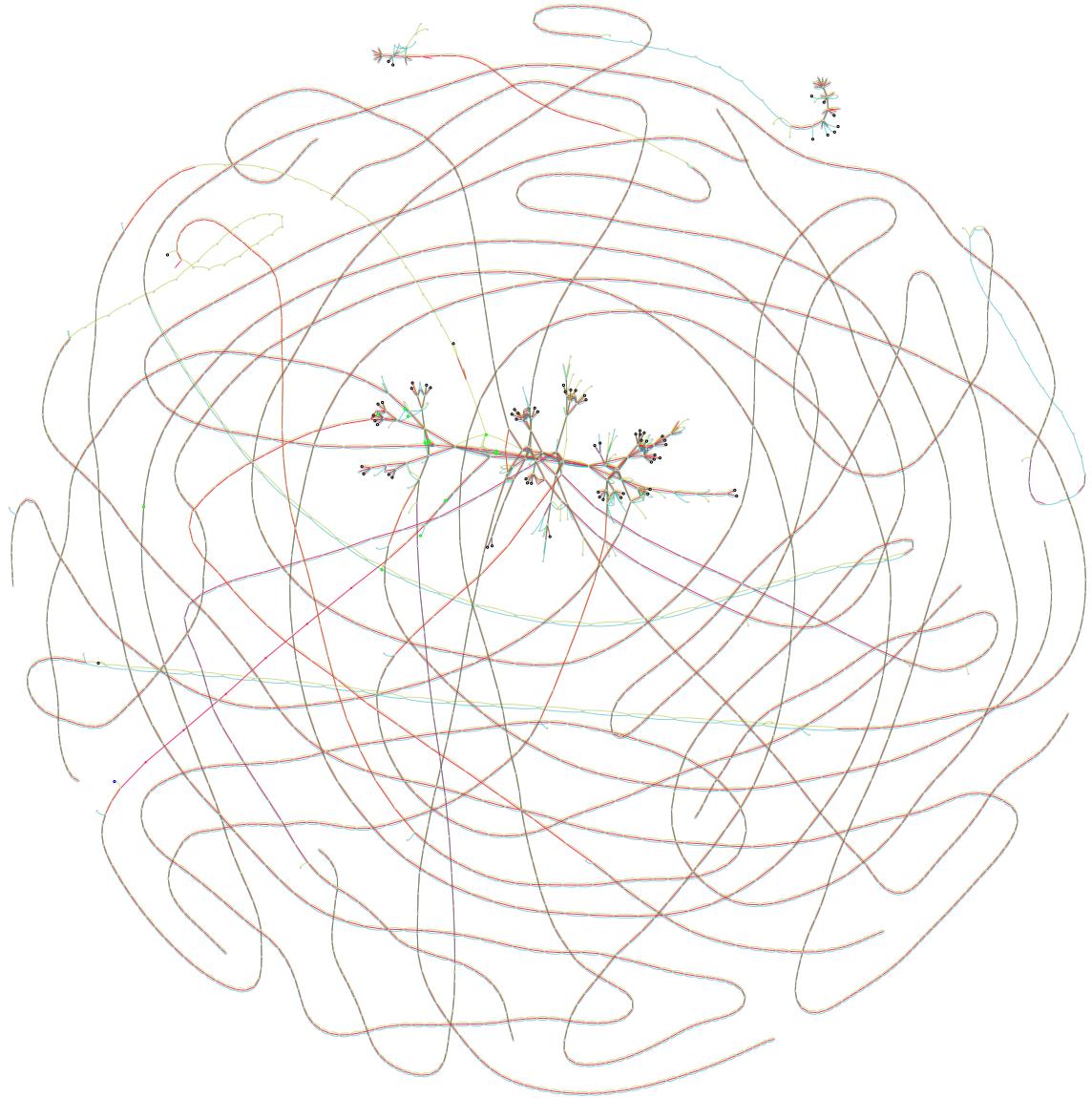
**Figure 6.18:** IGV screenshot of SNP and two MNPs: three apparent *de novo* mutations within a much larger NAHR event. Top panel: 3D7 parent. Middle panel: HB3 parent. Lower panel: PGoo63-C child. Variant positions are shown as red blocks at the top of the three panels below the genome position track. Stacked barplots above variant positions indicate the proportion of bases supporting an alternate allele to the reference.



**Figure 6.19:** A NAHR event. a. Graphical view of the exchange; chromosome of origin specified for various regions. b. IGV screenshot for 3D7 (top), HB<sub>3</sub> (middle), and PGoo63-C (child) on the chromosome 1 region of the event. c. IGV screenshot of the chromosome 2 region of the event.



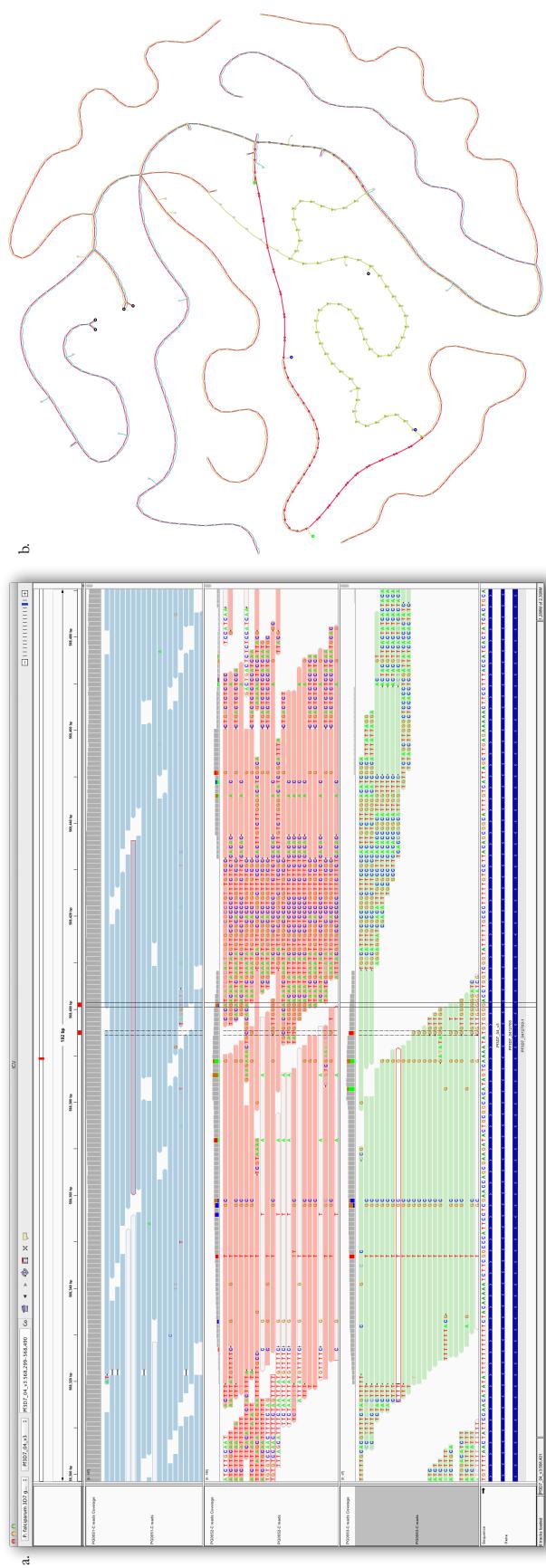
**Figure 6.20:** A *de novo* SNP in a *var* on the 3D7 haplotypic background. Top panel: 3D7. Middle: HB3. Lower: PG0063-C child.



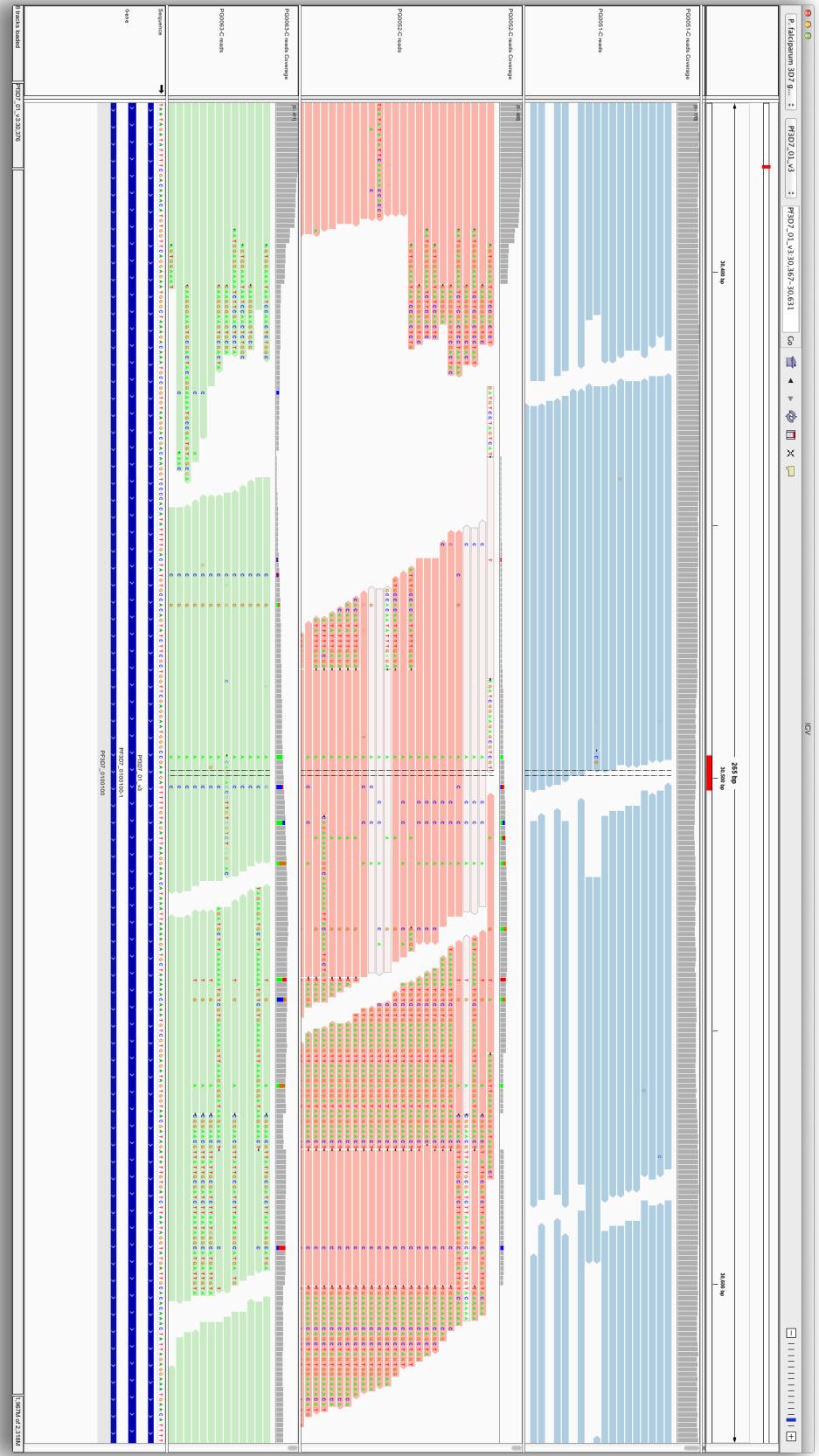
**Figure 6.21:** A graph "tangle": a region of the graph where the in/out degree of vertices within a small radius sharply increases, resulting from attempting to traverse a low-complexity region of the genome.

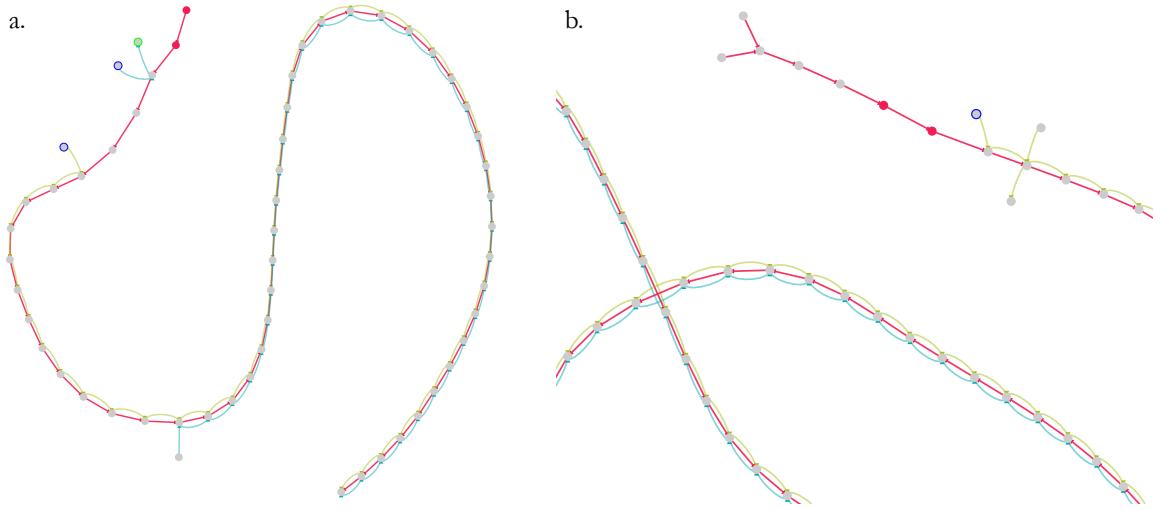


Figure 6.22: A low-complexity region of the genome containing many reads with many apparent errors.

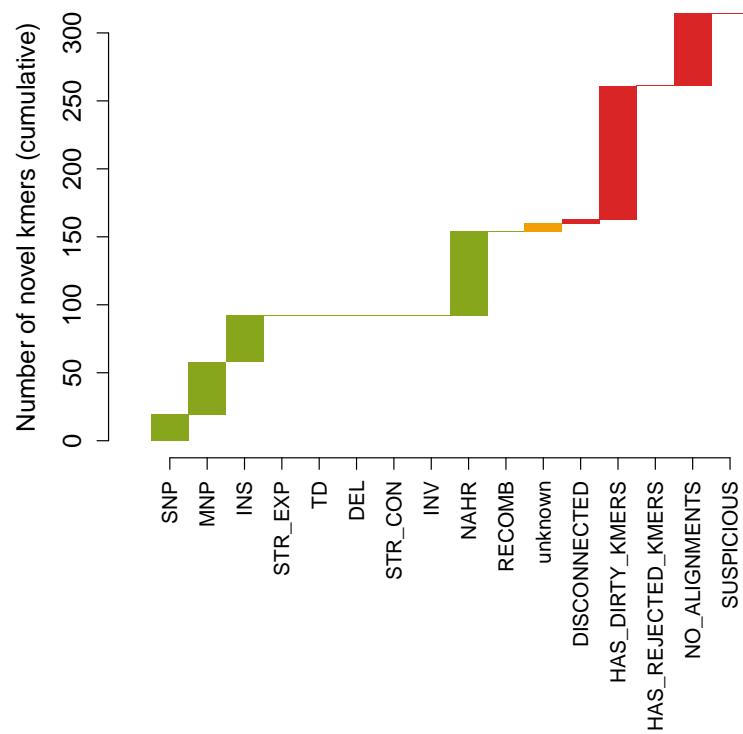


**Figure 6.23:** Two SNPs, non-obvious from the alignments, but apparent in graph. a. IGV screenshot of two *de novo* SNPs in a *var* gene.  
 b. Graphical view of the two SNPs.

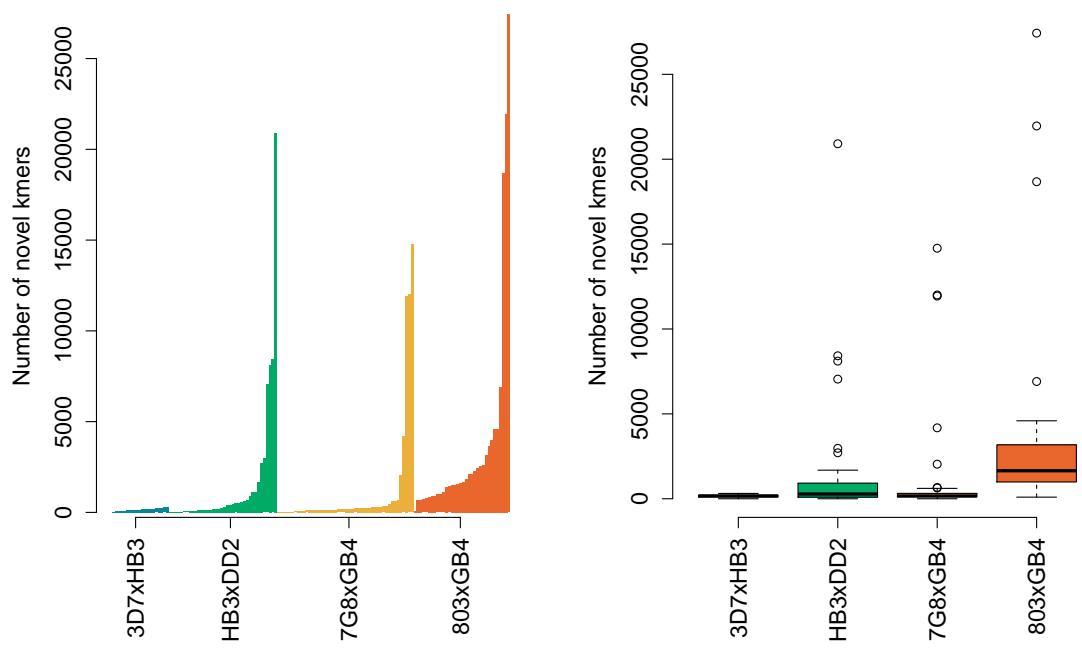




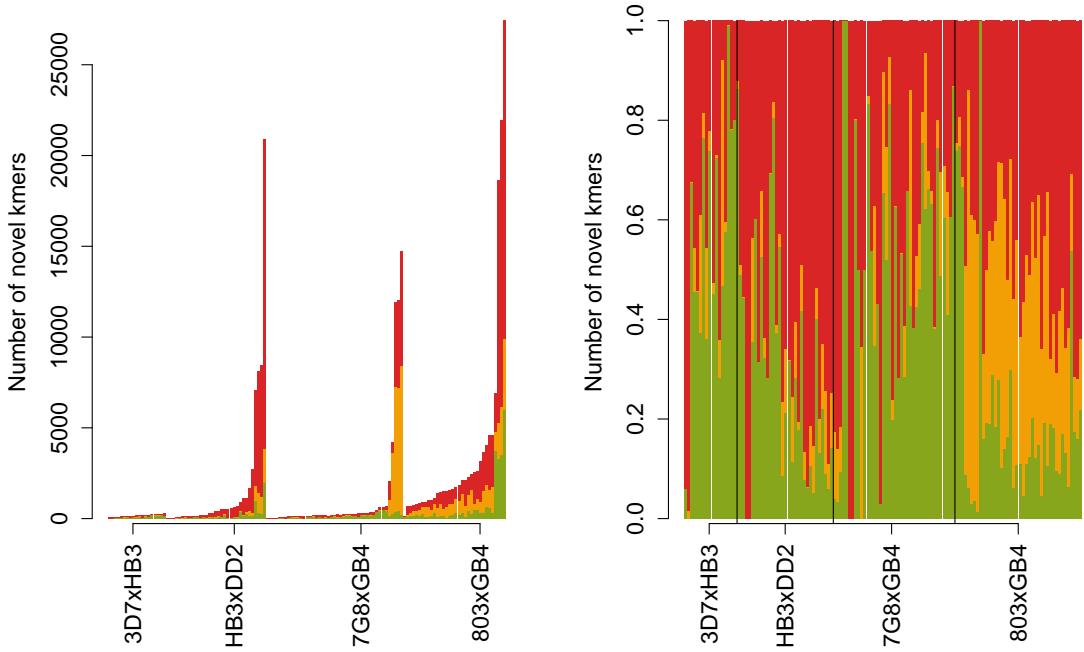
**Figure 6.25:** Graph motifs for discarded events. a. Disconnected events: novel kmers that fail to link back to the genome. b. "Dirty" events: the dirty kmers (shown in grey with red edges) make up more than 10% of the novel kmers in the region.



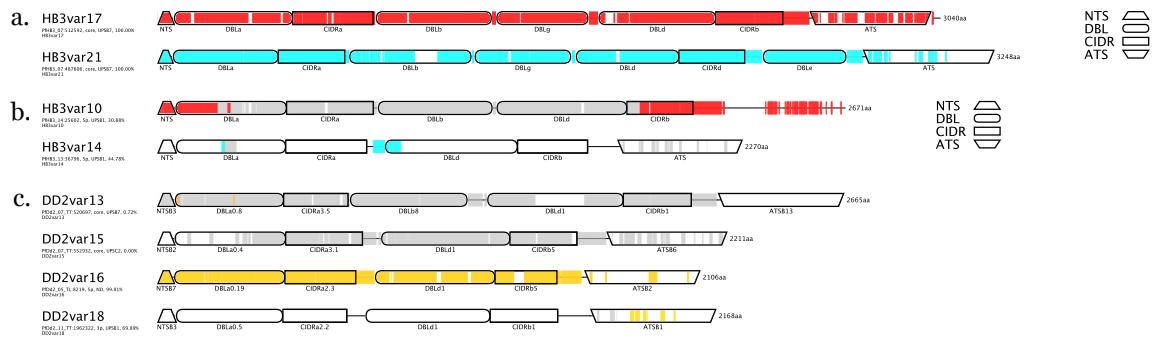
**Figure 6.26:** Cumulative accounting of novel kmers and the mutation types to which they correspond. Events passing filters are depicted in green. Those failing filters are in red.



**Figure 6.27:** Novel kmers per sample and cross. Left: number of novel kmers in each sample, after filtering. Right: distribution of novel kmers per sample in each cross.



**Figure 6.28:** Novel kmer usage by variants per sample and cross. Left: novel kmers used in variants (green), in unknown events (orange), and events failing filters (red). Right: fraction of novel kmers used by variants (green), unknown events (orange), and events failing filters (red).



**Figure 6.29:** Recovery of diagnostic kmers in 3D7 and HB3 *var* genes. White regions indicate kmers that were not diagnostic. Vertical grey indicates a diagnostic kmer that absent in the progeny, while vertical colored lines indicate the kmer's presence. a. Two genes in PGoo20-C purported to have an NAHR event in Claessens *et al.*, but exhibiting no kmer loss indicative of an NAHR event. b. Two genes in PGoo34-C with missing diagnostic kmers, possibly indicative of an NAHR event. c. Two genes (DD2var13 and DD2var18) which exhibit very slight recovery or loss of diagnostic kmers towards their terminal ends.



## *7 Discussion*

A HIGH-QUALITY REFERENCE GENOME TREMENDOUSLY SIMPLIFIES genomic analysis and the subsequent communication of results. A reference acts as a canonical description of a genome upon which a community of scientists can annotate useful information (coding regions)

However, we have seen in this dissertation that the reference genome is not a panacea.  
(how it makes life harder)



## References

- [1] Thomas S Rask, Daniel A Hansen, Thor G Theander, Anders Gorm Pedersen, and Thomas Lavstsen. Plasmodium falciparum Erythrocyte Membrane Protein 1 Diversity in Seven Genomes – Divide and Conquer. *PLoS computational biology*, 6(9):e1000933, September 2010.
- [2] World Health Organization. Antimicrobial Resistance, 2014.
- [3] C Wang, K Takeuchi, L H Pinto, and R A Lamb. Ion channel activity of influenza A virus M<sub>2</sub> protein: characterization of the amantadine block. *Journal of virology*, 67(9):5585–5594, September 1993.
- [4] Martha I Nelson, Lone Simonsen, Cécile Viboud, Mark A Miller, and Edward C Holmes. The origin and global emergence of adamantane resistant A/H<sub>3</sub>N<sub>2</sub> influenza viruses. *Virology*, 388(2):270–278, June 2009.
- [5] Vegard Eldholm, Gunnstein Norheim, Bent von der Lippe, Wibeke Kinander, Ulf R Dahle, Dominique A Caugant, Turid Mannsåker, Anne T Mengshoel, Anne M Dyrhol-Riise, and Francois Balloux. Evolution of extensively drug-resistant Mycobacterium tuberculosis from a susceptible ancestor in a single patient. *Genome Biology*, 15(11):490, November 2014.
- [6] Matthew T G Holden, Edward J Feil, Jodi A Lindsay, Sharon J Peacock, Nicholas P J Day, Mark C Enright, Tim J Foster, Catrin E Moore, Laurence Hurst, Rebecca Atkin, Andrew Barron, Nathalie Bason, Stephen D Bentley, Carol Chillingworth, Tracey Chillingworth, Carol Churcher, Louise Clark, Craig Corton, Ann Cronin, Jon Doggett, Linda Dowd, Theresa Feltwell, Zahra Hance, Barbara Harris, Heidi Hauser, Simon Holroyd, Kay Jagels, Keith D James, Nicola Lennard, Alexandra Line, Rebecca Mayes, Sharon Moule, Karen Mungall, Douglas Ormond, Michael A Quail, Ester Rabinowitsch, Kim Rutherford, Mandy Sanders, Sarah Sharp, Mark Simmonds, Kim Stevens, Sally Whitehead, Bart G Barrell, Brian G Spratt, and Julian Parkhill. Complete genomes of two clinical Staphylococcus aureus strains: evidence

- for the rapid evolution of virulence and drug resistance. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 101(26):9786–9791, June 2004.
- [7] D Walliker, I Quakyi, T Wellem, T McCutchan, A Szafrman, W London, L Corcoran, T Burkot, and R Carter. Genetic analysis of the human malaria parasite *Plasmodium falciparum*. *Science (New York, NY)*, 236(4809):1661–1666, June 1987.
- [8] D S Peterson, D Walliker, and T E Wellem. Evidence that a point mutation in dihydrofolate reductase-thymidylate synthase confers resistance to pyrimethamine in falciparum malaria. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 85(23):9114–9118, December 1988.
- [9] T E Wellem, L J Panton, I Y Gluzman, V E do Rosario, R W Gwadz, A Walker-Jonah, and D J Krogstad. Chloroquine resistance not linked to mdr-like genes in a *Plasmodium falciparum* cross. *Nature*, 345(6272):253–255, May 1990.
- [10] A B Vaidya, O Muratova, F Guinet, D Keister, T E Wellem, and D C Kaslow. A genetic locus on *Plasmodium falciparum* chromosome 12 linked to a defect in mosquito-infectivity and male gametogenesis. *Molecular and biochemical parasitology*, 69(1):65–71, January 1995.
- [11] T Furuya, J Mu, K Hayton, A Liu, J Duan, L Nkrumah, D A Joy, D A Fidock, H Fujioka, A B Vaidya, T E Wellem, and X z Su. Disruption of a *Plasmodium falciparum* gene linked to male sexual development causes early arrest in gametocytogenesis. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 102(46):16813–16818, November 2005.
- [12] L H Freitas-Junior, E Bottius, L A Pirrit, K W Deitsch, C Scheidig, F Guinet, U Nehrbass, T E Wellem, and A Scherf. Frequent ectopic recombination of virulence factor genes in telomeric chromosome clusters of *P. falciparum*. *Nature*, 407(6807):1018–1022, October 2000.
- [13] Michael F Duffy, Timothy J Byrne, Celine Carret, Alasdair Ivens, and Graham V Brown. Ectopic recombination of a malaria var gene during mitosis associated with an altered var switch rate. *Journal of molecular biology*, 389(3):453–469, June 2009.
- [14] E W Myers. Toward simplifying and accurately formulating fragment assembly. *Journal of computational biology : a journal of computational molecular cell biology*, 2(2):275–290, 1995.

- [15] Elaine R Mardis. A decade's perspective on DNA sequencing technology. *Nature*, 470(7333):198–203, February 2011.
- [16] M C Schatz, A L Delcher, and S L Salzberg. Assembly of large genomes using second-generation sequencing. *Genome research*, 20(9):1165–1173, September 2010.
- [17] Paul Flicek and Ewan Birney. Sense from sequence reads: methods for alignment and assembly. *Nature methods*, 6(11s):S6–S12, November 2009.
- [18] Rasmus Nielsen, Joshua S Paul, Anders Albrechtsen, and Yun S Song. Genotype and SNP calling from next-generation sequencing data. *Nat Rev Genet*, 12(6):443–451, June 2011.
- [19] N Woodford and M J Ellington. The emergence of antibiotic resistance by mutation. *Clinical Microbiology and Infection*, 13(1):5–18, 2007.
- [20] Benjamin M Neale, Yan Kou, Li Liu, Avi Ma'ayan, Kaitlin E Samocha, Aniko Sabo, Chiao-Feng Lin, Christine Stevens, Li-San Wang, Vladimir Makarov, Paz Polak, Seungtai Yoon, Jared Maguire, Emily L Crawford, Nicholas G Campbell, Evan T Geller, Otto Valladares, Chad Schafer, Han Liu, Tuo Zhao, Guiqing Cai, Jayon Lihm, Ruth Dannenfelser, Omar Jabado, Zuleyma Peralta, Uma Nagaswamy, Donna Muzny, Jeffrey G Reid, Irene Newsham, Yuanqing Wu, Lora Lewis, Yi Han, Benjamin F Voight, Elaine Lim, Elizabeth Rossin, Andrew Kirby, Jason Flannick, Menachem Fromer, Khalid Shakir, Tim Fennell, Kiran Garimella, Eric Banks, Ryan Poplin, Stacey Gabriel, Mark Depristo, Jack R Wimbish, Braden E Boone, Shawn E Levy, Catalina Betancur, Shamil Sunyaev, Eric Boerwinkle, Joseph D Buxbaum, Edwin H Cook, Bernie Devlin, Richard A Gibbs, Kathryn Roeder, Gerard D Schellenberg, James S Sutcliffe, and Mark J Daly. Patterns and rates of exonic de novo mutations in autism spectrum disorders. *Nature*, 485(7397):242–245, May 2012.
- [21] Donald F Conrad, Jonathan E M Keebler, Mark A DePristo, Sarah J Lindsay, Yujun Zhang, Ferran Casals, Youssef Idaghdour, Chris L Hartl, Carlos Torroja, Kiran V Garimella, Martine Zilversmit, Reed Cartwright, Guy A Rouleau, Mark Daly, Eric A Stone, Matthew E Hurles, Philip Awadalla, and 1000 Genomes Project. Variation in genome-wide mutation rates within and between human families. *Nature genetics*, 43(7):712–714, July 2011.
- [22] Oliver Venn, Isaac Turner, Iain Mathieson, Natasja de Groot, Ronald Bontrop, and Gil McVean. Strong male bias drives germline mutation in chimpanzees. *Science (New York, NY)*, 344(6189):1272–1275, June 2014.

- [23] Wigard P Kloosterman, Laurent C Francioli, Fereydoun Hormozdiari, Tobias Marschall, Jayne Y Hehir-Kwa, Abdel Abdellaoui, Eric-Wubbo Lameijer, Matthijs H Moed, Vyacheslav Koval, Ivo Renkens, Markus J van Roosmalen, Pascal Arp, Lennart C Karssen, Bradley P Coe, Robert E Handsaker, Eka D Suchiman, Edwin Cuppen, Djie T Thung, Mitch McVey, Michael C Wendl, Andre Uitterlinden, Cornelia M van Duijn, Morris Swertz, Cisca Wijmenga, Gertjan van Ommen, P Eline Slagboom, Dorret I Boomsma, Alexander Schönhuth, Evan E Eichler, Paul I W de Bakker, Kai Ye, and Victor Guryev. Characteristics of de novo structural changes in the human genome. *Genome research*, page gr.185041.114, 2015.
- [24] Laurent C Francioli, Paz P Polak, Amnon Koren, Androniki Menelaou, Sung Chun, Ivo Renkens, Cornelia M van Duijn, Morris Swertz, Cisca Wijmenga, Gertjan van Ommen, P Eline Slagboom, Dorret I Boomsma, Kai Ye, Victor Guryev, Peter F Arndt, Wigard P Kloosterman, Paul I W de Bakker, and Shamil R Sunyaev. Genome-wide patterns and properties of de novo mutations in humans. *Nature genetics*, 47(7):822–826, May 2015.
- [25] Mark A DePristo, Eric Banks, Ryan Poplin, Kiran V Garimella, Jared R Maguire, Christopher Hartl, Anthony A Philippakis, Guillermo del Angel, Manuel A Rivas, Matt Hanna, Aaron McKenna, Tim J Fennell, Andrew M Kernytsky, Andrey Y Sivachenko, Kristian Cibulskis, Stacey B Gabriel, David Altshuler, and Mark J Daly. A framework for variation discovery and genotyping using next-generation DNA sequencing data. *Nature genetics*, 43(5):491–498, May 2011.
- [26] Andy Rimmer, Hang Phan, Iain Mathieson, Zamin Iqbal, Stephen R F Twigg, Andrew O M Wilkie, Gil McVean, and Gerton Lunter. Integrating mapping-, assembly- and haplotype-based approaches for calling variants in clinical sequencing applications. *Nature genetics*, 46(8):912–918, July 2014.
- [27] Eric S Lander and Michael S Waterman. Genomic mapping by fingerprinting random clones: A mathematical analysis. *Genomics*, 2(3):231–239, April 1988.
- [28] Zamin Iqbal, Mario Caccamo, Isaac Turner, Paul Flicek, and Gil McVean. De novo assembly and genotyping of variants using colored de Bruijn graphs. *Nature genetics*, 44(2):226–232, February 2012.
- [29] Malcolm J Gardner, Neil Hall, Eula Fung, Owen White, Matthew Berriman, Richard W Hyman, Jane M Carlton, Arnab Pain, Karen E Nelson, Shareen Bowman, Ian T Paulsen, Keith James, Jonathan A Eisen, Kim Rutherford, Steven L

Salzberg, Alister Craig, Sue Kyes, Man-Suen Chan, Vishvanath Nene, Shamira J Shallom, Bernard Suh, Jeremy Peterson, Sam Angiuoli, Mihaela Pertea, Jonathan Allen, Jeremy Selengut, Daniel Haft, Michael W Mather, Akhil B Vaidya, David M A Martin, Alan H Fairlamb, Martin J Fraunholz, David S Roos, Stuart A Ralph, Geoffrey I McFadden, Leda M Cummings, G Mani Subramanian, Chris Mungall, J Craig Venter, Daniel J Carucci, Stephen L Hoffman, Chris Newbold, Ronald W Davis, Claire M Fraser, and Bart Barrell. Genome sequence of the human malaria parasite *Plasmodium falciparum*. *Nature*, 419(6906):498–511, October 2002.

- [30] C Aurrecoechea, J Brestelli, B P Brunk, J Dommer, S Fischer, B Gajria, X Gao, A Gingle, G Grant, O S Harb, M Heiges, F Innamorato, J Iodice, J C Kissinger, E Kraemer, W Li, J A Miller, V Nayak, C Pennington, D F Pinney, D S Roos, C Ross, C J Stoeckert, C Treatman, and H Wang. PlasmoDB: a functional genomic database for malaria parasites. *Nucleic acids research*, 37(Database):D539–D543, January 2009.
- [31] Heng Li. Aligning sequence reads, clone sequences and assembly contigs with BWA-MEM. March 2013.
- [32] Aaron McKenna, Matthew Hanna, Eric Banks, Andrey Sivachenko, Kristian Cibulskis, Andrew Kernytsky, Kiran Garimella, David Altshuler, Stacey Gabriel, Mark Daly, and Mark A DePristo. The Genome Analysis Toolkit: a MapReduce framework for analyzing next-generation DNA sequencing data. *Genome research*, 20(9):1297–1303, September 2010.
- [33] Antoine Claessens, William L Hamilton, Mihir Kekre, Thomas D Otto, Adnan Faizullabhoy, Julian C Rayner, and Dominic Kwiatkowski. Generation of Antigenic Diversity in *Plasmodium falciparum* by Structured Rearrangement of Var Genes During Mitosis. *PLoS genetics*, 10(12):e1004812, December 2014.
- [34] Mark J P Chaisson, Richard K Wilson, and Evan E Eichler. Genetic variation and the de novo assembly of human genomes. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 16(11):627–640, November 2015.
- [35] Ronald Ross. On some Peculiar Pigmented Cells Found in Two Mosquitos Fed on Malarial Blood. *Br Med J*, 2(1929):1786–1788, December 1897.
- [36] Rogerio Amino, Sabine Thibierge, Béatrice Martin, Susanna Celli, Spencer Shorte, Friedrich Frischknecht, and Robert Ménard. Quantitative imaging of *Plasmodium* transmission from mosquito to mammal. *Nature medicine*, 12(2):220–224, January 2006.

- [37] Donato Torre, Filippo Speranza, Massimo Giola, Alberto Matteelli, Roberto Tambini, and Gilberto Biondi. Role of Th1 and Th2 Cytokines in Immune Response to Uncomplicated Plasmodium falciparum Malaria. *Clinical and Diagnostic Laboratory Immunology*, 9(2):348–351, March 2002.
- [38] K Lingelbach and K A Joiner. The parasitophorous vacuole membrane surrounding Plasmodium and Toxoplasma: an unusual compartment in infected cells. *Journal of cell science*, 111 ( Pt 11):1467–1475, June 1998.
- [39] Teun Bousema, Lucy Okell, Ingrid Felger, and Chris Drakeley. Asymptomatic malaria infections: detectability, transmissibility and public health relevance. *Nature reviews. Microbiology*, 12(12):833–840, December 2014.
- [40] Miguel Prudêncio, Ana Rodriguez, and Maria M Mota. The silent path to thousands of merozoites: the Plasmodium liver stage. *Nature reviews. Microbiology*, 4(11):849–856, November 2006.
- [41] Kenneth Murphy, Paul Travers, and Mark Walport. *Janeway's Immunobiology*. Garland Science, October 2011.
- [42] Alan F Cowman and Brendan S Crabb. Invasion of Red Blood Cells by Malaria Parasites. *Cell*, 124(4):755–766, February 2006.
- [43] Gavin J Wright and Julian C Rayner. Plasmodium falciparum Erythrocyte Invasion: Combining Function with Immune Evasion. *PLoS pathogens*, 10(3):e1003943, March 2014.
- [44] Gabrielle A Josling and Manuel Llinás. Sexual development in Plasmodium parasites: knowing when it's time to commit. *Nature reviews. Microbiology*, 13(9):573–587, August 2015.
- [45] Kirsten Flick and Qijun Chen. var genes, PfEMP1 and the human host. *Molecular and biochemical parasitology*, 134(1):3–9, March 2004.
- [46] Victor Fernandez, Carl Johan Treutiger, Gerard B Nash, and Mats Wahlgren. Multiple Adhesive Phenotypes Linked to Rosetting Binding of Erythrocytes in Plasmodium falciparum Malaria. *Infection and Immunity*, 66(6):2969–2975, June 1998.
- [47] Martine M Zilversmit, Ella K Chase, Donald S Chen, Philip Awadalla, Karen P Day, and Gil McVean. Hypervariable antigen genes in malaria have ancient roots. *BMC Evolutionary Biology*, 13(1):110, May 2013.

- [48] Lubin Jiang, Jianbing Mu, Qingfeng Zhang, Ting Ni, Prakash Srinivasan, Kem-paiah Rayavara, Wenjing Yang, Louise Turner, Thomas Lavstsen, Thor G Theander, Weiqun Peng, Guiying Wei, Qingqing Jing, Yoshiyuki Wakabayashi, Abhisheka Bansal, Yan Luo, José M C Ribeiro, Artur Scherf, L Aravind, Jun Zhu, Keji Zhao, and Louis H Miller. PfSETvs methylation of histone H<sub>3</sub>K36 represses virulence genes in *Plasmodium falciparum*. *Nature*, 499(7457):223–227, July 2013.
- [49] Lorenzo Zammarchi Alessandro Bartoloni. Clinical Aspects of Uncomplicated and Severe Malaria. *Mediterranean Journal of Hematology and Infectious Diseases*, 4(1), 2012.
- [50] R E Sinden. The cell biology of sexual development in plasmodium. *Parasitology*, 86 (Pt 4):7–28, April 1983.
- [51] T S MacFie, E Nerrienet, R E Bontrop, and N I Mundy. The action of falciparum malaria on the human and chimpanzee genomes compared: Absence of evidence for a genomic signature of malaria at HBB and G6PD in three subspecies of chimpanzee. *Infection, Genetics and Evolution*, 9(6):1248–1252, December 2009.
- [52] Lisa C Ranford-Cartwright and Jonathan M Mwangi. Analysis of malaria parasite phenotypes using experimental genetic crosses of *Plasmodium falciparum*. *International Journal for Parasitology*, 42(6):529–534, May 2012.
- [53] Xinzhan Su, Karen Hayton, and Thomas E Wellem. Genetic linkage and association analyses for trait mapping in *Plasmodium falciparum*. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 8(7):497–506, July 2007.
- [54] F L Schuster. Cultivation of *Plasmodium* spp. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews*, 15(3):355–364, July 2002.
- [55] P Alano, L Roca, D Smith, D Read, R Carter, and K Day. *Plasmodium falciparum*: parasites defective in early stages of gametocytogenesis. *Experimental Parasitology*, 81(2):227–235, September 1995.
- [56] Mathieu Gissot, Philippe Refour, Sylvie Briquet, Charlotte Boschet, Stéphane Coupé, Dominique Mazier, and Catherine Vaquero. Transcriptome of 3D7 and its gametocyte-less derivative F12 *Plasmodium falciparum* clones during erythrocytic development using a gene-specific microarray assigned to gene regulation, cell cycle and transcription factors. *Gene*, 341:267–277, October 2004.

- [57] Francesco Silvestrini, Zbynek Bozdech, Alessandra Lanfrancotti, Eugenia Di Giulio, Emanuele Bultrini, Leonardo Picci, Joseph L Derisi, Elisabetta Pizzi, and Pietro Alano. Genome-wide identification of genes upregulated at the onset of gametocytogenesis in *Plasmodium falciparum*. *Molecular and biochemical parasitology*, 143(1):100–110, September 2005.
- [58] Anthony J F Griffiths, Jeffrey H Miller, David T Suzuki, Richard C Lewontin, and William M Gelbart. *An Introduction to Genetic Analysis*. W H Freeman & Company, April 2003.
- [59] Michael R Lieber. The mechanism of human nonhomologous DNA end joining. *The Journal of biological chemistry*, 283(1):1–5, January 2008.
- [60] Anat Haviv-Chesner, Yoshifumi Kobayashi, Abram Gabriel, and Martin Kupiec. Capture of linear fragments at a double-strand break in yeast. *Nucleic acids research*, 35(15):5192–5202, 2007.
- [61] Mitch McVey and Sang Eun Lee. MMEJ repair of double-strand breaks (director's cut): deleted sequences and alternative endings. *Trends Genet*, 24(11):529–538, November 2008.
- [62] Tatiana Kent, Gurushankar Chandramouly, Shane Michael McDevitt, Ahmet Y Ozdemir, and Richard T Pomerantz. Mechanism of microhomology-mediated end-joining promoted by human DNA polymerase  $\theta$ . *Nature Structural & Molecular Biology*, 22(3):230–237, February 2015.
- [63] F L Lin, K Sperle, and N Sternberg. Model for homologous recombination during transfer of DNA into mouse L cells: role for DNA ends in the recombination process. *Molecular and cellular biology*, 4(6):1020–1034, June 1984.
- [64] Rita Rebollo, Mark T Romanish, and Dixie L Mager. Transposable Elements: An Abundant and Natural Source of Regulatory Sequences for Host Genes. *Annual review of genetics*, 46(1):21–42, December 2012.
- [65] Christian Biémont and Cristina Vieira. Genetics: Junk DNA as an evolutionary force. *Nature*, 443(7111):521–524, October 2006.
- [66] Patrick Sung and Hannah Klein. Mechanism of homologous recombination: mediators and helicases take on regulatory functions. *Nature reviews. Molecular cell biology*, 7(10):739–750, August 2006.

- [67] Jian-Min Chen, David N Cooper, Nadia Chuzhanova, Claude Férec, and George P Patrinos. Gene conversion: mechanisms, evolution and human disease. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 8(10):762–775, October 2007.
- [68] Wenli Gu, Feng Zhang, and James R Lupski. Mechanisms for human genomic rearrangements. *PathoGenetics*, 1(1):4, November 2008.
- [69] Mariko Sasaki, Julian Lange, and Scott Keeney. Genome destabilization by homologous recombination in the germ line. *Nature reviews. Molecular cell biology*, 11(3):182–195, March 2010.
- [70] Angelika C Roehl, Julia Vogt, Tanja Mussotter, Antje N Zickler, Helene Spöti, Josef Högel, Nadia A Chuzhanova, Katharina Wimmer, Lan Kluwe, Victor Felix Mautner, David N Cooper, and Hildegard Kehrer Sawatzki. Intrachromosomal mitotic non-allelic homologous recombination is the major molecular mechanism underlying type-2 NF1 deletions. *Human Mutation*, 31(10):1163–1173, September 2010.
- [71] Matthew M Parks, Charles E Lawrence, and Benjamin J Raphael. Detecting non-allelic homologous recombination from high-throughput sequencing data. *Genome Biology*, 16(1):704, 2015.
- [72] Bobo W Mok, Ulf Ribacke, Ellen Sherwood, and Mats Wahlgren. A highly conserved segmental duplication in the subtelomeres of *Plasmodium falciparum* chromosomes varies in copy number. *Malaria journal*, 7(1):1–9, 2008.
- [73] Selina E R Bopp, Micah J Manary, A Taylor Bright, Geoffrey L Johnston, Neekesh V Dharia, Fabio L Luna, Susan McCormack, David Plouffe, Case W McNamara, John R Walker, David A Fidock, Eros Lazzerini Denchi, and Elizabeth A Winzeler. Mitotic Evolution of *Plasmodium falciparum* Shows a Stable Core Genome but Recombination in Antigen Families. *PLoS genetics*, 9(2):e1003293, February 2013.
- [74] Augustine Kong, Michael L Frigge, Gisli Masson, Soren Besenbacher, Patrick Sulem, Gisli Magnusson, Sigurjon A Gudjonsson, Asgeir Sigurdsson, Aslaug Jonasdottir, Adalbjorg Jonasdottir, Wendy S W Wong, Gunnar Sigurdsson, G Bragi Walters, Stacy Steinberg, Hannes Helgason, Gudmar Thorleifsson, Daniel F Gudbjartsson, Agnar Helgason, Olafur Th Magnusson, Unnur Thorsteinsdottir, and Kari Stefansson. Rate of de novo mutations and the importance of father’s age to disease risk. *Nature*, 488(7412):471–475, August 2012.
- [75] J F Crow. The origins, patterns and implications of human spontaneous mutation. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 1(1):40–47, October 2000.

- [76] Rivka L Glaser, Karl W Broman, Rebecca L Schulman, Brenda Eskenazi, Andrew J Wyrobek, and Ethylin Wang Jabs. The paternal-age effect in Apert syndrome is due, in part, to the increased frequency of mutations in sperm. *American journal of human genetics*, 73(4):939–947, October 2003.
- [77] Anne Goriely and Andrew O M Wilkie. Paternal Age Effect Mutations and Selfish Spermatogonial Selection: Causes and Consequences for Human Disease. *The American Journal of Human Genetics*, 90(2):175–200, February 2012.
- [78] Joris A Veltman and Han G Brunner. De novo mutations in human genetic disease. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 13(8):565–575, August 2012.
- [79] Petr Danecek, Adam Auton, Goncalo Abecasis, Cornelis A Albers, Eric Banks, Mark A DePristo, Robert Handsaker, Gerton Lunter, Gabor Marth, Stephen T Sherry, Gilean McVean, Richard Durbin, and 1000 Genomes Project Analysis Group. The Variant Call Format and VCFtools. *Bioinformatics (Oxford, England)*, June 2011.
- [80] Luc Devroye. *Non-Uniform Random Variate Generation*. Springer Science & Business Media, New York, NY, November 2013.
- [81] Alistair Miles, Zamin Iqbal, Paul Vauterin, Richard Pearson, Susana Campino, Michel Theron, Kelda Gould, Daniel Mead, Eleanor Drury, John O'Brien, Valentin Ruano Rubio, Bronwyn MacInnis, Jonathan Mwangi, Upeka Samarakoon, Lisa Ranford-Cartwright, Michael Ferdig, Karen Hayton, Xinzhan Su, Thomas Wellem, Julian Rayner, Gil McVean, and Dominic Kwiatkowski. Genome variation and meiotic recombination in Plasmodium falciparum: insights from deep sequencing of genetic crosses. *bioRxiv*, page 024182, August 2015.
- [82] Thomas S Rask, Daniel A Hansen, Thor G Theander, Anders Gorm Pedersen, and Thomas Lavstsen. Plasmodium falciparum erythrocyte membrane protein 1 diversity in seven genomes—divide and conquer. *PLoS computational biology*, 6(9), 2010.
- [83] Susan M Kraemer and Joseph D Smith. A family affair: var genes, PfEMP1 binding, and malaria disease. *Current Opinion in Microbiology*, 9(4):374–380, August 2006.
- [84] Heng Li, Bob Handsaker, Alec Wysoker, Tim Fennell, Jue Ruan, Nils Homer, Gabor Marth, Goncalo Abecasis, Richard Durbin, and 1000 Subgroup. The Sequence Alignment/Map format and SAMtools. *Bioinformatics (Oxford, England)*, 25(16):2078–2079, August 2009.

- [85] H Bao, H Guo, J Wang, R Zhou, X Lu, and S Shi. MapView: visualization of short reads alignment on a desktop computer. *Bioinformatics (Oxford, England)*, 25(12):1554–1555, May 2009.
- [86] James T Robinson, Helga Thorvaldsdóttir, Wendy Winckler, Mitchell Guttman, Eric S Lander, Gad Getz, and Jill P Mesirov. Integrative genomics viewer. *Nature biotechnology*, 29(1):24–26, January 2011.
- [87] Iain Milne, Gordon Stephen, Micha Bayer, Peter J A Cock, Leighton Pritchard, Linda Cardle, Paul D Shaw, and David Marshall. Using Tablet for visual exploration of second-generation sequencing data. *Briefings in bioinformatics*, 14(2):193–202, March 2013.
- [88] Helga Thorvaldsdóttir, James T Robinson, and Jill P Mesirov. Integrative Genomics Viewer (IGV): high-performance genomics data visualization and exploration. *Briefings in bioinformatics*, 14(2):178–192, March 2013.
- [89] Isaac Turner. McCortex Workflow Examples. November 2015.
- [90] Daphne Koller and Nir Friedman. *Probabilistic Graphical Models. Principles and Techniques*. MIT Press, 2009.
- [91] N G Bruijn. *A combinatorial problem*. . . . Nederlandse Akademie van Wetenschappen. Series A, 1946.
- [92] John Hopcroft and Robert Tarjan. Efficient algorithms for graph manipulation, 1971.
- [93] S F Altschul, W Gish, W Miller, E W Myers, and D J Lipman. Basic local alignment search tool. *Journal of molecular biology*, 215(3):403–410, October 1990.
- [94] E W Dijkstra. A note on two problems in connexion with graphs. *Numerische mathematik*, 1(1):269–271, 1959.
- [95] Karen Hayton, Deepak Gaur, Anna Liu, Jonathan Takahashi, Bruce Henschen, Subhash Singh, Lynn Lambert, Tetsuya Furuya, Rachel Bouttenot, Michelle Doll, Fatima Nawaz, Jianbing Mu, Lubin Jiang, Louis H Miller, and Thomas E Wellem. Erythrocyte Binding Protein PfRH5 Polymorphisms Determine Species-Specific Pathways of *Plasmodium falciparum* Invasion. *Cell Host & Microbe*, 4(1):40–51, January 2008.
- [96] William Brockman, Pablo Alvarez, Sarah Young, Manuel Garber, Georgia Giannoukos, William L Lee, Carsten Russ, Eric S Lander, Chad Nusbaum, and David B Jaffe. Quality scores and SNP detection in sequencing-by-synthesis systems. *Genome research*, 18(5):763–770, May 2008.

- [97] Chen-Shan Chin, David H Alexander, Patrick Marks, Aaron A Klammer, James Drake, Cheryl Heiner, Alicia Clum, Alex Copeland, John Huddleston, Evan E Eichler, Stephen W Turner, and Jonas Korlach. Nonhybrid, finished microbial genome assemblies from long-read SMRT sequencing data. *Nature methods*, 10(6):563–569, June 2013.
- [98] E W Myers. Toward simplifying and accurately formulating fragment assembly. *Journal of computational biology : a journal of computational molecular cell biology*, 2(2):275–290, June 1995.
- [99] Martin I Krzywinski, Jacqueline E Schein, Inanc Birol, Joseph Connors, Randy Gascoyne, Doug Horsman, Steven J Jones, and Marco A Marra. Circos: An information aesthetic for comparative genomics. *Genome research*, 19(9):1639–1645, June 2009.
- [100] C E Shannon. A mathematical theory of communication. *Bell System Technical Journal, The*, 27(3):379–423, July 1948.
- [101] E N Trifonov. Making sense of the human genome. *Structure and methods : proceedings of the Sixth Conversation in the Discipline Biomolecular Stereodynamics held at the State University of New York at Albany, June 6-10, 1989 / edited by R.H. Sarma & M.H. Sarma*, 1990.
- [102] J C Wootton and S Federhen. Analysis of compositionally biased regions in sequence databases. *Methods in enzymology*, 266:554–571, 1996.
- [103] C K Stover, X Q Pham, A L Erwin, S D Mizoguchi, P Warrener, M J Hickey, F S L Brinkman, W O Hufnagle, D J Kowalik, M Lagrou, R L Garber, L Goltry, E Tolentino, S Westbrock-Wadman, Y Yuan, L L Brody, S N Coulter, K R Folger, A Kas, K Larbig, R Lim, K Smith, D Spencer, G K S Wong, Z Wu, I T Paulsen, J Reizer, M H Saier, R E W Hancock, S Lory, and M V Olson. Complete genome sequence of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PAO1, an opportunistic pathogen. *Nature*, 406(6799):959–964, August 2000.
- [104] Geoffrey L Winsor, Emma J Griffiths, Raymond Lo, Bhavjinder K Dhillon, Julie A Shay, and Fiona S L Brinkman. Enhanced annotations and features for comparing thousands of *Pseudomonas* genomes in the *Pseudomonas* genome database. *Nucleic acids research*, 44(D1):D646–53, January 2016.

- [105] Goo Jun, Matthew Flickinger, Kurt N Hetrick, Jane M Romm, Kimberly F Doheny, Gonçalo R Abecasis, Michael Boehnke, and Hyun Min Kang. Detecting and estimating contamination of human DNA samples in sequencing and array-based genotype data. *American journal of human genetics*, 91(5):839–848, November 2012.
- [106] Stefan Kurtz, Adam Phillippy, Arthur L Delcher, Michael Smoot, Martin Shumway, Corina Antonescu, and Steven L Salzberg. Versatile and open software for comparing large genomes. *Genome Biology*, 5(2):R12, January 2004.
- [107] Adrian J Gibbs and George A McIntyre. The Diagram, a Method for Comparing Sequences. *European Journal of Biochemistry*, 16(1):1–11, September 1970.
- [108] Adam F Sander, Thomas Lavstsen, Thomas S Rask, Michael Lisby, Ali Salanti, Sarah L Fordyce, Jakob S Jespersen, Richard Carter, Kirk W Deitsch, Thor G Theander, Anders Gorm Pedersen, and David E Arnot. DNA secondary structures are associated with recombination in major *Plasmodium falciparum* variable surface antigen gene families. *Nucleic acids research*, November 2013.